Ph.D. Thesis

A Selfless Response to an Illusory World

A Comparative Study of Śāntideva and Śaṅkara

Written by Warren Lee Todd

PDF version - September 2012
Ph.D. in Politics, Philosophy & Religion

A Selfless Response to an Illusory World
A Comparative Study of Śāntideva and Śaṅkara

Written by Warren Lee Todd

PDF version - September 2012

Abstract

This thesis compares the ethical theories of two 8th century Indian philosophers, Śāntideva and Śaṅkara. In order to construct their ethics from philosophical premises, a metaphysical approach has been taken. A comparison of these two philosophers has never been made, nor has there been any major comparative study of the ethics of their two traditions, Indian Madhyamaka Buddhism and Advaita Vedānta. In opening the way for further comparisons between these two schools, I wish to question the manner in which scholars have consistently divided them along self/non-self (ātman/anātman) lines. The key to the comparison is thus the notion of individuated self (jīva) rather than the less personal ātman.
Once the full implications of Advaita metaphysics are understood, whereby all consciousness is ultimately that of the one brahman, then, at the individuated level of consciousness, the ethical situation is strangely similar to the Buddhist with their notion of non-self (anātman). We thus have two rival schools positing a radical notion of the individual as having no unified centre of moral agency. Both schools adopt a methodology of Two Truths, the relative and the ultimate, in order to allow for both a provisional ethical framework and the potential for world transcendence.

It was decided that the most convenient form of ethical comparison was a qualified form of altruism, here called “constructive altruism”. This is a form of other-regarding ethics which allows for the concept of a non-giver, i.e. a person who has realised selflessness and has seen through the “illusion” of individuation. This person then takes it upon himself to construct the other so as to gain a focus for the compassionate activity of teaching. The aim of such teaching is the liberation (mokṣa) of freedom-seeking disciples from this cyclic existence (samsāra) and its prevalent potential for suffering (duḥkha).
This thesis grew out of an on-going project begun by Prof. Ram-Prasad Chakravarthi (Lancaster University) and Prof. Jonardon Ganeri (University of Sussex). The project was entitled “Hindu Responses to Buddhist Critiques”. I was based in Lancaster throughout the project, with Ram-Prasad as my sole supervisor. The project was necessarily cross-curricula and it was therefore fitting that mid-way through the project the Department of Religion merged with the Departments of Philosophy and Politics. The main debates surrounded the meaning of the “self”, and how the self functioned in metaphysics, psychology and ethics. The basic methodology was to focus on the Indian texts, with occasional reference to parallel Western debates.

I came into the Project as a winner of a Doctorate scholarship offered by the AHRC. This full 3-year scholarship served for all my fees and living costs. It also offered me the chance to present my thesis as a paper at the Uehiro Cross Currents Philosophy Conference at the University of Hawai’i in March 2010. I therefore acknowledge my deepest debt to the AHRC.

As a Buddhist, I was concerned with the Project’s title, which seemed set up to favour the “Responses” over the “Critiques”. But as it turned out, my supervisor, Ram-Prasad, was as anxious as I to give a balanced account of the debates, which we both recognised as being a valuable exchange of cross-cutting Indian ideas. Given the time to find my own thesis within the general area of Buddhist and Hindu comparative studies and Indian Philosophy, I began by reading the Brahmanical material.
On reading Śaṅkara, I was first interested to note how his critique of the Yogācāra was so similar to that of Śāntideva. In reading his views on self, it soon became apparent that his concept of *brahman* as the ultimate Self, along with his views on the provisional nature of the world, led to an evaluation of the individual most similar to that of Madhyamaka. I became particularly interested in his insistence on the continuation of the lineage, and the need for a realised teacher to pass on the knowledge to his students. It seemed that his *brahman*-knower, who had transcended personal identity, was willing to remain in society with the sole aim of benefiting others. This seemingly “altruistic” concept resonated with the teachings I had received from the Dalai Lama on the *Bodhicaryāvatāra* of Śāntideva.

The idea of comparing Śāntideva and Śaṅkara with regard to metaphysics and ethics appealed to Ram-Prasad, and we almost instantly agreed on a working title: “A Selfless Response to an Illusory World”. This catchy title, which captures the “tension” of the Two Truths so dramatically, has remained an inspiration to me throughout the research and writing process. I thank Ram-Prasad for bringing me onto this project, for allowing me the freedom to choose my own thesis, and for his attention and fathomless expertise throughout these four years.

I also wish to thank Prof. Peter Harvey, who helped me become a critical thinker. I wish to thank H.H. the Dalai Lama, who planted the seeds of the *Bodhicaryāvatāra* in my limited consciousness back in 2003. I prostrate to my root guru, the late Chogyé Trichen Rinpoche, who one glorious day in Kathmandu, placed me on the path. I wish to thank also Dr. Irina Kuznetsova for teaching me Sanskrit. Thanks are also due to all those scholars and translators to whom I have referred.
### Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbr.</th>
<th>Full Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ait.U. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Aitareya Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.N.</td>
<td>Aṅguttara Nikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCA</td>
<td>Bodhicaryāvatāra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.S. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bṛ. U. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Bṛhadāranyaka Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bh. G. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Bhagavad Gītā (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ch. U. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Chāndogya Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.N.</td>
<td>Dīgha Nikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhp.</td>
<td>Dhammapada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EHU</td>
<td>Enquiry concerning Human Understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPM</td>
<td>Enquiry concerning Principles of Morals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.K. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Gauḍapāda’s Kārikā (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.S.</td>
<td>Gay Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gau.D.S.</td>
<td>Gautama Dharma Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Īṣ. U. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Īṣā Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jā. U.</td>
<td>Jābāla Upaniṣad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ka. U. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Kaṭha Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ken. U. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Kena Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mā. U. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Māṇḍūkya Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miln.</td>
<td>Milinda Pañha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMA (Bh.)</td>
<td>Madhyamakāvatāra (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td>Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMK</td>
<td>Mūla-madhyamaka kārikā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M.N.</td>
<td>Majjhima Nikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mu.U. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Muṇḍaka Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.U. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Praśna Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ś.S.</td>
<td>Śikṣa Samuccaya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.N.</td>
<td>Saṃyutta Nikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T.U. (Bh.)</td>
<td>Taittirīya Upaniṣad (Bhāṣya)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S.</td>
<td>Upadeśa Sāharsrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Util.</td>
<td>Utilitarianism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.C.</td>
<td>Viveka Cūḍāmani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vin.</td>
<td>Vinaya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vm.</td>
<td>Visuddhimagga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vv.</td>
<td>Vigrahavyāvartanī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preface and Acknowledgements</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Introduction to the Self</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Methodology</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Situating Śaṅkara and Śāntideva</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Approaching Śaṅkara</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Approaching Śāntideva</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Their Common Approach to the World</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Their Common Denial of the Yogācāra Idealistic World-view</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Their Common Denial of the Ultimacy of the Individuated Self</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Their Common Response to Tradition-based Conduct</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Knowledge and Liberation</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Śaṅkara: Liberation through Knowledge of Brahman</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>Śāntideva: Liberation through Seeing into Emptiness</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>A Selfless Response to the World</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Śāntideva: Wisdom and Compassion – A Complex Model</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>Śaṅkara: Living Liberation – The True Place of Action</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Marginal Cases</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>Śaṅkara: The Reality and Non-reality of Class and Caste</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>Śāntideva: The Reality and Non-reality of Gender</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conclusion</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

There is no doubt that a comparative ethical study of Indian Mahāyāna Buddhism and early Vedānta is long overdue. And it is quite evident that this particular metaphysical/ethical analysis of Śāntideva’s Madhyamaka and Śaṅkara’s Advaita Vedānta is just the beginning of what will hopefully be a sustained and probing recovery and rediscovery of the Sanskritic source material.

Moreover, one anticipates that it will be a practical rediscovery; one which involves ethical questions as well as metaphysical ones, one which will hopefully lead on to novel approaches which aim at accessing the workings of consciousness and thus to the potential training of the human mind. With the advent of the cognitive sciences, it may well be that Indian philosophy has come of age and is finally being taken seriously in the Western academy.

In addition to keeping abreast of cognitive science, the modern writer on Buddhism and Hinduism aspires to be a combination of historian, philologist and analytic philosopher. And Chapter 1 is unapologetically aimed at the latter of these. The question of “self” has dramatically returned to the arena of analytic philosophy and may well prove to be the most telling philosophical “problem” of the current century. Without any plea from the Buddhists themselves, Western scholars of self have helped themselves to ancient Indian texts, typically in translation, and have introduced the Buddhist notion of non-self into the modern debate. It is hardly feasible any more for a Western academic to remain enclosed within their departmental walls. The Indologist feels the need to answer Descartes, Locke and Hume just as urgently as the
Western philosopher of self feels the urge to quote from the Pāli Canon, the Bhagavad Gītā or the Upaniṣads.

Unfortunately, such inter-disciplinary flirtations have often come at a price. Blanket statements have been made on all sides and confusion abounds. When the Buddha denied the ‘self’, was he also denying the ‘person’? Are the Buddhists saying, along with the Bhagavad Gītā, that there is no fault in killing the person before you, because that is not who they really are? When Śaṅkara claims that one simply cannot deny the self, is he thus forced into standing on the ātman (self) side of the fence, with the anātman (non-self) Buddhist on the other? In allowing for the possibility of an exchange of ‘self’ or ‘consciousness’ between two ‘men’; is Locke therefore accepting Indian notions of rebirth? These are but a few of the questions that arise from the confusion of terms.

Thus Chapter 1 is an attempt to discover some clarity, with a particular focus on showing that the Buddhist so-called denial of self is no absolute denial, and that Śaṅkara’s notion of self as brahman-consciousness leaves room for him to sit very much alongside a Buddhist, like Śāntideva, on the question of moral agency. It thus calls upon scholars to reconsider how we distinguish Buddhism and Hinduism, and asks whether the ātman/anātman dichotomy is at all sustainable.

Chapter 2 focuses on methodology, and especially the question of how one ought to approach the comparison of two sets of ethics. This will involve a major critique of the virtue ethics approach to comparison and will hopefully show how ineffectual that methodology is. It will further be proposed that any attempt to map Indian ethics (without qualification) onto pre-existing Western typologies is bound to fail. The
structural approach to ethics taken here will be shown to be one where the reader attempts to discover what the writers were up to in their own works. It is a method of rediscovery, gaining a sense of how each writer constructed their ethics from philosophical premises. It therefore relies most heavily on an understanding of the revisionary metaphysics involved.

It just so happens that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva construct their ethics in a similar fashion, and it must be admitted that it was this startling similarity that prompted further research and the idea of this comparison. That is why this is no comparison for its own sake, but one read *out* of the material. Interestingly, both will construct their ethical systems from essentially metaphysical premises. And while those premises appear polar opposite with regard to the self, the resultant ethics are shockingly similar.

While the argument against using Western notions to categorize Indian writers is strongly upheld, naturally one often finds oneself constrained by the discourse. Thus, the use of the English language on the study of Buddhism over the past 50 years or so has imposed certain terms onto the writer. All such terms have been heavily scrutinised throughout this thesis and none more so than my ethical term of choice, ‘altruism’. Clearly this term was originally assumed to cover the notion of a person as a fully-fledged ‘self’ occasionally over-riding its own selfish desires in order to do some particular deed of benefit to others. I thus call on the reader to understand that the altruism that is proposed by both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara is a “qualified” form of altruism, where no such self exists from the side of the doer. Not only that, but the receiver, the other, is a constructed other. That is, they are given provisional status by the wise and compassionate teacher, who uses this status as a means of focusing
attention on that particular being for soteriological purposes. I will thus speak of “constructive altruism”, for the other is constructed for constructive reasons. While not quite content with the use of the word ‘altruism’, it is consistent with all the Western literature on Mahāyāna Buddhism, and no one will be surprised to hear Śāntideva’s ethics referred to as “altruistic”. Its inclusion into the discourse of Śaṅkara’s Advaita may be somewhat novel. But once the reader acknowledges that Śaṅkara also constructs the other in a manner very similar to Śāntideva, I am sure it will become obvious why the term “constructive altruism” equally applies to Advaita. Nevertheless, this may not become fully evident until Chapter 6.

The aim of Chapter 3 is to give the reader an introduction into the worldview of Śaṅkara and Śāntideva so that the force of the main comparative chapters (4 to 6) will have sufficient impact. The problem of course is how much to put in and how much to leave out. I have had to assume some knowledge on behalf of the reader with regard to both Buddhism and Brahmanism. I have thus tried to position Śaṅkara and Śāntideva within their respective traditions. The fact that they were both living around the same time and place, i.e. 8th century India, adds extra interest to the comparison, though perhaps it would have remained just as relevant even if this were not the case. Two things stand out in Chapter 3: first, the fact that there had been some obvious borrowing of theories and methodologies amongst the traditions of India before and around this period; and second, the fact that Śaṅkara and Śāntideva continued to see other sects as, in a certain sense, enemies. It is this traditional tension that sets up the comparison and highlights the significance of them forging such similar ethical structures.
Chapter 4 is the core of the comparison. There were perhaps other ways of comparing their writings, and they probably agreed on more issues than those drawn on here. However, I decided to highlight three points of contact due to their immediate relevance to the question of ethics. The first point of interest (4.1) was that both writers wished to deny the Buddhist Yogācāra “idealistic” world-view. Now some Buddhologists may feel immediate irritation here at the idea that the Yogācāra were in fact offering an “idealistic” metaphysics. This I acknowledge and try to address in as much detail as space will allow. However, it is important to note that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva paint the Yogācāra in a very similar manner. I will argue that they both find an idealistic world-view incompatible with the ethical traditions they wish to uphold. It therefore renders the question of the Yogācāra’s actual views irrelevant to my thesis.

The next section of Chapter 4, (i.e. 4.2), returns to the question of self found in Chapter 1, zooming in on their common denial of the ultimacy of the individuated self. At this point in the thesis, it will become apparent that the ātman/anātman distinction is unsustainable, and I will make a call for all future scholars to bear this in mind when discussing Buddhism and Hinduism.

Finally, in Chapter 4.3, I intend to show that despite their denial of the individuated self at the ultimate level of discourse, there is no such denial at the provisional level. Thus, it can be said that they maintain a common response to tradition-based conduct in the sense that they both allow the normal framework of their respective religions to remain in place even though their metaphysics should theoretically force their collapse. This will highlight how both adopt the Two Truths to locate their soteriologies within a functioning ethical system which stands as potentially
transcendable. Nevertheless, even the knower of final truth does not walk away from this framework, but plays along with it as if it were reasonably established.

At this point in the proceedings, the reader will be well aware that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva are making the standard religious claim that their lineages are able to breed certain beings, typically males, who have gained a certain knowledge which allows them to act in a certain manner and to make certain authentic pronouncements worthy of the heed of their followers. Chapter 5 thus aims at adding flesh to this notion of knowledge and wisdom. Though any attempt to verbalise the ineffable will necessarily fail, an account is given of how these writers saw the connection between practice and knowledge and subsequent liberation. Perhaps it will come as little surprise to those involved in Religious Studies to see just how similar the two accounts are. But we should not forget that simply because we have become familiar with the similarity, it does not make it any less significant. Remember, we are talking here of two separate and often conflicting religious traditions.

Chapter 6 focuses on the decision taken by both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva that the knowledge gained by these rare ones should, if not must, be passed on to those who are both academically deserving and spiritually prepared for it. This fact in itself makes Śaṅkara’s ethics just as compassionate as Śāntideva’s, for it should not be lost on the reader that the knower-of-brahman need not do anything, and may, if he so wishes, just sit there awaiting final liberation. That he does not, but turns back, as it were, and gives his full attention to those worthy seekers is indeed an altruistic response in any sense of the word. That this knower has realised the non-existence of the individuating self (jīva) makes it particularly noteworthy, for, like the Buddhist, he must reconstruct the other from old knowledge of caste, gender, etc. His altruism is
thus a qualified one, a constructive altruism. I have here, in Chapter 6, invented a graphical means of representing the Two-Truths strategies used by Śaṅkara and Śāntideva in their ethical constructions, and it is hoped that this will prove useful to those new to the ethics of Śaṅkara and/or Śāntideva, and perhaps will even offer a new window to those more familiar with these writers.

Once we have accepted that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva are offering a form of constructive ethics, we need to ask just who those ethics are aimed at. That is, we may rightly wish to inquire into their respective inclusivity. Thus, one further modern trend is here, in Chapter 7, placed under critical analysis, that being the notion that Advaita and Mahāyāna ethics are somehow ‘egalitarian’ and ‘universal’. These views are not simply being spouted by unknowing Western scholars, but can be found amongst the so-called authentic modern voices of the traditions themselves. We must therefore be extremely careful not to read these universal claims back into the original Sanskrit texts. Such notions are simply not there.

With this in mind, I chose, in Chapter 7, to examine Śaṅkara’s views on caste alongside Śāntideva’s views on women. The premise, in both cases, is that these categories should collapse under pressure from ultimate metaphysical analysis. However, as we soon learn, they in fact do not collapse, but remain intact, and probably did so until the 19th century, when they came under attack from academic liberals. Not only do I wish to highlight this lack of egalitarianism and universality in their ethics, I wish to show that their lack of concern about such matters would tend to cut away somewhat at standard Western notions of altruism. However, the notion of constructive altruism remains unscathed, because the knower need only reconstruct those he chooses. So there is no fault in the ethical models described in Chapter 6.
1. Introduction to the Self

This thesis will primarily concern itself with the question of moral agency and ethical conduct within a world devoid of individual agents or ‘souls’. The delusion of agency is coupled with the ‘illusory’ nature of phenomena, whose seemingly permanent presence is to be critically scrutinized.

It is more than a hundred years since Nietzsche’s “madman” ran through the streets of Europe (G.S. 125). And while the flames of atheism and doubt may well have been fuelled by science and scepticism alike, the “old deep trust” (343) in a personal God and for a necessary Absolute being is still very much alive. My interest here does not concern the “gruesome shadows” (108) per se, but will necessarily involve the re-evaluation of their role. “How much must collapse” asked Nietzsche; what will happen to “our entire European morality” (343)? Barring Communism, that monstrous failure, has the European really been capable of an answer? Meanwhile, the American still calls on the Good Lord to protect their “crusades”. Perhaps then, we should leave the West and travel east. Could it be that there are moral lessons to be learnt from somewhere as distant as 8th century India?

From an Indian perspective, we do not have to consider God “dead”; an agnostic stance will suffice. God may sing and dance in the shadows if he likes. The universe is here about us as a brute fact, a place of suffering. That is why Buddhism in India has often been labelled “agnosticism” (e.g. Vivekananda, 2009: 6) rather than “atheism”. But if the Buddhist understanding of the world has been essentially “man-centred”, then my argument here is that the same may be said of Śaṅkara. This is especially true when we consider his views on liberation. In other words, Śaṅkara’s
central concern was the “current bondage of the human condition” (Suthren Hirst, 2005: 94). Liberation from this world is a human task, a gnoseological project.\(^1\) Even Otto (1957), the great defender of a theistic Śaṅkara, felt compelled to admit that “Śaṅkara is so deeply interested in the subjective pole of salvation, that the other is scarcely noticed by him” (p189). Śaṅkara is hardly interested in looking good in God’s eyes. That is, when it comes to the ultimate means of liberation, God (Īśvara) has but little importance. Śaṅkara’s interest lies more in a cognitive shift. As he puts it, the “non-dual realisation is a mere mental modification” (advaita jñānam ṭanovṛtti mātram) (Ch.U.Bh., intro). This discovery that one is in fact brahman-consciousness is followed by immediate liberation from suffering (jīvan-mukti), and the salvation of others who continue to suffer within transmigratory existence.

Suffering is thus the consequence of a basic misunderstanding. Hence, no devil, but ignorance (avidyā) shows itself to be the great enemy, and even God is subject to it (B.S.Bh. II.i.14). That is, “Pure Consciousness (defined by egoity) has the omnipresent ignorance as its adjunct” (Grimes, 1991: 297). This ignorance, or not-knowing (a-jñānaṃ), according to Śaṅkara, is the “root” (mūlam) of transmigratory existence (samsāra) (U.S. Metric, 1.4-5) and stems from the clinging to the transitory world of name and form (nāma-rūpa) (B.S.Bh. II.i.14). For both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, this ignorance shows itself as egoism (ahaṃkāra) and culminates in the clinging to a self as body, or as individuated soul (jīva). According to Śāntideva, all misfortunes in the world are due to clinging to such a false self (BCA. 8.134). Similarly, Śaṅkara sees the cause of suffering as ignorance of the nature of self. If one could only see that there were no difference between your self and the Self of

\(^1\) No parallel with Gnosticism is implied here. By ‘gnoseology’, I simply mean a system which posits a type of “saving knowledge” as its goal.
brahman, one would be released from suffering. Hence, “That one is other [than brahman] is due only to the [error of] accepting the doctrine of difference” (bheda 
darśana mātreṇa ca tato ‘nyatvam) (U.S. Prose, I.30).

The gnoseological response then becomes threefold:

1) create doubt in the deep-seated belief in our ultimate individuality
2) question the origin and validity of our private cognitions, and
3) re-evaluate our embodied existence

For Śāntideva, the Mādhyamika Buddhist, there is no all-powerful God with his hands upon the world, and the Buddha remains as example and guide, not as Lord Creator. And even the Buddha is ultimately to be viewed as “illusion-like”, for “Merit comes from a Conqueror [Buddha], who is like an illusion, as if he was truly existent” (māyopamāj jināt puṇyam sad bhāve ‘pi katham yathā) (BCA. 9.9a). But far from being a nihilistic thesis, Śāntideva adds perfect wisdom and compassion to Nietzsche’s infinite nothing (G.S. 124-125). For Śaṅkara, the Advaitin, the personal God (Īśvara) is likewise to be seen as part of the illusion (māyā) from which we must awaken, a construct, which along with individuation, awaits dissolution into universal consciousness. A popular Advaita text states, when ignorance and illusion is overcome, “there is neither God nor soul’ (na paro na jīvah) (V.C. 244). And as for the attributeless (nirgunā) brahman, it is so bare a concept, it can “hardly be the

2 The Viveka Ciṭḍāmaṇi (from here on, V.C.) is treated here as probably not written by Śaṅkara. However, it may be assumed to be a gloss on Śaṅkara’s authentic works. While Dasgupta took it to be genuine (1975, Vol.II: 79) and Hacker “provisionally” so (in Halbfass, 1995: 49-50), it is now assumed to be post-Śaṅkara (Mayeda, 1992: 10, n.33). Nelson and Skoog both reject its authenticity (in Fort & Mumme, 1996). However, it will be drawn on to show how its views compare with Śaṅkara’s, due to its ease of reference and extreme popularity. Most recently, Coward (2008: 134-135) and Fasching (2011: 208) claim Śaṅkara as the author of the V.C, and even Metzinger (2004: 550) quotes from it. So, it certainly has “legs” (Forsthoefel (2002: 311).
Creator God” (Matilal, 2004: 40). Again, this is no nihilistic thesis, for ethics remains paramount. As Black (2008: 3) suggests, the “Upanishadic notion of the self is not merely a philosophical insight, but a way of being in the world”. It is an “art of living” in accordance with religious precepts (Saha, 2009: 2). In place of an infinite nothing, Śaṅkara speaks of “infinite” (anantam) “knowledge and truth” (satyam jñānam) (T.U.Bh. II.i.1). More in line with Nietzsche; both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara seek liberation in terms of gnoseological illumination, and all three are intent on producing their “free-spirits”.

So the Western reader will begin to see the virtue in this thesis if and when they consider the problem that arises when the certainty of a personal I-Thou relationship with God is seriously doubted. More specifically, as we become agnostic about God, the notion of a personal, God-given, ‘soul’ becomes a redundant concept. And consequently, we lose the line of reference on which to pin our certainty about the locus of our individual ‘self’. This lack of ground coupled with a lack of historical anchor, lends itself to a sceptical attitude towards the question of whether or not there is any foundation at all for morality.

The problem, as framed here, is not an emotional one, nor is it necessarily existential. It is not whether one may live a life with more or less fear of death, though fearlessness is indeed a “spiritual achievement” (Brassard, 2000: 49) prized by both Advaita and Buddhism. It is not about freedom to act beyond the institutional walls.3 Nor is the problem about whether or not a lack of ‘self’ would take away our claim to

---

3 For such an examination, see Mumme (Fort & Mumme, 1996: 264-267).
individual rights. The problem, as framed here, is more philosophical, more ‘global’. It is whether or not ethics has any meaningful place in a world where the individuated self is not simply doubted, but ultimately denied. With one eye on the current trends in cognitive science, I believe this question will come to play a major part in future ethical discussion. And an ethical question of particular interest to me is whether or not ‘altruism’ remains possible within a metaphysics of non-individuation. When I speak of ‘altruism’ here, I mean more than just the occasional jump into a lake to save a drowning child. Rather, I am pointing at a total outlook on being and beings, an ethical world-view. A detailed analysis of how we may qualify our terms of reference to allow for other-regarding ethics within such revisionary metaphysics will thus be offered. More generally, we might ask, just how do metaphysical claims impact upon our ethics?

If we are to understand the question from Śāntideva’s or Śaṅkara’s perspective, we need to be familiar with the distinction between what they call the ‘ultimate’ (paramārtha) truth and ‘conventional’ (samvṛti, vyāvahārika) truth. For simplicity, we might say that ultimate truth is that seen by the wise, and is the final description of what this world is like in “reality” (tattva), essentially in terms of metaphysics. The conventional is the world of ‘common people’ (prakṛtā janāḥ), the ‘worldly’ (loka), and, in Indian terms, is the place of work, ritual and ethical action (Dharma). This sense of worldly convention is explicit in Nāgārjuna’s notion of “worldly

---


5 A “revisionary metaphysics” is one which holds that what is there is ultimately different from what is ordinarily taken to be there. In other words, it is a counter-intuitive metaphysics, and contrasts with a more “conservative metaphysics”, or “realist metaphysics”. In India, this would include the Mīmāṃsā and Nyāya. On this definition, modern science may well be called upon to support a revisionary metaphysics, including that of non-self (see Westerhoff, 2009: 208-210).
conventional truth” (*loka saṃvṛti-satyaṃ*) (MMK. 24.8), and both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara will show their debt to Nāgārjuna, the founder of Madhyamaka.

Nevertheless, the wise look upon the conventional world as a dream-like world, a place where the seeming permanency of objects is likened to a magical display, a mirage. In this “illusory” world, the majority of men and women go about their business, praying to their Gods, stoking their sacrificial fires, selling their wares. It is a world in need of a moral structure, and both the Mādhyamikas and the Advaitins will give provisional value to it. The question of just how much of this conventional world the wise really “share” with us is a matter to be addressed throughout the thesis. For now, it is enough to say that conventional truth is not necessarily the same as consensus. It is the external world of ‘things’, where ‘beings’ are taken seriously. When we get to the ultimate level of discourse, the validity of ‘beings-as-independent-subjects’ will be put into question. At this level of understanding, to use Parfit’s (1971) phrase, there is “no underlying person” (p25). Or, as Metzinger (2004: 549) more recently put it, there is “no one in the cave”.

But this does not mean that there is no person at all. For the Advaitin, it means that the person does not possess an individuated self (*jīvātman*) which would separate him from brahman. As for the Buddhist, it means that there is no need to posit any substratum that supposedly maintains one’s individuality, one’s identity over time. Of course, Śaṅkara thus supposes that the Mādhyamika Buddhist does indeed deny the person (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1), because a non-agency thesis combined with (what he took as) their non-existence (*asat*) thesis would amount to either nihilism or incoherence. But Śaṅkara consistently fails to take account of the Madhyamaka’s acceptance of dependent origination. Emptiness, for the Mādhyamika Buddhist, is
 emptiness of something, just as consciousness is consciousness of something. Emptiness and phenomena are not two distinct things, but two characterizations of the same thing. Things are empty because they are dependently originated. If phenomena were not empty of inherent existence, it would be impossible for phenomena to be transformed in dependence on causes. So a constructed person is empty because he is a constructed person.

So Parfit, who we may thank for reviving the analytical interest in the Buddhist non-self thesis, is wrong if he sees the Buddhists as totally denying the person (see Ganeri, 2007: 162-166). The Buddha never denied the person that stands before you. Hayes states that the topic of one of the first of the Buddha’s discourses was about “why none of the constituents of a person qualifies as a self” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 28, stress mine). But how could one make any sense of this if the Buddha was also denying the ‘person’? It is evident, even under Madhyamaka’s revisions, that the mere imputed person is not to be refuted. Only by distinguishing between the notions of ‘self’ and ‘person’ can one make sense of the Buddhist concept of the selflessness of the person. In a forthcoming paper, Ram-Prasad (2012) claims that Parfit has changed his mind about Buddhism and has come to see them as “reductionists”, and Ram-Prasad himself is generally correct when he states here that “Buddhists are reductionists about persons” (ibid.). In fact, Siderits (2007a: 69) continues to liken Parfit’s reductionism to Buddhism, which is why Parfit is of interest to our thesis.6

However, while Siderits (2000: 417) has admitted that Śāntideva sometimes adopts “Reductionist assumptions”, he more generally argues that the “Madhyamaka rejects Reductionism” (2003: 111, note c). This is so if we take ‘reductionism’ to be the view

---

6 For an extended discussion of Buddhism and Western Reductionism, see Siderits (2003).
that things, like persons, can be reduced to other kinds of things, such as, what Siderits has called “psychophysical elements” (p24). So while the Mādhyamikas do deconstruct the body into its component parts, the deconstruction, unlike that of Abhidharma, does not end in a final list of true existents. King (1995) has made the same point with regard to the Prajñāpāramitā texts, for which “there is no level at which the reductionist process can conceivably end” (p112). Such a deconstruction, then, for the Mādhyamika at least, is a sceptical one, leaving nothing in the place of the ‘body’ or ‘being’ it started out with; that is, nothing except dependent origination (see Chapter 3.2). Śāntideva, then, unlike Śaṅkara, would agree with modern philosophers of the mind, like Metzinger, who claim that there is no “unchangeable essence” behind the notion of ‘self’ (Metzinger, 2004: 563).

Even so, we should note, along with Perrett (2002), that Indian Buddhist Reductionists “were not Eliminativists about persons” (p377). And while a distinction can be drawn between the general Buddhist view and the Prāsaṅgika (more minimalist) view, the Prāsaṅgikas (with whom Śāntideva has been historically lumped) remained on a “middle path with respect to the issue of personal identity” (p382). Now, Siderits (2003) has argued that the “distinction between Reductionism and Eliminativism cannot be drawn without using the distinction between conventional and ultimate truth” (p116); but my argument is that Śāntideva can be read as flickering between the two. The distinction is thus non-graspable. For Śāntideva, then, the unenlightened person does indeed have enough ground to take care of their own livelihood, and so prudential concern is far from being “irrational” (see Siderits, 2003: 13). Prudence is

---

7 The concept of sub-schools within the Mādhyamikas of India was likely a Tibetan invention (Williams, 2009: 65), the terms ‘Prāsaṅgika’ and ‘Svātantrika’ never being employed by the Indian Mādhyamikas (Ruegg, 2010: 160).
only irrational if seen from an ultimate perspective, but when one shifts perspective,
when one flickers between the Two Truths, prudence is rational indeed. In fact,
prudence may go on to form the basis of a compassionate outlook (BCA. 8.92ff).

Thus, Śāntideva writes:

\[
\begin{align*}
yady apy anyeṣu deheṣu mad-duḥkham na prabādhate & | \\
tathāpi tad duḥkham eva mamātmā sneha duḥsaham & || \\
tathā yady apy asamvedyam anyad duḥkham mayātmanā & | \\
tathāpi tasya tad duḥkham ātma snehena duḥsaham & || \\
mayānyad duḥkham hantavyaṁ duḥkhatvād ātma duḥkha vat & | \\
anugrāhyā mayānye 'pi sattvatvād ātma sattva vat & || \\
\end{align*}
\]

Even though my pain does not torment the body of others, that pain on the
other hand is unbearable for me based on the love for myself.
Although the suffering of another cannot be experienced by me personally,
nevertheless, for him that pain is unbearable because of self-love.
I should dispel the pain of others, just as I do my own, based on the fact
that it is pain. And I should help others for they are beings like me
(BCA. 8.92-94).  

Furthermore, in his call for a selfless response to the world of suffering beings,
Śāntideva reconstructs his own deconstruction of the person, so the person is
definitively reinstated. That is, the bodhisattva returns to the “cave”, as it were, and
projects a fixed self onto other beings for their own sake (see Chapter 6.1).  
This I have labelled “constructive altruism”. If his predecessor, Nāgārjuna “neither denies
the world nor affirms it” (Bhattacharya, 1998: 91), then Śāntideva, I argue, both
denies it and confirms it.

Initially, Śāntideva establishes a rather negative view of people and society in order to
persuade men to renounce the world of politics and desire. He then deconstructs the
world of objects in order to bring on a glimpse of emptiness. Finally, he reconstructs

---

8 All translations from the Sanskrit are my own (unless otherwise stated). I have tried to write the
Sanskrit in a “pulled apart” form to help non-specialist readers follow the words (except in cases where
this would lead to ambiguity in the Sanskrit).

9 Naturally, the “cave” metaphor is borrowed from Plato’s Republic (2007: 240-248). For its modern
application in the debate about self, see Kapstein (2001: 216) and Metzinger (2004: 547ff).
the world of beings in order to convince monks into a compassionate response to others (see Chapter 6.1). We ought never to lose sight of these strategic means, for such manipulation requires that we contextualise each and every manoeuvre. Śāntideva thus begins with a provisional sense of the ‘person’, which includes their status and their gender (see Chapter 4.3 & 7). He later works from a self-imposed ‘delusional sense’ of the person (Chapter 6.1). So while Giles (1993) claims that the “no-self theory lets the self lie where it has fallen” (p175), we will see that Śāntideva verily picks it up again! Ultimate truth (paramārtha-satya), then, does not, pace Sprung (1973: 44), bring the relative truth (saṃvṛti-satya) of persons to an end; it merely restructures the way in which one constructs the other (for we all construct others in one way or another).

Now, for Parfit (1971), psychological continuity is more central to ethics than personal identity, and this continuity is a “matter of degree” (p25). This equates with what Goodman (2009: 13) calls the “loose unity” of our causal continuity. Peter Harvey thus identifies the false notion of a “unitary” person, suggesting the Buddha accepted more a “person as a cluster of changing physical and mental processes” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 569). Of course, we should never presume that modern Western philosophers of the self are speaking the same language as Buddhologists. For example, we should be careful not to misread Parfit to be saying that his “matter of degree” also applies to rebirth, even when he says that psychological continuity can be regarded as “more important than sameness of body” (Parfit, 1971: 13); for Parfit clearly places the person within the brain (or parts of it) and seems to take “body” as being everything bar the brain. For the pre-scientific, Indian tradition, the brain (if acknowledged) would be considered just another part of the body (deha), along with
the sense organs (*indriyā*), of which the mind (*manah*) is but one.\(^{10}\) That is, according to Indian religions, mind is made of “matter” (*bhaūtika*) (see Ch.U.Bh. VI.v.1).\(^{11}\)

And, though consciousness (*cit, vijñāna*) is said to interact with the body in this life, it would primarily be mental imprints/tendencies (*samskāra/vāsanā*) which gave rise to psychological continuity across lives (see B.S.Bh. III.i.1 & Ch.U.Bh. VI.ix.3).

Limiting our study to this life then, psychological continuity is not so much a question of whether me at \(t_1\) is the same me at \(t_2\). The question is flawed from the start by the assumption that ‘me’ picks out the individual. We would have already assumed too much. Nor is the Reductionist analysis a complete denial of the relationship between me (\(t_1\)) and me (\(t_2\)). Rather, what Parfit (along with the Indian tradition) is saying, is that both me (\(t_1\)) and me (\(t_2\)) are **constructed** by past states of affairs and by present conditions. If your name remains Derek through \(t_1\) and \(t_2\), then we have a legitimate right to pick you out with the name “Derek” on both occasions. But we do not have the right to assume that you are unchanged. Nor should we fall prey to what Siderits (1997: 463) calls “naïve semantic realism”, believing Derek to be anything beyond that of a convenient designation. In arguing that the Buddhist allows for the convenient designation of the person on “pragmatic grounds”, Giles (1993: 176) thus inadvertently removes the Buddhist as a “candidate for utter elimination” (Siderits, 1997: 460). This manoeuvre is one of both Reduction and Construction. Through similar manoeuvres, Parfit (1984: 281-282) was able to drop the concept of a permanent self, later making the emotional claim that he consequently had less fear of

---

\(^{10}\) Wallace notes that Buddhists have “long ignored the brain’s influence on the mind” [i.e. consciousness] and “attribute little if any significance to it” (in Houshmand, *et al*, 1999: 163).

\(^{11}\) Notably, the Upaniṣads say that the mind (*manah*) is made of “food” (*annamayam*) (Ch.U. VI.v.4), a verse cited by Śaṅkara (U.S. Prose, 1.22) to prove to the pupil that the mind is part of the world of name and form (*nāma-rūpa*), and thus not an ultimate existent.
death. But more importantly, for this thesis, he also claimed that he was “more concerned about others” (p281). He therefore appears to agree with the Buddhists, who claim that letting go of the concept of ‘self’ leads to a greater degree of compassion for others, making one more prone to selfless action, or ‘altruism’.

But what, you may ask, of Śaṅkara? While Western scholars are currently ready to admit that, “Buddhism has some valuable contributions to make” with regard to the question of personal identity (Giles, 1993: 185), how is Śaṅkara to fit into this company of what we might assume to be self-denying atheists? For one, you might point out that Śaṅkara firmly believed in ātman. And two, you might think he believed this ātman to be God. These may seem like valid objections, but they are confused. For one thing, God as Lord (Īśvara) plays very little role in either Śaṅkara’s soteriological or ethical project. To be liberated is simply to understand that one’s consciousness is no other than the one consciousness (brahman). For the sharp-witted seeker of Self, it need have no further theological grounding. For such a seeker, it is not about sitting alongside God (Br.U.Bh. III.v.1); it is not even about “union” (samyoga) with brahman (U.S. Metric, 16.39-40). It is about knowing that one’s apparent (ābhāsa) individuality is not one’s ultimate status. Indeed Metzinger (2004: 550) correctly noticed that Śaṅkara’s intent was to avoid confusing ourselves with “the shadow” self. But we should also realise that “the shadow” (chāyā) for Advaita is more than just the body. It is also the apparent individuated self (jīva), which is taken to be true Self, like the “reflection” (chāyā) of one’s face in a mirror (U.S. Metric, 12.6). The task, for the Advaitin, is thus to “de-individuate the jīva” (Ram-Prasad, 2002: 7), that illusory subject which sets up a locus for relationships (sambandha) with God and the world (Ch.U.Bh. III.xiv.4). Only then does the seeker attain the “shadowless” (acchāyam) brahman (P.U. 4.10).
As for ethics, Śaṅkara’s main concern is with the freedom from socially imposed obligation that comes with a certain form of knowledge (see Chapter 5.1). This knowledge is then to be passed on (see Chapter 6.2). But this is not so much about doing God’s work as about the continuation of lineage. In fact, he is explicitly rejecting the ritual that ties the Brahmīn priest to the Gods. As for brahman, it plays no major part in Śaṅkara’s ethical project other than the fact that when one sees brahman and ātman as non-dual, then one is beyond ethical obligations. Śaṅkara’s soteriology, which is in fact a gnoseology, is less one of grace, faith and works, but more one of realisation. One only need wake up and then wake up others. And here lies his principal ethic. Placed in these austere terms, the Buddhist would have no objections to such a life. I therefore believe that we could justifiably work with Śaṅkara’s gnoseological and ethical project without reference to ‘God’ with all its Western connotations.

However, we may need to be more cautious when it comes to the case of Kṛṣṇa as Lord (Bhagavan). For there is no getting away from the fact that Śaṅkara looks up to Kṛṣṇa of the Gītā. He certainly never denies Kṛṣṇa his role of exemplary teacher of mankind, or as pure consciousness manifest. Nevertheless, while Kṛṣṇa is seen as the spokesman of social (egoless) ethics; the brahman-knower, as conceived by Śaṅkara, stands firmly outside this dutiful bond to Kṛṣṇa (see Chapter 4.3). Furthermore, the list of qualities that Śaṅkara applies to Kṛṣṇa12 (Bh.G.Bh., intro) are elsewhere, in his major works, denied applicability (B.S.Bh. II.ii.44-45). So once again, I feel we are justified in bracketing God (be it Īśvara, qualified (saguṇa) brahman or Kṛṣṇa) from

12 These are: knowledge (jñāna), sovereignty (aiśvarya), power (śakti), strength (bala), valour (vīrya), and splendour (tejas).
Śaṅkara’s main gnoseological concerns.¹³ We will, however, draw on the Bhagavad-Gītā Bhāṣya for his views on provisional ethics (see Chapter 4.3).¹⁴

Unlike other Brahmanical schools, Śaṅkara’s Advaita does not hold to the theory of multiple ‘selves’, either standing in direct relation to a personal God (re: Dvaita Vedānta), or ritually working towards their own private salvation (re: Mīmāṃsa). In fact, even these non-Advaitic schools claim ātman in a “purely formal” manner (Ram-Prasad, 2011: 220), where ātman pertains to essence rather than personhood. By personhood, I mean an individual with a unique psychological make-up, which emerges through social interactions. But, in a forthcoming paper, Ram-Prasad (2012) states that ātman is “too austere for the rich content of individuation”. So Doniger (2010) only confuses the issue by claiming that the “person is the individual soul, the atman, or self, which is identical with the brahman” (p168). While the average Hindu may well believe himself to have an ever-lasting individual ‘soul’ (jīvātman); this, according to Brahmanical tradition, is a mistaken view.

The mistake, as interpreted by the non-Advaitin, is to assume that one’s actions relate to the ātman within, the mere witness (sākṣin) of actions (cf. Bhagavad Gītā).¹⁵ The

---

¹³ This may be unpalatable for many modern Advaitins and they may well be equally justified in removing these brackets from their religious worldview. Much will depend on which of Śaṅkara’s texts one takes to be authentic and to which one gives priority. For example, Otto (1957) arrived at a theistic understanding of Śaṅkara through his admitted focus on the Gītā-Bhāṣya (p. xvii). In taking the Gītā-Bhāṣya to be an exception to the norm (in that it is greatly outnumbered by non-theistic works), and in taking it to be less authoritative to Śaṅkara than the Upaniṣads, I come to a very different conclusion, believing that Śaṅkara adopted the Gītā for its emphasis on provisional ethics. This, I believe, explains why Śaṅkara commented on it, despite its obvious theistic bias, and not just because it “enjoyed a very high standing” (Klostermaier, 2007: 74).

¹⁴ Śaṅkara’s commentary on the Gītā is the earliest extant version (Chari, 2005: xxiii).

¹⁵ The Gītā accepts “self-body dualism” (Perrett, 1998: 7) and multiple “indestructible selves” (p18). Thus Rosen’s (2002) discussion of the Gītā’s ethics plays on the eternity of “all souls” (p13). Śaṅkara does not accept this view of multiple selves (Bh.G.Bh. 2.12; B.S.Bh. II.iii.50). For the extent to which this divides the various Schools of Vedānta, see Chari (2005).
mistake, as interpreted by the Advaitin, is that the (socially and psychologically constructed) person takes consciousness as being their own, as “mine”; thus failing to recognise the singular nature of brahman (Ch.U.Bh. III.xiv.4). This mistake is what allows for the existence of jīvas (in the plural) and their transmigration. Here jīva is used in a manner similar to the Jains, and is comparable with the ātman of other Brahmanical schools. It is no more the pure witness, but is subject to phenomena through association with the individual person’s mental apparatus. The best that such a person could hope for, that is, prior to brahman-knowledge, is a symbolic meditational and/or devotional relationship with God (Ch.U.Bh., intro).

On the other hand, to see brahman is to see the falsity of the jīva “trope” of consciousness, putting an end to rebirth. For Śaṅkara, then, we are not given a ‘soul’ by God. Nor is it the ‘soul’ that sees and knows itself to be Self, as claimed in the Bhagavad Gītā (6.20) and echoed by Otto (1957: 4). To the Gītā’s (6.20) “seeing the Self by the self” (ātmanam paśyann ātmanī), Śaṅkara adds the words “received through one’s own mental apparatus” (upalabha mānah sve) (Bh.G.Bh. 6.20), which is Śaṅkara’s way of stressing that there is only one self which reveals itself locally.¹⁶ In the final analysis, there is only the attributeless (nirguṇa) all-oneness (sarvāikyam). The liberated person, the jīvan-mukta, lives out his days in this ultimate consciousness, not as an all-knowing soul, but as brahman embodied, until the karma which maintains his body runs out (B.S.Bh. III.iii.32; Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2). For such a gnoseology, culminating in an ideal cognitive state, it is sufficient to reduce ātman-

¹⁶ For an in-depth study of “seeing” in Vedānta, see Timalsina (2006).
talk to consciousness-talk. It is therefore a rather bland Advaitin metaphysics that is being offered here.\textsuperscript{17}

The consciousness in this consciousness-talk, according to Śaṅkara, is also your consciousness and mine. Derek’s consciousness at $t_1$ and $t_2$ are nothing other than brahman. Consciousness, as true reality, has remained unchanged, only the (adventitious) mental imprints in Derek’s mind have changed. That is, the “consciousness of individuals is ontologically identical (though phenomenologically different) from that universal consciousness” (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 178). And so, at the conventional level of discourse, Śaṅkara admits psychological continuity in basically the same manner as the Buddhists do. Mental imprints (\textit{saṃskārā}), deriving from action (\textit{karma}), which itself derives from the mistaken belief in individual agency (\textit{kṛtvā}), produces the clinging to individual goals. That is, all imprints are due to ignorance (\textit{avidyā}). Thus, while accepting rebirth as a phenomenon, his assessment of it is essentially negative. This assessment is in accord with early Buddhism. However, we shall see how later Buddhists, like Śāntideva, gave a re-evaluation of rebirth in light of the compassionate wish to be reborn for the benefit of others.

It would seem then that any division of Indian philosophical schools into ātmavādins and anātmavādins\textsuperscript{18} (e.g. Perrett, 2002: 377) is insufficient to bring out the import of Śaṅkara’s non-dual move. For example, both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara must answer the (Nyāya) objection that, “connection between action and fruit is impossible without an [individuated] self” (\textit{na karma phala sambandho yuktaś ced ātmanā vinā}) (BCA.

\textsuperscript{17} I trust that my focus on Śaṅkara’s selfless ethics will save me from the accusation of offering a “bloodless gnosis” (see Lipner, 2010: 248).

\textsuperscript{18} That is ‘Self-doctrine followers’ and ‘Not-self doctrine followers’, respectively.
The Dalai Lama, perhaps before he became fully acquainted with Vedānta, also seems to overlook Śaṅkara when he writes:

The non-Buddhists could not even assert the mere selflessness of persons, and from that, therefore, they derive the necessity of asserting a permanent, partless, independent person (Gyatso, 1975: 73).\(^{19}\)

Harvey (1987), on the other hand, does draw the distinction between those that believe in an “individual, inner self” (i.e. non-Advaita) and those that believe this self to be “universal” (i.e. Advaita).\(^{20}\) He claims that, from a Buddhist point of view, the former “encourages selfishness”, while the latter “can encourage impartiality to all” (p32). This seems to be based on the principle that, “As we think the ultimate reality to be, so we behave” (Radhakrishnan, 1989: 80). Yet, believing in an individual ātman would only encourage selfishness if one wrongly assumed it to be about a private self, somehow linked with one’s own history; that is, by confusing selfhood with personhood (see Gītā). In the words of Śāntideva: “However, egoism, which is the cause of suffering, increases from the delusion that there is a self” (duḥkha hetur ahamkāra ātma mohāt tu vardhate) (BCA. 9.77a). Here, he takes self to be the embodied person, “this dream-like form” (evam svapnopame rūpa) (9.87a), which consciousness grasps as being real.

In his Brahma-Sūtra Bhāṣya (I.i.1), Śaṅkara usefully lists all the different ways in which Indians have understood the meaning of ‘self’: as body-only (deha-mātraṃ) [Common people (prākṛtā janā) and the Lokāyata School], as mind (cetana), as momentary consciousness-only (vijñāna-mātraṃ kṣanika) [i.e. Yogācāra], as empty

---

\(^{19}\) The (translator’s?) use of the phrase “independent person” merely adds to the confusion.

\(^{20}\) I should also mention here that, this year, Siderits, et al (2011: 4) have tried to overcome this category problem by dividing self-views into three types: substantialist (non-Advaitin), non-substantialist (Advaitin) and non-self (Buddhist). This move is a welcome one that will no doubt have an impact on such disciplines as phenomenology and ethical theory.
Śūnya [i.e. Madhyamaka], as soul separate from the body and/or from God (Īśvaraḥ) [i.e. other Vedāntins], and as brahman [Advaita]. Halbfass (1983: 91-92) interprets Śaṅkara here to be claiming that even the Madhyamaka are referring to an “absolute ātman” when they speak of śūnya; however, he should not be taken this way. If we examine the Upadeśa Sāharsrī, we see that Śaṅkara’s (mistaken) view is that the Madhyamaka are total nihilists (vaināśika pakṣatvāt), who believe the body (deha) and the self (ātman) to be non-existent (asattvaṃ) (U.S. Prose, 2.55).

But whilst accepting that everyone (barring the Mādhyamika) believes that, in one form or other, they have a self, and that no one believes, “I do not exist” (na nāham asmīti) (B.S.Bh. I.i.1), Śaṅkara also denounces egoism (U.S. Prose, 1.6) and attachment to personhood (see Chapter 3.1). When claiming that, “The existence of the self cannot be denied” (ātmanaḥ pratyākhyātum aśakyatvāt) (B.S.Bh. I.i.4), he need only be read as implying the mere “inability to deny the particularity of consciousness” (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 165). This is so if the ‘non-substantialist’, by definition, “sees the self as just consciousness itself” (Siderits, et al, 2011: 4). And there is surely no controversy with the Buddhists here, for who could deny one’s own consciousness?

For Advaita, then, the “gnoseological project is the cultivation and disciplining of jīva-consciousness through analyzing away the inauthentic features of self found in egoity [ahaṃkāra]” (Ram-Prasad, 2011: 221). And it should also be pointed out that, just as knowledge of virtue may co-exist with non-virtuous action, so believing in non-self may co-exist with egoism. Thus, while extreme ‘egoism’ may well be the opposite of extreme ‘altruism’, it does not follow that a belief in non-self is necessarily altruistic. The removal of egoity is a gradual affair, and so Buddhists are
as prone to it as Hindus. Indeed, Śāntideva himself cries out, “Oh, why do you not get rid of this ‘I’ notion?” (ḥāṃkāram na naśyasi) (BCA. 8.179b). Thus, a view acknowledged by both the Buddhist and the Advaitin is that negative emotions emerge from a wrong conception of self, and that one must therefore start by inhibiting one’s identification with this false ego-sense.

Śaṅkara’s philosophy would therefore, along with Śāntideva’s, sit outside Parfit’s (1971: 26) “principle of self-interest” and, theoretically at least (see my Chapter 7), should pass his “principle of impartiality” (Parfit, 1971: 26). In fact, we might note here how Śaṅkara, in his commentary to the Īśā Upaniṣad (5-6), links two Vedic verses to explicitly claim a potential view of impartiality and universalism. First he highlights the verse “The Self that is within all” (ya ātmā sarvāntaraḥ) (Br.U. III.iv.1), and then links it with the verse:

\[ \text{yatsu sarvāṇi bhūtāny ātmany evān upaśyati} | \\
\text{sarva bhūteṣu cātmānam tato na vijugupsate} || \]

When a man sees all beings in this Self, and the Self in all beings, he feels no hatred (Īś.U. 6).

It is also worth comparing this to the Bhagavad Gītā’s:

\[ \text{sarva bhūtastham ātmānaḥ sarva bhūtāni cātmāni} | \\
\text{īkṣate yoga yuktāmā sarvatra sama darśanaḥ} || \]

One who has his mind self-absorbed through yoga, and who has the vision of universal sameness, sees his self existing in all things, and all things in his self (6.29).

In his commentary (Bh.G.Bh. 6.29), Śaṅkara claims that such a sense of universal belonging even extends to “inanimate” (sthāvara) objects. Besides presenting us with the potential for an Advaitin environmental ethics, two important teachings follow from this: 1) Just as one who is fully satisfied can have no desire (G.K. 1.9), so he
who is one with the Self can feel no hatred; and 2) from the ultimate perspective of Self-knowledge, the other is non-different from oneself. This gives an interesting twist to the notion that a motivational model of altruism, which focuses on the person’s intentions, must allow for “combinations of self-in-others and others-in-self” (Krebs & van Hesteren, 1994: 105).

Śaṅkara’s call for non-hatred can also be gleaned from the Upadeśa Sāharsrī, where he illuminates us about the signs of true knowledge:

\[
\text{śiṣyasya jñāna grahaṇam ca liṅgair buddhāvā agrahane hetūn adharma laukika pramāda nityāniya viveka viṣayāsanjātadyaḥ pūrva śrutatva lokacintāveksana jātyādyabhīmānādīṇ tat pratipakṣaś ċūrti-śmrṭivihitaḥ apanayet, akrodhādibhir ahimsādibhiś ca yamaiḥ, jñānāviruddhaiś ca niyamaḥ.}
\]

When [the teacher] sees by signs that knowledge has not been grasped by the pupil, he should remove the causes of non-comprehension, which are: [past] sins, worldly heedlessness, lack of firm preliminary learning concerning the discrimination between what is eternal and non-eternal, listening to worldly opinion, pride of caste, etc – by means contrary to those causes, and enjoined by the scriptures, that is non-anger, etc., non-violence, etc., and those observances which are not contrary to knowledge (U.S. Prose, 1.4).

Now Harvey (1987) has claimed that the [Advaitin] universal view “does not encourage respect for the individuality of different persons” (p32), by which he means “different mind-and-body combinations” (ibid.). Here Harvey is defining an individual in the early Buddhist manner as a combination of mind and form (nāma-rūpa). When Perrett (2002) argues that “Indian Buddhist Reductionists … were not

21 Cf. Cooper & James (2005: 32) on the connection between Naess’ “deep ecology” and “Self-Realization’. Śaṅkara attacks the Buddhist for not believing that inanimate objects were sentient (cetanāḥ), accusing the Buddhist of being “dry” (asāra) (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xi.2). But Jacobsen (1997) notes how, for the Buddhist, cetanā means “volition”, which implies a “degree of freedom” (p386). For a recent look at Buddha’s thoughts on trees and plants, see Gombrich (2009: 52-53). But also note how later Buddhism, in China and Japan, came much closer to Advaita. Thus, Harvey’s (2000) description of Dōgen’s ethics as, “Each aspect of nature has an intrinsic value as part of ultimate reality” (p177).

22 Also see Malinar (2007: 111ff) on the Gītā’s “Self of the selves of all beings” (sarva bhūtātma bhūtātmā) (Bh.G. 5.7).
Eliminativists about persons” (see above), he has in mind this definition of a person, with an implicit link to the concept of the five aggregates (the skandhas). I shall not take up this discussion of respect for individuality here, other than to note two things, one regarding Hinduism and the other Buddhism.

First of all, in revealing the concept of a singular brahman, the Advaitin indeed aims at the undermining of the conception of the individual, and this ought to be seen as a soteriological device. This need not affect their ethics. In fact, the Bhagavad Gītā specifically addresses its entire discourse to an individual, Arjuna, and Śaṅkara’s commentary makes this even more explicit by arguing that certain individuals should be exempt from Dharma (as social ethics), whereas Arjuna, in his current state of gnosis, or lack of, should not. As we shall see (Chapter 4.3), social ethics, for Śaṅkara, take place within a more preliminary conception of personhood, one which adopts a more “extended sense of self” (Ram-Prasad, 2011: 222) which assumes social responsibilities. It is therefore not true that there is “no ‘other’ in Advaita Vedānta”, as Krishna (2007: 110) claims. Secondly, I will simply note that when the Madhyamaka School denies the five aggregates ultimate status (see MMK. 4.1-7), we may have to ask if this also jeopardizes their respect for the individuality of different persons. Given that Śāntideva did not openly endorse the varna system (see Chapter 7), we will need to develop a more analytical method of investigation. However, his obvious gender bias (see Chapter 7.2) and his even more obvious division of people into bodhisattva and non-bodhisattva categories (see Chapter 6.1) does hint at the fact that distinctions still apply.

For the source of Ram-Prasad’s notion of an “extended sense of self”, see Zahavi (2008: 138-139) and Damasio (2000: 16-17).
Now we are in a position to understand how both a Mādhyamika Buddhist, like Śāntideva, and an Advaitin, like Śaṅkara, are both going to deny individual personhood at the ultimate level, but are both willing to admit the person at the conventional level. They would both be content with Harvey’s (1987) description of a man as “not just the sum of heredity and social, psychological … conditions”, but as having a “long past in a line of rebirths” (p45). That is, the man is not only socially constructed, but is an accumulation of his own karmic history, and is therefore to be taken as a conventional person-as-continuity. While the name “Derek” may pick out a specific embodied person in this life, it may not be used to pick that ‘person’ out in a future life. However, at the conventional level, the future being (human or otherwise), whose past karma is connected to Derek, will indeed be part of Derek’s continuum (saṃtāna). Derek dies, but the continuum lives on. Just as it is for an understanding of modern thinkers like Parfit, so this model of continuity is central to understanding Advaita and Madhyamaka ethics.

To re-iterate, at the conventional level, man does enjoy the fruits of his actions and, according to the laws of karma, will benefit or suffer on the basis of past actions of body, speech and mind. Hence, both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva would accept the classical pan-Indian truth that a man “becomes something good through good action and something bad through bad action” (punyo vai punyena karmanā bhavati, pāpaḥ pāpeneti) (Br.U. III.ii.13). And while the Buddha may have shifted the nature of karma back to “intention” (cetanā), the notion that “people make their own ‘destiny’ by their actions” (Harvey, 1990: 40) remained a central tenet of Buddhism. For example, Śāntideva writes that, “Suffering and happiness are the result of action”
(karmanah sukha duhkhe) (BCA. 9.122a). However, at the ultimate level of analysis, there is no underlying entity to which all this happens. The belief that there is a single, unique, entity throughout life to which all these events happen is a mistaken one. Śāntideva and Śaṅkara, if they were alive today, would agree with Metzinger (2004: 563) that, “No such thing as selves exist in the world”. These are all but shadows.

As we have already noted, Parfit suggests that through his insight into the lack of personhood, he was liberated from the fear of death and from a selfish attitude towards his own needs. This is understandable, for “fear and attachment are closely interdependent and the absence of one inevitably leads to the nonoccurrence of the other” (Brassard, 2000: 48). So we will find both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva stressing both the state of non-fear (nirbhaya) and non-attachment (anāsakti). To let go of the self is possibly the most fearful thing for man. But as we now know, Śāntideva and Śaṅkara are not denying our personhood, only the notion of a permanent individuated essence behind the person. It is this denial of the ultimacy of the individuated self by both traditions that gave rise to the “Selfless Response” found in the title of this thesis. But a man free of attachment and fear is surely free to be ‘selfless’ in a more altruistic sense, for fear and attachment “can stand in the way of acting on one’s obligation to help others overcome suffering” (Siderits, 2003: 201).

24 For a new look at the similarities and differences in karma doctrine in Vedānta and early Buddhism, see Gombrich (2009). I will not make much of the move towards intention: firstly, because I believe that the idea that it “created a vast gulf” between Buddhism and Brahmanism (p43) is an exaggeration which fails to take into account the more extended meaning of karma in Hinduism (see Olivelle, 1992: 61). Also see Lipner (2010: 251) on the importance of intention in Rāmānuja’s interpretation of the Gītā. Secondly, the “gulf” all but disappears when we consider Śaṅkara’s non-ritualism which dissociates karma from ritual action.
So, we can see how the term ‘Selfless’ may come to have three meanings in this text:

1) I will use ‘selfless’ (nirmamah) to indicate an ethical approach to the world, a form of conduct which aims to eradicate egoism, first by eliminating hatred and desire, and then by removing ignorance, especially the ignorance that leads to the assumption that one is an individuated self. For Śaṅkara, this ignorance, or nescience, takes the form of non-knowledge (a-vidyā, a-jñānam) of the true ‘Self’, which is brahman. Śaṅkara thus holds that our consciousness, our sense of presence, is but an aspect of brahman’s consciousness, which is all-pervading. For Śāntideva, ignorance may be taken as either a false belief in an individuated self (ātman), or again as avidyā, in the sense of non-realization of the inter-dependence of all phenomena (pratītyasamutpāda), spoken of as emptiness (śūnyatā).

2) This leads to the second meaning of ‘selfless’ (better ‘self-less’), the metaphysical view held by both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva that the individual has no permanent individuated ‘self’. For Śaṅkara, this amounts to saying that when the true Self (brahman) is known, the “imagined” individuated self (jīva) is no longer given any credence. However, this imagined self is given provisional status by Śaṅkara, who takes it to be that which transmigrates as a “subtle self” (liṅgātman) for those who fail to know brahman (Br.U.Bh. IV.iv.2). Here, the self is individuated in the sense that it is the same ‘self’ that leaves one body and takes up another body, which accounts for karmic continuity. But such transmigration ends with knowledge of brahman, and with this knowledge the (illusory) jīva also ends. As such, this provisional self is impermanent. Even so, being provisional, it is not non-existent, and as such
Śaṅkara may lean on the *jīva* (as well as the authority of the Vedas) as a focus of moral agency. The *jīva*, for Śaṅkara, was therefore a “point of contact between metaphysics and ethics” (Isayeva, 1993: 218). Of course, this “agent” will be shrouded in nescience, and thus all action prior to the dawning knowledge of *brahman* is, to varying degrees, deluded action.

For Śāntideva, there is no such provisional self, self-talk almost being a “taboo” in Buddhism (Collins, 1982: 12 & 71-77), just as the doctrine of difference is formally “forbidden” (*pratiṣiddha*) in Advaita (U.S. Prose, 1.26-30). Nevertheless, Śāntideva will also make use of the fact that people believe themselves to be individuated in his call for a regime of daily meditation leading to a personal commitment to selfless conduct. Even here though, under ultimate meditational analysis, impermanence applies to every moment of consciousness. Hence, even though the ‘person’ who meditates and takes on the Bodhisattva Vow may be accepted as real, there is no permanent underlying self as *ātman* or as *jīva*. So, although consciousness is in some sense individual and eternal (in the sense of being both beginning-less and end-less), it is nevertheless to be seen as impermanent (*anītya*) due its momentariness (*ksanikatva*). Transmigrations still take place, yet this is due to a consciousness-as-continuum rather than any permanent underlying individuated entity. In fact, due to the Vow (*pranidhāna*) demanded by Śāntideva’s ethics, transmigrations ought never to come to an end, as the “karmic potency of the vow falls upon successive” rebirths (Matics, 1971: 18). This is true selflessness.
3) Finally, the third use of ‘selfless’ (better ‘Self-less’) applies only to Śāntideva, for his theory that all is inter-dependent also acts as a denial of any substratum. There is therefore no brahman, no universal ground of all consciousness, the only ‘Self’ that Śaṅkara acknowledges in the ultimate sense.

Due to the delusions of mankind, people are bound to this world, and so both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva are forced into accepting a conventional cultural reality. Both will argue that the way these average worldly beings see the world is fundamentally flawed. For Śaṅkara, this world is not made up of independent objects and beings, but is in fact all but a transformation of the one brahman. For Śāntideva, neither objects nor beings exist from their own side. Nothing has the independent existence assumed by the worldly; everything is inter-dependent, existing due to causes and conditions.

Both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will argue that the worldly grasp at this world, imagining that by owning (impermanent) objects they will somehow find permanent happiness. Even the religious, who seek an (impermanent) divine realm for an (illusory) self, are surely deluded. However, it is here in this world of nescience that religion finds its true meaning. Therefore, both will equally denounce any attempt to deny this world of beings and physical objects. Hence, both will make strong appeals against any call for an idealism which might deny the role of ethical action and intention.

Both will go on to make use of a language of Two Truths (satya-dvaya), the conventional and the ultimate. Convention may be adopted in order to benefit those caught up in the ‘false’ or ‘mistaken’ (mithyā) image of the world, but these conventions are not to be taken as ultimately valid. The common aim of Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will be the liberation (mokṣa, mukti) of beings from nescience (avidyā).
Liberation for Śaṅkara is a state of freedom which comes when one has dropped the mistaken belief in an individuated self and thus become one with the all-knowing universal consciousness (see Chapter 5.1). Liberation for Śāntideva is the state of freedom which comes when one has dropped the false notion of self and gained a realisation of emptiness, the fact of dependent origination (see Chapter 5.2). Both will posit a living example, an embodied human being who is at once complete with the wisdom of the tradition, yet somehow beyond that tradition, an ideal of moral conduct, yet somehow beyond traditional moral law.

For Śaṅkara, the liberation which comes about when one sees that all is brahman is more than gnoseological, it is also the more final liberation from the cycle of rebirth. This is therefore the brahman-knower’s last incarnation. Even so, whilst still embodied, the liberated Advaitin (jīvan-mukta) will act selflessly and without fear of death. For Śāntideva, liberation is purely in gnoseological terms. He will demand that the bodhisattva use this insight to liberate other beings, not just in this life, but in future lives. His insight into selflessness is thus, paradoxically, a call to the ‘self’ to use that (ontological) selflessness to be more actively selfless. The ‘self’ is maintained to a certain degree through what we might call a “voluntary delusion” (see Chapter 2). Śāntideva then plays on the fact that we have now had an insight into non-self, but that we also remember what it was like to believe in a self (see Chapter 6.1). The bodhisattva thus has, what Metzinger (2004) calls, the “availability of earlier processing stages” (p566). By fully adopting the ultimate view of emptiness (śūnyatā) towards one’s own ‘self’ one is free to be (emotionally) selfless. By maintaining and accepting a deliberately delusional attitude towards the ‘selves’ of others, one is motivated into (ethically) selfless action. Such moments of volition,
brought about by the general willingness to help others, generate the mental formations which guarantee rebirth.

Adhering solely to the ultimate side of Buddhist analysis, Stone (1988) has claimed that “if we exist at all we come and go in a moment” (p532). Whilst accepting Siderits’ (1997: 461) critique that Stone mistakenly identifies the Buddha with Eliminativism, this statement of momentariness would have some appeal to a Mādhyamika like Śāntideva. Nevertheless, Śāntideva would want to add that the label ‘person’ has its value at the level of moral decision-making, thus reclaiming the Reductionist ground. Whilst developing my theory of “flickering” in both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara (see Chapter 2), I will also argue throughout the thesis that their basic acceptance of provisional reality allows for a much more permanent sense of the other, one which assumes fellow interlocutors.

Perhaps we can imagine Śaṅkara’s non-dualistic response as being: “We ‘exist’ up until the moment that we realize that all is brahman, from whence ‘we’ no longer exist”. But even here, the enlightened are entitled to turn back towards the world with sufficient compassion to see the “we” in us. In either case, Madhyamaka and Advaita demonstrate a thesis which assumes an ultimate lack of individual agency combined with an acceptance of that agency on both conventional and ethical grounds. This being the case, we may feel uneasy with Siderits’ (1997) description of persons as “conceptual fictions” (p464). Even if Giles (1993: 176) turns out to be right in assigning such a view to Hume (on the basis of his “bundle” theory) - a debate I will not pursue here - the ethical commitments of the Buddhist and Advaita traditions in India (as well as Tibet) should warn us against any such claim with regard to our Eastern counterparts. In fact, both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara wish to take these persons
(as “Derek” and “Mark” and “James” and “you”) as very much part of their reality. It would therefore seem that both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara are in an ideal position to answer those who know not how one could possibly live with such a counter-intuitive truth of non-individuation.

Let us see then how these two apparently opposing versions of revisionary metaphysics, espoused by Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, impact on the ethics of their traditions. How do these traditional ethical stances hold up to the theories of radical non-duality and emptiness, respectively? How indeed is one to live with the truth of non-individuation? What are the cognitive and emotive states of living liberation? Further, let us perhaps learn from their endeavours, and judge for ourselves whether their selfless models: 1) make sound sense, and 2) are of ethical value.
2. Methodology

Objectives and Hermeneutics:

This thesis continues a modern trend in Indian philosophy, the treatment of Buddhist and Brahmanical thinkers side by side, being subjected to analytic scrutiny (Ganeri, Kapstein, Ram-Prasad, etc). It is not my intention to show one system of thought to be superior to the other, nor to use one to show up the faults of the other. Rather I wish to present both on equal terms, as two answers to what they perceived as one fundamental question: how should one respond meaningfully to a world that is like an illusion, a world that is not quite what we perceive it to be? How ought we to react to this conscious, embodied existence that is fundamentally flawed, filled with suffering?

Yet this is no comparison for its own sake, simply placing two independent treatises side-by-side, showing up their similarities and differences. Rather, what I wish to demonstrate here is that two thinkers, from apparently conflicting religions, with radically opposite metaphysical starting points, may even so adopt a methodology that is remarkably similar, not only in structure, but in content and purpose. To reiterate, that a confirmed ātmavādin (self-doctrine follower) may so closely parallel an equally confirmed anātmavādin (not-self doctrine follower) in the denial of individual agency and may so similarly argue for the ethical and soteriological consequences that follow from this intuition is nothing less than remarkable. Such a coincidence of philosophical analysis by two authoritative voices surely demands that we take a fresh look at how we distinguish Buddhists from their Brahmanical compatriots.
Furthermore, while this thesis is set up as a comparison of Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, it is also, by default, a comparison of the Hindu Advaita Vedānta School and the Indian-Buddhist Madhyamaka School. That I chose Śaṅkara to represent the views of Advaita Vedānta surely needs no explanation, his *Brahma-Sūtra Bhāṣya* generally being considered the School’s foundational text. However, my choice of Śāntideva to represent the Indian Madhyamaka School may well come as a surprise to some. True, like Śaṅkara, Śāntideva is viewed as an “authentic” voice within the tradition, a voice that continues to be quoted to this day. But unlike Śaṅkara, Śāntideva’s pronouncements do not constitute the “seeds” of his tradition’s rhetoric, which (most scholars agree) are to be found in the writings of Nāgārjuna. Thus, most discussions of the Two Truths would take Śaṅkara and Nāgārjuna as their two major protagonists (e.g. Sprung, 1973: 2-3).

My choice then of Śāntideva (as opposed to Nāgārjuna) needs further explanation, and can thus be reduced to three broad reasons:

1) It is believed (by most modern historians) that Śāntideva was contemporary with Śaṅkara, which means that they were debating within the same Indian philosophical milieu. Nāgārjuna is presumed to have lived several centuries earlier.

2) I wish to demonstrate how both Advaita and Madhyamaka opposed and refuted the views of the Yogācārā. Nāgārjuna pre-dates the rise of the Yogācārā School.25

3) I wish to highlight the value that both traditions put on embodied conduct, and Śāntideva is indeed the most dominant Mādhyamika voice on this issue.26

---

25 For an alternative view, which has Nāgārjuna living for 600 years (!) and thus witnessing the rise of the Yogācārā School, see Hopkins (1996: 356-364).

26 The Wallaces state that Śāntideva’s *Bodhicaryāvatāra* is the “primary source of most of Tibetan Buddhist literature on the cultivation of altruism” (Wallace & Wallace, 1997: 7). In contrast, Westerhoff (2009) notes that, in Nāgārjuna, the “specific ethical consequences of Madhyamaka thought are virtually absent” (p215), and that it was left to later writers to explore those ethical dimensions (p216). Finnigan and Tanaka (2011) write that, “The Madhyamika thinker most famous for his explicitly ethical concern is Śāntideva” (p222).
There are those who would like to obliterate the difference between Madhyamaka and Advaita Vedānta by collapsing one into the other. This is done by either making the emptiness (śūnyatā) of Madhyamaka into an Absolute (e.g. Murti, Conze & Ninian Smart)\textsuperscript{27}, or else by taking the quality-less (nirguṇa) brahman of Advaita Vedānta to be a form of emptiness (e.g. Dasgupta)\textsuperscript{28} or by simply claiming that Buddhism is a form of Hinduism (e.g. Radhakrishnan & Vivekananda). But what I say here is, no, let emptiness be empty (even of itself) (BCA 9.32), and let the quality-less brahman be full of its being (sat) and its consciousness (cit) (U.S. Metric, 17.13). In other words, let these schools be the opponents, or even “arch-antagonists” (Klostermaier, 2007: 357), they themselves assumed they were. But having allowed them this much, let us then demonstrate just how close they were, not in doctrine or tradition, but in objectives and methodology.

Hence this thesis will follow Śaṅkara and Śāntideva as they both struggle to construct a philosophy which will attempt to leave their respective conduct-oriented traditions

\textsuperscript{27} Conze (1967) claims that, “the system of the Madhyamikas was based on the implication of a vision of the Absolute” (p215). This notion turns emptiness into a ground, which it is not. Conze’s (2001: 105) “ ineffable Oneness” and “Spirit” sound more like Advaita than Buddhism (cf. V.C. 482). Conze (2001: 90) leans on Murti; but King (1995: 233) rightly states that the “absolutism that scholars such as T.R. Murti find in the mainstream philosophical texts of Indian Mahāyāna Buddhism simply is not present!”. While limiting himself to the work of Nāgārjuna, Streng (1973) also speaks up against the view of Conze and Murti. For Murti’s response to Streng, see Murti (1973: 22-23). On the Madhyamaka School as a whole, Williams emphatically states, “There is no Absolute” (in Crosby & Skilton, 1995: xxiii). Huntington (1989: 22) also calls the absolutist view a “fatal misconception”. Hopkins (1996) points out that the “division of the two truths is not an ontological division” (p418), thus warning against the use of the term “Absolute” (p420). Matilal (1973) likewise points out Madhyamaka’s “non-committal attitude in ontology” (p55). Ninian Smart (1964) was therefore wrong to speak of Madhyamaka and Advaita as “two forms of Absolutism” (p105).

\textsuperscript{28} Dasgupta’s (1975) statement, that it is “difficult indeed to distinguish between pure being and pure non-being” (p493) would seem to have the backing of one Anthony Flew (2005: 44). However, as Murti (1973: 10) points out, Vedānta starts by taking ātman as ultimately real, whereas Buddhism starts by rejecting its ultimacy. So, historically speaking, we can never simply collapse one tradition’s beliefs into the other. While Vedānta is asking how to define this Being, Madhyamaka is saying that there never was such Being. These are widely different standpoints. Dasgupta’s mistake is to ignore history, while Murti’s mistake, in return, is to reify Madhyamaka’s emptiness. Needless to say, this does not imply that Flew (2005) was wrong in his evaluation of the history of ideas (p88), for Flew’s goal was truth (p125), not comparison.
intact, whilst at the same time putting forward a radical view of the absence of an ultimate moral agent. We will come to understand that both wish to:

1) Deny the ultimacy of the individual agent.

2) Deny the (Yogācāra) denial of the world.

3) Leave intact a form of conduct consistent with moral agency.

In the broadest sense I see this comparison as having the following logic: Having highlighted how radically opposite the metaphysics of Śāntideva and Śaṅkara are, I will go on to show how this, quite surprisingly, leads the two models to agree on their denial of the ultimacy of the individuated self, the philosophical core of the comparison. I will then propose that they both continue to subscribe to the ethics of their respective traditions. They will both insist that the ideal person, who truly knows reality (tattva), will naturally act according to the Law of moral correctness (Dharma), albeit in an unconventional manner. A liberated being approaches the world according to a Two-Truths (satya-dvaya) model, by which I mean a system whereby it is assumed that there are certain people who can see reality as-it-is (yathā-bhūmata) and who stand out against the vast majority who cannot. These people are aware of the ultimate truth (paramārtha-satya), of how things truly are. At the other end of the spectrum, there are the common folk, who are only privy to the relative world of objects and means. In taking this epistemological approach, I will be speaking of “Truths” more often than “Realities”, though the notion of “Two-Realities” will also feature in my analysis of Śaṅkara’s view of the world (see Chapter 6.2). The relative truth is referred to under various Sanskrit terms, ‘vyāvahārika’, ‘prātibhāsika’, or ‘saṃvrtti’. Often, however, the term adopted by both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara is ‘loka’, the ‘worldly’. Here they are either bowing to consensus or contrasting it with the views of the wise. Though never claiming to be liberated or
enlightened, both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara will adopt this mode of epistemological (and/or) ontological analysis. Our first and primary hermeneutical tool then is this Two-Truths stance, and an awareness of the shifts in truth-levels.

It is noteworthy that Śāntideva begins his chapter on wisdom (*prajñā*) in the *Bodhicaryāvatāra* (from here on, *BCA*) with these verses:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{saṃvṛtiḥ paramārthaś ca satya-dvayam idaṃ mataṃ} & | \\
buddher agocaras tattvam buddhīḥ saṃvṛtir ucyate & || \\
tatra loko dvidhā drṣto yogī prākṛtakas tathā & | \\
tatra prākṛtako loko yogitokena bādhyate & || \\
\end{align*}
\]

It is declared that there are two truths, the conventional and the ultimate. Reality is not within the scope of the intellect. The intellect is said to be [grounded in the] conventional. Thus people are seen to be of two types, the ordinary and the *yogīs*. The views of the ordinary are superseded by those of the *yogī* (*BCA*. 9.2-3).

The *yogī* then is not simply an intelligent person; he is one with a superior insight into nature. Likewise, Śaṅkara will state that only the brahman-knower (*brahma-jñānin*, *brahma-vid*) is privy to the ultimate view of things, not the ritualist, believing as he does in a separate God:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ātma-jñānasya kartavyatvāt} & | \text{ātmā ca aṣāṇāyādi dharmavān na} \\
\text{bhavātītyā sādhanā phala vilakṣaṇo jñātavyah; ato ‘vyatirekena} \\
\text{ātmano jñānām avidyā ‘anyo ‘sāvanyo ‘ham asmīti’ ‘na sa veda’ ...} \\
\text{śrutibhyāḥ} & \nonumber \\
\end{align*}
\]

Self-knowledge is to be attained, and the self - being devoid of the attributes of hunger, etc. - is to be distinguished from the means and fruits of ritual action. To understand the self as being identified with these is ignorance. As it says in [this] Upaniṣad [I.iv.9]: “He [who worships another God thinking] ‘He is one, and I am another’ does not know” (Br.U.Bh. III.v.1).

Nor is the one who insists on relying on the intellect, privy to the ultimate:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{api ca mithyā-jñāna punaḥ sare ‘yam ātmano buddhy upādhi} \\
\text{sambandaḥ | na ca mithyā-jñānasya samyag-jñānād anyatra} \\
\text{nivṛttir astiṣṭato yāvad brahmāmatān avabodhaḥ tāvad ayaṃ buddhy} \\
\text{upādhi sambandaḥ na śāmyati darṣayati ca} & \nonumber \\
\end{align*}
\]
Moreover, this connection of the self with the adjunct of intellect has forever been associated with misunderstanding and misunderstanding cannot come to an end except through right knowledge. Hence, so long as there is no realisation of the Self as brahman, so long does the connection with the intellect persist (B.S.Bh. II.iii.30).

There is a problem with this model however. It leads one to believe that something is either ultimate or relative. That is, it leads to an either/or methodology. But to jump to this conclusion would be to completely misinterpret both traditions. What we need to realise is that knowledge or wisdom is not an all or nothing situation. Both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara will offer a gradual approach to complete knowledge. Taber (1983) has argued that Śaṅkara’s philosophy is “transformative”, by which he means that he accepts certain virtues and practices as “necessary means” to liberation (p5). Śāntideva is working within the classic six pāramitā (perfections) schema of means (i.e. generosity, morality, patience, effort, meditation) and wisdom.\(^\text{29}\) Reaching a new stage of perfection implies a new level (bhūmi) of understanding, so there are clearly those that must partially know the whole truth.

It is interesting that Kohlberg’s “much discussed work on moral development” (Scott & Seglow, 2007: 69-70) also describes six “hard” stages (Krebs & van Hesteren, 1994: 106) of moral development which successively transform and displace each other. I do not intend to make too much of this here for two reasons: 1) Śāntideva’s stages do seem to be “softer” than those found in, say, the Daśabhūmika Sūtra, and 2) Kohlberg-like “hard-stages” models seem to be going out of vogue (Krebs & van Hesteren, 1994: 108). In fact, they were already coming under attack in the late 1970’s for being too rigid and for ignoring social factors (Rosenthal & Zimmerman,

\(^{29}\) That is: dāna, śīla, ksānti, vīrya, dhyāna and prajñā. While this is not made completely explicit in the BCA, I will present an argument (see Chapter 3.2) which justifies the use of this schema.
Krebs and van Hesteren (1994) prefer a model based on what they call a “soft conception of stages” which implies “quantitative increases in cognitive capacity or competence” (p107). It is particularly interesting that they suggest that people “may well behave at a high level in one domain and at a low level in another” (ibid.). This would presumably allow a yogi, who had reached a certain level of “seeing”, to remain prone to seeing the world in a manner more in line with the conventional norms of perception. It would also allow for a yogi to cognize the world in terms of “old stage-structures” (p110). Also, given that people are able to “flexibly shift” between stages (Rosenthal & Zimmerman, 1978: 150-151), there seems no reason why we should not allow for involuntary and/or voluntary “flickering” between levels, a notion I will draw on throughout this thesis.

In the Buddhist tradition, those that partially know the truth are sometimes referred to as ‘bodhisattvas’, and at other times as ‘yogis’. It is therefore of paramount importance that Śāntideva follows the above introductory verses with the following line: “Moreover, the views of some yogis are superseded by the views of others of even higher wisdom” (bādhyante dhīviśeṣeṇa yogino ‘py uttarottaraiḥ) (BCA. 9.4a). Commentaries indicate that a yogi is anyone who has attained the path of seeing (darśana mārga) (Sweet, 1977: 56-57). The Dalai Lama states that, “when one cognises emptiness directly for the first time, the path of seeing is attained” (Gyatso, 1975: 45), and one enters the first stage (bhūmi). In the Śikṣa Samuccaya (from here

30 On the notion of “bi-levelled” seeing in Vedānta, see Timalsina (2006: 146).

31 The Śikṣa Samuccaya (Compendium) even divides the ignorant into categories (Ś.S. 180-181), speaking of the “more deluded” types (mūḍhatarāṇāṁ).

32 This is the third path (mārga) of five, as described by Vasubandhu and Asaṅga. These are the paths of preparation (sambhāra), application (prayoga), seeing (darśana), cultivation (bhāvanā) and completion (niṣṭhā).
On, *Compendium*, Śāntideva distinguishes between those who have entered the stages (*bhūmi-praviṣṭam*) and “ordinary” men (*prthag-jana*) (*Ś.S.* 140). Of these ordinary men, Śāntideva says that their minds waver (*cala cittatāyā*). But once we understand that “even an ordinary man” (*prthag-jano ’pi*) can be a *bodhisattva* (*Ś.S.* 6), we see that they are only “ordinary” when compared with those *bhūmi-praviṣṭam*, and are thus an intermediate category, the so-called “commencing” *bodhisattva* (*ādikarmika-bodhisattva*). But there is also an indication that one may fall back from a higher level of realisation. In the *BCA*, Śāntideva says that a male *bodhisattva* may still fall under the spell of a beautiful woman because “at the time of seeing her, the influence of emptiness [in him] is weak” (*tad dṛṣṭi kāle tasyāto durbalā śūnya vāsanā*) (*BCA.* 9.31b). Thus, we see that meditation on emptiness can lead to “different degrees” of wisdom (*prajñā*) (Williams, 2009: 79) as it “proceeds through a number of stages” (p80) (see Chapter 5.2). It is due to such experience and development that one yogi’s wisdom may be said to be higher than another’s.

With a similar stress on gradualism and levels of wisdom, Śaṅkara states that the scriptures, “gradually remove [the pupil’s] ignorance about [the Self]” (*śanais tad viṣayam ajñānam nivartayitum*) (*U.S. Prose*, 1.42). And again:

\[
cittopadhi viśeṣa tāratamyādāmanah kūṭastha nityasyaika rupasyāpy uttarottaramāviśkṛtasya tāratamyamaśvaryaśakti viśeṣaḥ śrūyate ||
\]

One hears about the Self – unchanging and eternally uniform though it is – that there remains a difference in the degree of manifestation of glory and power, caused by the gradation of the minds through which it is conditioned (*B.S.Bh.* I.i.11).

33 I take this to mean either a person who came to Buddhism through the Mahāyāna, or one who has converted from the Śrāvaka (individual liberation) path. The *Compendium* was intended for such people (*Ś.S.* 356).

34 Kelsang Gyatso (1994: 287) interprets the notion of higher *yogis* (*BCA*. 9.4a) to be referring to those of the Prāsaṅgika School, but I find this doubtful (see note 7 on p15). Cf. Dalai Lama (2005: 30) and Dalai Lama (1988: 22-23).
Moreover, “It is known that the gradation of authorization is determined by people’s abilities, predilections, etc” (prasiddham cārthitvasāmarthyāvid vattādhikrtam adhikaitāratamyam) (B.S.Bh. I.4). Furthermore, Śaṅkara talks of those aspirants of slow or middling understanding (manda madhya pratipatiṁ prati), who must rely on meditation and symbolic devices (Ka.U.Bh. I.ii.17). 35 Again, Śaṅkara says of meditation on the letter ‘OM’, that:

tānyotāny upāsanāni sattva śuddhi karatvena vastu tattvāvabhāsakatvāt advaita jñāna upakārakāni

These recitations are supplementary aids towards a non-dual realisation by way of presenting a flash of true reality through the purification of the mind (Ch.U.Bh., intro).

Moreover, Śaṅkara even admits that a brahman-knower may remain with his wife and desire worldly objects due to deep-seated tendencies which “cannot suddenly be dropped” (na sahasā nivartayitum) (Ch.U.Bh. VIII, intro). But if the “empirical world of multiplicity” truly disappeared from the consciousness of a brahman-knower (see Deutsch, 1973: 84), how would this knower even recognise his wife or any other thing as being an object of particular value? Gandhi (2009: 150) once said:

The idea that the Brahman is real and that the visible universe is illusory is simply beyond the capacity of our reason to comprehend. How difficult it must be, then, to live according to it, to live forever absorbed in the Atman.

Gandhi adopts this move to demonstrate the advantages of the path of karma-yoga in tandem with devotion to a personal God; but I adopt it to show that the majority of seers are simply not “forever absorbed”, be they Hindu or Buddhist. In fact, Gandhi later adopts such a view when he states that the free ethical reign given by Kṛṣṇa to

35 On the irony of Śaṅkara attacking the Buddha for (supposedly) adopting different levels of teaching to meet aspirants’ needs (B.S.Bh. II.ii.32) and yet praising the Upaniṣads for doing the same thing, see Halbfass (1983: 90-91).
one without a sense of “I” (Bh.G. 18.17) is in fact written about an “imaginary, ideal” figure (Gandhi, 2009: 191). In other words, no such person exists. And we should note that Śaṅkara speaks of “teachers who are almost omniscient” (sarva-jña kalpair ācāryaiḥ) being capable of imparting brahman knowledge (P.U.Bh., intro). So when comparing the Advaitin teacher with their students and others, we are talking about relative wisdom rather than omniscience versus ignorance.

This calls for a second hermeneutical tool, for we now have those that fully know reality, those that partially know reality (through glimpses of its nature), and those that simply know not. While the first tool was ontological in nature, this will need to be more epistemological. It is of paramount importance to realise that both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara assume the average person to be epistemically deluded. As Śāntideva puts it:

{lohana bhāvā drśyante kalpyante cāpi tattvatah |
na tu māyā-vad ity atra vivādo yogi lokayoh ||

Ordinary people see existent things and imagine them to be real. They do not see them as illusion-like. This is where there is dispute between the worldly and the yogis (BCA. 9.5).

And even the Brahmins come under attack from Śaṅkara:

{kartṛ bhokṛ sva-bhāva vijñānavataḥ taj janita karma phala rāga
dveṣādi doṣavataś ca karmavidhānāt ... tasmāt avidyādi doṣavat eva
karmāṇi vidhiyante; na advaita jñānavataḥ

Rites are enjoined for a person who naturally has the notion of being an agent and an enjoyer, and who is possessed of the defects of attraction for and aversion against the results of such rites ... Therefore rites are enjoined only for those who have such defects as ignorance, etc., but not for one who is possessed of non-dual knowledge (Ch.U.Bh., intro).

But the yogis themselves are prone to certain errors until they are fully enlightened. And though not as explicit as Śāntideva about levels of knowledge, Śaṅkara will also
note this tendency to err by those who have yet to be fully established (*sthita*) in brahman (Br. U. Bh. I.iv.10). And as we have just seen, these errors can compromise the ascetic ideals of Śaṅkara. Flaws aside, they are still to be known as men of realisation.

I will refer to these people in the middle category as having a “flickering” consciousness, i.e. one which flickers between common delusions and knowing the ultimate truth. In the case of Śāntideva, we see that flickering is apparently imposed on the *bodhisattva* in order to maintain a focus for a compassionate response to those who suffer. He writes:

\[
\begin{align*}
yadi sattvo na vidyeta kasyopari kṛpeti cet & | \\
kāryārtham abhyupetena yo mohena prakalpitaḥ & || \\
kāryaṃ kasya na cet sattvah satyamihā tu mohataḥ & | \\
duḥkha vyupaśamārtham tu kārya moho na vāryate & ||
\end{align*}
\]

*[If you argue] “For whom is compassion if no beings exist?”* [We respond] For anyone who [our voluntary] delusion projects for the sake of what must be done. [Objection] Whose is the task to be done if there are no beings? [Response] True, the work is indeed delusional, but in order to bring about the end of suffering, the delusion which conceives the task is not restrained (BCA. 9.75-76).

In the case of Śaṅkara, flickering is my way of saving him from contradiction when he claims that one needs to have given up the world of form in order to be enlightened, but then speaks of those enlightened ones who still fall under the illusion of form.

Śaṅkara’s ingenious solution is to speak of the strength of past tendencies which, once in a while, may create obstacles to clear seeing. He writes:

\[
bādhitam api tu mithyā-jñānam dvi-caṃdra jñānaṃ vāṃskāra vaśāt \\
kīṃcit kālam anuvartata eva
\]
However, mistaken cognition, even when annulled, continues for a while owing to the influence of past tendencies, like the cognition of two moons [due to an eye condition] \(^{36}\) (B.S.Bh. IV.i.15).

Again, in the Br. U.Bh, Śaṅkara says that there are those who hold that brahman-knowers maintain desire for sexual union (\textit{sambandham}\textit{ḥ}) and accuses them of not having listened to the Upaniṣad (Br. U.Bh. II.iv., intro). And yet, in the Ch. U.Bh, Śaṅkara makes what appear to be two contradictory statements about the relationship between men of knowledge and women. First he tells us that a man of knowledge (\textit{viduṣāḥ}), unlike the worldly, does not amuse (\textit{krīḍati}) himself with women (VII.xxv.2), and then he tells us that, due to past habits dying hard, the spontaneous detachment brought about by realization may not be sufficient to hold back the force of lustful tendencies, and so injunctions of celibacy, etc. (\textit{brahmacaryādi}) become necessary (VIII, intro). But if one who desires after women cannot possibly know the Self, then how does this situation arise? The answer lies in the above notion of latent tendencies (\textit{saṃskārā/vāsanā}).

Here I wish to note that my concept of “flickering” is more useful than Marcaurelle’s either/or interpretation of Śaṅkara’s position. Marcaurelle (2000) states that, for Śaṅkara, “one can \textbf{either} identify with the desireless and actionless Self \textbf{or} with the personality of a householder nourished by desire, but not with both at the same time” (p132, emphasis mine). But where there are latent tendencies, there is also flickering,

\(^{36}\) The two-moon (\textit{dvī-candra}) analogy is repeated at B.S.Bh. III.ii.21 and C.U.Bh.II.xxiii.1, where the eye condition is given as “\textit{timira}” and “\textit{taimirika}” respectively. The same condition is mentioned in Candrakīrti’s \textit{Prasannapadā} (58.7-9), which includes the phrase “\textit{taimirika dvī-candra}”. Skoog (1996: 66) refers to the condition as “diplopia", whereas Arnold (2005: 149) relates it to “cataracts”. The term “\textit{timira}” is also found in the U.Ś. (Prose, 1.40), with Jagadānanda (1941: 29) referring to the condition as “amaurosis”. It is also found in the Diamond-Sūtra (32) as one of the nine analogies of illusion. Conze (2001: 70) relates it to “blindness” or “cataract”. Monier-Williams’ Sanskrit Dictionary offers “partial blindness” as a possible translation (p447), which seems very apt.
and as such one can indeed live as a householder with desire for one’s wife whilst at the same time having periods of brahman-consciousness.

As well as these temporary losses of brahman-consciousness, there are also temporary breakthroughs. Thus, Śaṅkara speaks of those who chant certain mantras having a “flash” (avabhāsaka) of true reality (Ch.U.Bh., intro).  Śaṅkara’s view is that brahman-consciousness can be both gained and lost. The monastic life (without wife, sons or duties) is the best way of ensuring that most of one’s time is spent in brahman-consciousness, guaranteeing final liberation. He writes:

\[ tac ca itat paramārtha darśanaṁ pratipattum icchatā varṇāśramādy abhimānakṛtapāṅktarūpaputravittalokaiṣāṇādībhyo yuutthānaṁ kartavyam \]

And a man who wishes to attain this view of the ultimate truth should abandon the fivefold form of desire for sons, wealth and worlds, which result from misconceptions about caste and life order, etc. (U.S. Prose, 1.44)

Flickering consciousness, or temporary lapses, is therefore a most useful means of interpreting Śaṅkara’s way of allowing for the behaviour of the enlightened householders. In fact, as I will argue throughout this thesis, Śaṅkara’s moves with regard to the actions of knowers will not do unless one accepts the notion of flickering. In other words, the issue is not whether the person is fully enlightened or not, the point is that the person can be enlightened at \( t_{x} \) and slightly deluded at \( t_{y} \), and that he may flicker between these states.

---

37 The V.C. speaks of “the mind continually returning inwards” (pratyag-avasthitam manasya) (276), which Mādhavānanda (trans. 2003: 107) translates as, “The mind becomes gradually established in the Inmost Self”. **
In the case of Śāntideva, this flickering is admitted, and is said to go “unrestrained”. In other words, it is voluntary. In the case of Śaṅkara, it seems less than voluntary. The brahman-knower, who Śaṅkara feels should be celibate (see Chapter 3.1) lapses into lustful thoughts due to past habits. However, when we consider the case of teaching (see Chapter 6.2), we will come to understand that Śaṅkara’s ideal teacher must be capable of distinguishing a Brahmin male from a non-Brahmin female even though the brahman-knower is said to be beyond seeing the world in such dualistic terms. My theory of flickering would allow for this level of conventional seeing by claiming that the knower switches to a more provisional view of reality. In a sense, this is more a case of oscillating between Two Realities, but because Śaṅkara has already admitted the negative effect of past tendencies, I prefer to stay with the notion of flickering, which is perhaps a more dynamic form of switching. Whether this mode of switching is also to be seen as erratic is another question and is beyond our knowledge. Whatever the speed or frequency of switching, my argument is that it must take place.

Now Śaṅkara may be comforted by recent research that seems to show that the “higher a person’s level of development, the lower the probability that he or she will invoke low stage forms of thought and behaviour” (Krebs & van Hesteren, 1994: 110). Nevertheless, the point has been made that enlightenment is not an all or nothing situation and this is another essential point which will help us understand the question of self. To repeat, I am claiming that both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara can be saved from contradiction if we assume that their knowers of reality flicker between seeing the world in ultimate terms and in seeing it provisionally. By seeing the world in ultimate terms, they are capable of its transcendence. And by seeing the world provisionally, they allow themselves the ability to act compassionately for others.
Flickering also allows them to see themselves as having no individuated self whilst maintaining the notion of an individuated self in the other. Also, through the notion of flickering, we can gather that those of less than perfect understanding may still have moments or flashes of absolute truth which provide them with religious authority.

When we come to the ethical implications of such epistemological assumptions, it may also be worth bearing in mind that Monroe (1998) has come to similar conclusions with regard to altruism, which she describes as “running along a continuum” (pp7 & 16-18). Behaviour is never purely altruistic or purely self-interested, but always lies somewhere between. Both our models refuse either/or categorizations. Krebs and van Hesteren (1994) also see this as a key feature of their model, claiming that it “supplies a basis for surmounting problems with either-or, egoism-altruism dichotomies, implying that most helping behaviours are guided by both egoistic and altruistic goals” (p104).

De Silva (1994) brings the gnoseological and the ethical fields together, when he says that “the more penetrating our insight into the no-self doctrine is, the more vibrant becomes the self-transcending emotions of compassion and kindness” (p312). As the self here is the ego-centred (illusory) individuated self, this is equally capable of incorporating the Advaitin realisation of the “nothing” that one is (Deutsch, 1973: 48). De Silva’s (1994: 312) quoting of Iris Murdoch’s - “The humble man, because he sees himself as nothing, can see other things as they are” - surely justifies my claim. Both the affective and the cognitive faculties, including the ability to see reality as-it-is, are thus meaningfully tied to the denial of the individuated self. It is only compassion for others that prevents the Mādhyamika and the Advaitin from seeing them as, what Krishna (2007: 110) has called, “absolute ontological nullities”.
Krebs and van Hesteren’s (1994: 114-115) Table of “Stage Alignments” (see below) is of much interest here, for it shows theorists positing completion stages with regard to self and to morality. According to Krebs & van Hesteren (1994: 134), the first social scientist to study altruism was Harvard Sociologist, Sorokin, who argued for a “supraconscious” level of development, which, he claimed, leads to cases of “supreme altruists”. Now, two of the examples he gave were, interestingly enough, Gandhi and the Buddha. So it would seem that Hinduism and Buddhism do indeed have much to offer in the field of ethics, especially in the domain of altruism.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Maslow</th>
<th>Gilligan</th>
<th>Kegan</th>
<th>Kohlberg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Physiological survival</td>
<td>Incorporative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>Impulsive self</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Safety orientation</td>
<td>Orientation to individual survival</td>
<td>Imperial self</td>
<td>Heteronomous morality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Individualism, instrumental purpose and exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/3</td>
<td></td>
<td>1st transition from selfishness to responsibility</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Love, affection and belonging orientation</td>
<td>Goodness as self-sacrifice</td>
<td>Interpersonal self</td>
<td>Interpersonal conformity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Esteem and self-esteem orientation</td>
<td>Institutional self</td>
<td></td>
<td>Social system and conscience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4/5</td>
<td></td>
<td>2nd transition from goodness to truth</td>
<td>Interindividual self</td>
<td>Social contract; individual rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Self-actualization</td>
<td>Non-violence</td>
<td></td>
<td>Universal ethical principles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>Universal love</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1: Stage Alignments (selected columns) from Krebs & Hesteren (1994)

Examining the table in detail, we have a possible comparison with Śaṅkara in Maslow’s “self-actualization” and Gilligan’s “non-violence”. Gilligan’s transition
from sacrifice to truth also seems to parallel somewhat Śaṅkara’s view of the Vedas as a transition from ritual action (karma) to knowledge (jñāna). And for a possible comparison with Śāntideva, we have Kegan’s “Inter-individual self” and Kohlberg’s “Universal love”, which appear to match up with the Madhyamaka view that the realisation of inter-dependence gives rise to an absolute compassion.

Unlike our Western theorists, with regard to ethics, both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will both face the same paradox of why selfless persons should be concerned with following the ethical prescriptions at the conventional level. Both will need to answer why a liberated being should even bother to help those who are seen as being without individuated selfhood. They will both mix ultimate and conventional truth in their responses in what may seem like a paradoxical manner, both relying on the analogy of dream and illusion. However, they will both strongly deny idealistic theories of reality, which, I will argue, are potentially dangerous to their ethical systems, for such theories might be seen as questioning the reality of persons even at the conventional level. By comparing Śāntideva’s worldview with Śaṅkara’s, it will be shown that a selfless response to an illusion-like world is a common factor in both models. A critical reflection on these models will assess whether the lack of moral agency is a meaningful notion and whether it is a positive factor in the pursuit of ethics.

It will therefore be shown that both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara prescribe forms of ethical conduct which seem to assume an agent whilst also insisting on the lack of ultimacy of this agent. They will both open themselves to similar criticisms, namely “Who is the actor?” and “Who are they acting for?”. If these criticisms can be overcome, both models might suggest that a denial of an ultimate individual-as-moral agent is a notion
worthy of consideration. I will argue that the way to overcome them is through the notion of Two Truths and the implied flickering between them.

Comparison and Tension:

In a recently published book on Śāntideva, Clayton (2006) felt the need to give a lengthy explanation of the validity of comparison as a human act. She concluded that it is through comparison that “we come to know, integrate, and articulate knowledge of anything” (p12). To a certain extent, as an academic seeking my own comparative methodology, I am happy to accept her conclusion. However, I would like to add some “tension” to this conclusion, for it all seems a little too neat, too positivist, and there remains in me a certain degree of disquiet.38

Three questions keep arising: 1) Can these philosophies actually be understood by the “uncommitted” mind?; 2) Can we actually compare systems which deal in non-dualistic frameworks and Two-Truth hierarchies and come away with anything like certain knowledge?; and 3) Should we, as academics, even be aiming so high?

It is beyond question that we must aim for clarity of articulation, but we ought never to assume that what we articulate is fact. After all, metaphysics and ethics are not mathematics. Our interpretation can only ever be tentative. The interpretive (mystical) question - “Do relative matters filter back into the ultimate?” may have to be restated academically as - “Do those truths accepted within provisional reality have

38 For a particularly stirring critique of “positivist” epistemologies, see Code (1998). For similar concerns about “rationalism” and “value-free objectivity” within the context of Madhyamaka studies, see Huntington (1989: 113-119). Also see Taber (1983) on academic approaches to Advaita.
an effect on the ultimate truths being posited?” The thesis here is that they do, but only partially. In order to remain coherent to the world, the relative discourse must put pressure on the ultimate view, but the ultimate view can only be allowed to bend, never to break. The resulting “tension”, generated by the awareness of these two views, shall always be there, not only in all truth claims, but in all prescriptions to act. Both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara are equally subject to this model, for they equally flicker between the Two Truths in their description of the world. All we can do then is try to give each philosopher the best reading we can, and to articulate our findings in the clearest manner possible, being as sympathetic to their project as possible, whilst remaining objectively critical. Comparison, at its best, helps to tease out features of one model which are more evident in the other model.

It would be wonderful if we could overcome the temptation to use such labels as ‘contradictory’ or ‘ambiguous’ or ‘paradoxical’ for the philosophy of Advaita and Madhyamaka. Although the temptation is indeed great, we need to resist it for two important reasons: 1) It offers an essentially negative account of the overall system, and 2) It actually says nothing. And so Taber (1983) wrote of Śaṅkara, “His statements only appear as contradictions when one interprets them rigidly in terms of the ordinary human conceptual system” (p52). Śaṅkara was trying to express the concept of brahman, while believing that “brahman is inexpressible” (brahma nocyate) (Bh.G.Bh. 13.12). On Nāgārjuna, Bhattacharya (1998) writes, he “tries to express the Inexpressible. All his expressions, therefore, are bound to remain inadequate” (p90). Inada (1993) wrote: “It is trite to say that language can never reach reality per se, and yet we must remind ourselves of this to restitute the Śūnyavāda from the charge of nihilism” (p13). Of course, Śaṅkara was one of those who made the charge, and so we need to offer a sympathetic reading of the thesis that “all is
empty”. Likewise, we must try to explain what Śaṅkara meant by “all is self”. Further, we must attempt to articulate the differences in these competing Two-Truth hierarchies. The problem that both reader and writer face is how to understand something that is “presented in a way that deviates from the only mode of understanding we know” (Taber, 1983: 52); hence, the disquiet.

And so, I wish to hereby introduce the notion of “tension”. I will often return to this “tension” as my third hermeneutical tool (the others being the “Two Truths” and “flickering”). It will act dynamically throughout, often hidden from view, primarily as a warning that the Two Truths are not totally distinct fields of analysis, but cross over into each other’s domains. We can therefore see how this discursive notion of “tension” is closely related to the psychological notion of “flickering”, a phenomenological feature of those who are on the path.

In working out this model, I am of course indebted to others who have puzzled over similar problems. With regard to the ultimate mode of being, and my notion of “flickering”, I am indebted to Harvey’s work on the final state of a Buddhist practitioner (the arhat) according to the Pāli Suttas. I wish to quote Harvey (1995: 222) at length here:

[W]hereas the ‘early Suttas’ see the full realization of nibbāna as an ‘unsupported’, objectless state of discernment, where other mental factors are absent and activity in the world does not seem possible, the Mahāyāna sees ‘non-abiding’ nirvāṇa as compatible with action in the world. Only if the Arahant rapidly alternated between objectless, nibbānic discernment and object-directed states of discernment could these two perspectives be brought together... The ‘early Suttas’, though, contain no hint of an enlightened person choosing to remain in saṃsāra after death. From the perspective of the ‘early Suttas’, the unsupported nibbānic state would be either dwelt in for specific, limited periods, or perhaps a state which rapidly alternated with normal consciousness.
Now I am aware that this interpretation of nibbāna as a beyond death continuation of “unsupported discernment” (appatiṭhitena viñṇāṇena) is highly contested (see Gethin, 1997, and Bodhi, 2000: 421, n314), but we need not enter into this debate. All we need for our purposes is the concept of “flickering” between a relative state and an absolute state of seeing. Now Harvey does not actually use the term “flickering” here, though “rapidly alternated with normal consciousness” may surely be taken as synonymous. Harvey does, however, use the term “flickering” in his translation of the canonical Dhammapada verse “Phandanaṃ capalam cittaṃ durakkhaṃ dunnivārayam” (33a), which Harvey (1995) translates as “The flickering fickle citta, difficult to guard, difficult to control” (p114).39 The context of the verse shows that “flickering” (capalam) here is to be seen as negative, and might well be translated as “wavering”. In other words, it matches Śāntideva’s use of the term “cala” to describe ordinary men who waver in thought (Ś.S. 140). In a similar vein, Harvey (1995: 114) speaks of “competing mind-sets” and “empirical, functioning selves”, which need to be controlled. Perrett (1998: 30) usefully talks of a “scrutinizing subset” of beliefs which, changing over time, leads to “self-revision”. Śāntideva sees the task of the will in similar terms:

\[sarvānya cintā nirmuktah sva cittaikāgramānasah | samādhānāya cittasya prayatiṣye damāya ca ||\]

Freed from all other concerns, with one-pointed mind, I shall exert myself in taming this mind and towards meditative concentration (BCA. 8.39).

Eventually, according to certain Mahāyāna texts, such as the Daśabhūmika Sūtra, when one has reached the eighth bhūmi, one is “acala”, unwavering, firm and

39 Narada (1993: 35) has: “The flickering, fickle mind, difficult to guard, difficult to control”.
immovable; one’s knowledge is non-regressive (see Cleary, 1993: 764-776). So we might reasonably talk of two types of “flickering”: the first being the minds of common folk which flicker between one thought and another, which I will refer to as “wavering”, and the second being the mind of a partially enlightened being which flickers or oscillates between objectless consciousness and relative existence. For both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, the former is to be overcome via a single-minded approach to liberation from nescience. As for the latter, I argue that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will rely on it for the sake of compassionate activity.

My second debt, though more indirect, goes to Hume. In one place, Hume tells us that “existence and non-existence destroy each other, and are perfectly incompatible and contrary” (Treatise, I.iii.1). This seems a reasonable enough argument and one that Paul Williams (1998a: 107-112) draws on in his critique of Śāntideva. However, Hume later goes on to state that it is “easy for us to conceive any object to be non-existent this moment, and existent the next” (Treatise, I.iii.3, emphasis mine). Elsewhere, Hume also states that, “whatever is intelligible, and can be distinctly conceived, implies no contradiction” (EHU, IV.ii.18).

So, for example, we might imagine a virtual car race. When a child is about to enter into the game, they do not actually believe they are entering a truly existent race. However, midway through, they might find themselves believing the race to be real. At other moments, they see that it is only a game. They thus flicker between existence and non-existence. Hume wishes to use this capacity of our imagination to question the necessity of a causal account of phenomena, whereas I wish the reader to note that a flickering consciousness may well see ‘objects’ and ‘social games’ as alternatively

---

I will justify my use of the Daśabhūmika Sūtra below (see Chapter 3.2).
existent and non-existent, and may thus learn to see things as empty of inherent existence or as illusion-like. In other words, to stretch the analogy, noticing that the game is a virtual one does not deny the car’s conventional existence. Unlike Hume then, I adopt his statement about conception as a *response* to his statement about existence and non-existence, and thus deny his either/or interpretation. Again, this demonstrates how the “tension” between the ultimate and the relative view might be approached through the notion of “flickering”.

My third debt goes to Bernard Williams (1976: 46-63) and his famous hypothetical experiment, whereby two people agree to undertake an exchange of ‘selves’. This may be taken to imply either an exchange of bodies, or an exchange of brains, or an exchange of memories. One body is to be given a prize; the other is to be tortured. These people, A and B, are to decide which body should get which treatment (assuming the choice is made on “selfish grounds”). The problem, of course, is whether we see our ‘self’ to be the body or whether we see it to be mental data. Williams’ treatment of this experiment is fascinating, and I will return to it later. But here I simply wish to highlight three points: 1) Williams refuses to merely acknowledge these as “borderline cases” and leave it at that (p58), 2) He refuses to sit comfortably with the notion of “ambivalent concern” for the self (p60), and 3) He acknowledges the “artificial” neatness of the experiment (p62). Where Williams talks of the “risk” in making such a choice about a future self (p63), I would like to talk of the “tension” in this choice.

In terms of ethics, one might feel a little uneasy about the language of “tension” and “flickering” and the lack of fixity that these terms conjure. It could be argued that ethics demands a firmer, more objective, base. One may even feel that ‘flickering’...
conjures up an erratic state of mind. But like Bernard Williams, I feel we must accept
that the ground on which we state these problems of the self is indeed “shaky” by
nature (p62). Not only is the ground generally “shaky”, but more specifically, it is the
concern for the ‘ambivalent’ self that provides the starting point for the ground of
Śāntideva’s case for selfless conduct; and of course the question “What is the nature
of this ‘ambivalent’ self?” is the catalyst of Śaṅkara’s gnoseology. Indeed, it is the
fact that they both so ardently deny our reality and yet so fervently reaffirm it that
makes their work so relevant. For Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, these were no “effete
intellectual puzzles” (see Solomon, 1994: 9). In fact, I believe that we modern
philosophers of self can learn much from these medieval thinkers, who positively
grasped both horns of the bull of Two-Truths, who overcame the ambivalence of
either A or B by affirming the “tension” of both A and B.

I therefore urge the reader to keep the above mentioned hermeneutical devices in mind
as they reflect on the teachings of these two fascinating, and at times, puzzling
systems of thought and practice.

To repeat, these are:

1) The ontological Two-Truth models

2) The epistemological notion of:
   a) those who know reality as-it-is,
   b) those who are deluded, and
   c) those whose cognitions flicker between these two

3) The discursive notion of “tension” between the Two Truths
The Virtue Model of Comparison:

One model of comparison, which was made particularly dominant in Buddhist Ethics by Damien Keown, is that of Virtue Ethics. Now, a Virtue Ethics, in simple terms, may be taken as an approach to ethics which focuses on the moral subject and the kind of life they ought to lead. As the name suggests, the subject’s attention should be on the cultivation of a particular set of ‘virtues’ which aim at the development of character rather than at the development of discrete behaviour. The set of virtues one ought to cultivate is often thought to be a matter of culture and tradition. It may also be taken to be a question of refining one’s human nature or of grooming our God-given qualities. Nevertheless, one would expect that a virtuous person is one who we (or those with the authority to judge) would conclude was of “good” character. Such a person would also be expected to reach some stage of completeness, whereby they lived a flourishing human existence, ending perhaps in the fulfilment of certain capacities, both moral and cognitive. Thus, Keown (1992/2001) defines it as “man fulfilling his function through the development of his potentiality in accordance with a specific conception of a goal or end” (p193).

In such a scheme, however, the focus remains, not so much on what the person does for others, but on what kind of person they are, or are seen to be. In this way, it differs from a Consequentialist Ethics, which, in theory, judges actions by the effect that they have on the world rather than on the agent. The classic example of a Virtue Ethics is that expounded by Aristotle in Ancient Greece. It is often contrasted with the Utilitarian Ethics of Britain’s John Stuart Mill and other Consequentialists.
Having seen Keown parallel Buddhist Ethics with those of Aristotle, might we not be tempted here to use the same Virtue Ethics model to compare Śāntideva and Śaṅkara? Might we not start by collecting a list of virtues in each of their writings, and from there make our conclusions as to their shared ethics? Might we not claim that both saw knowledge as their ultimate goal? My answer is a resounding “no”, and I would like to take some time to explain why.

First of all, most scholars would agree that Keown allocates a disproportionate amount of space to the thesis that Buddhist Ethics is analogous to an Aristotelian virtue ethics. Perhaps influenced by Harvey’s (2000: 51) view that Buddhism cannot be reduced to virtue ethics, Keown (2005b) has since loosened his position somewhat. In some ways, of course, this is Keown’s own affair, but due to the prominent (and no doubt deserved) position he now holds within the field of Buddhist Ethics, all are now forced into answering his claim. For example, while acknowledging Harvey’s gradualist position, Clayton (2006) still feels the need to label Śāntideva’s moral theory as “a type of virtue ethics” (p100), going on to call it a “supererogatory virtue ethic” (p101) despite the fact that she later claims that the “concept of virtue ethics is not adequate” (p109). The confusion in her thesis clearly comes from her explicit attempt to answer Keown (p90).

The fact is that Śāntideva’s ethics, when taken as a whole, are simply not a type of virtue ethics. Śāntideva asks us to focus on others, not on ourselves. Our own happiness is secondary to the happiness of others. He writes:

\[ mā bhūttan mama kuśala-mūlaṃ dharma jñānaṃ kauśalyaṃ vā yan na sarva sattvopajīvyam syād | \]
Rather than call this a “supererogatory virtue ethic”, Clayton (2006) would have done better to have stayed with “extreme altruism” (p100). In fact, Keown (2001) himself equates “supererogation” with “altruism” (p138). But, as I will argue throughout this thesis, active altruism does not represent a virtue ethics. Virtue ethics stops with the subject and hardly considers the object, the other. Śāntideva’s ethics, on the other hand, are consistently directed towards benefitting the other. And so, contra Clayton (2006: 100), I would argue that Śāntideva is ultimately asking us, “What is the right thing to do?”, rather than “What kind of person should I be?”. In fact, Clayton seems to do a U-turn, and later claims that the main question the bodhisattva asks is: “What will be the best thing for other beings?” (p113). Here she is quite correct. But this question does not arise from a virtue ethics.

This is not to say that Śāntideva ignores the virtues. In fact, Clayton (2006) rightly suggests that the virtues are emphasized at the “commencement of the spiritual path” (p100). However, as Clayton further points out, at a certain point along the bodhisattva-path, Śāntideva’s ethics begin to “resemble utilitarianism” (p117). And so it is clearly this model that we should pay more attention to. Clayton also notes how, for Śāntideva, anger is seen as wrong because of its “overall loss of benefit to beings” and that this is the “deciding factor” (p108). In summary, Clayton states that, “There is a definite sense that the bodhisattva should try to maximize the benefits to sentient beings” (ibid.). And so, along with Osto (2008: 66), I am a little confused by Clayton’s allegiance to virtue ethics as a means of explaining Śāntideva.
More problematically, from a comparative point of view, Keown (2005a) claims that Buddhist ethics shares “many features with Aristotle’s notion of the good life being one devoted to the cultivation of virtue and culminating in a condition of happiness” (p286). But surely, this pays too little respect to the two cultures involved in the comparison. As Ram-Prasad (2007: 102) notes, “there is no comparison between what Aristotle would define as a good and what our Indian philosophers would”. In fact, even those scholars who accept Buddhism as a virtue ethics play down the parallel with Aristotle (Cooper & James, 2005: 83). But more importantly, for this thesis, happiness is simply not the culmination of Śāntideva’s ethics or of Mahāyāna Buddhism in general. The bodhisattva would willingly give up his own happiness for the good of others. Śāntideva writes:

\[
\text{bahūnām eka duḥkhena yadi duḥkham vigacchati} \quad | \\
\text{utpādyam eva tad duḥkhaṃ sadayena paṛātmanoh} \quad ||
\]

If the suffering of many disappears through the suffering of one, then that suffering must definitely be made to arise by one with compassion for oneself and for others (BCA. 8.105).

If happiness were the telos of Mahāyāna Buddhism in general, then why is Śāntideva trying to, if you will forgive the phrase, get idle monks off their behinds? I will return to this below. For now, it needs emphasising that Śāntideva goes much further than a virtue ethics model would allow. That is, he asks us to put these virtues to good use. It is the ‘other’ that is primary in Śāntideva’s ethics. The Compendium thus prays that the virtues be kept hidden (pracchādita) (Ś.S. 33). For Śāntideva, virtues are not for display or self-fulfilment, but must be put at the service of others.

One scholar who has recently spoken out against Keown’s model is Charles Goodman, stating that “no form of Buddhist ethics is as similar to Aristotelianism as Keown claims” (Goodman, 2008: 17). He rightly concludes that, the “analogy with
virtue ethics … does not represent a very valuable interpretive strategy when it comes to Mahāyāna ethical thought” (p31). We seem to have come to this conclusion independently, yet we differ in what we want to put in its place. Goodman (2008 & 2009) wishes to make his own case that Mahāyāna ethics is in fact a form of consequentialist ethics. Now, while it may be agreed that Mahāyāna ethics, when it comes to activism, sit closer to consequentialism than virtue ethics, I fail to see why we have to pigeon-hole them at all. It is not an either/or proposition. Mahāyāna ethics requires the virtues as a base, but asks us to put those virtues to good use. That is all we need grasp. For me, that is a call to altruism.

Mark Siderits (2003) has also spoken out against Keown’s virtue ethics model, and like Goodman, calls for a consequentialist interpretation. However, his call for a “Areatic Consequentialism” (p110, note b) appears to allow the virtues more of a role than Goodman does. It also allows for the “cognitive limitations” (Siderits, 2007b: 292) of our commencing-bodhisattvas, who may not have the foresight to see all the consequences of their actions. For it should be noted that consequentialism asks far too much of us if we are expected to foresee all the effects of our actions. In the altruistic model championed in this thesis, the virtues combine with consequentialist thinking, and a bodhisattva is meant to know at what level of knowledge and power he stands at.

I will join Siderits (2003) in his praise of Keown, not so much for reclaiming nirvāṇa as a “positive state of human fulfillment” (p110, note b), but for playing down the “transcendency thesis” of Buddhist Ethics (see Keown, 2001: 83ff). This is essentially the thesis that Buddhist moral precepts have only instrumental value in achieving nirvāṇa, a thesis which Śāntideva’s ethics of compassion and altruism prove
wrong. Keown is also to be praised for almost single-handedly opening the “western gate” for Buddhist ethics, allowing it to enter into the *mandala* of modern academia. However, it is time for a paradigm shift, one which focuses more on an altruistic interpretation of Mahāyāna Buddhism.

One scholar who has provided Buddhist ethics with a modern paradigm shift is Christopher Queen in his work on “Engaged Buddhism”. Queen (2000: 11-17) offers a four-fold categorization of Buddhist ethics, leading through ‘discipline’, ‘virtue’, ‘altruism’ and ‘engagement’. These (largely) chronological categories are most useful. Queen takes “Engaged Buddhism” to be a modern (essentially post-1960’s) phenomenon\(^1\), going one step beyond altruism in that it takes account of the “social and institutional dimensions of suffering” (Queen & King, 1996: 10). Queen (2000) sees early Buddhism as focusing its attention on discipline and virtue. The rise of Mahāyāna Buddhism brought altruism into the foreground. However, this altruism does not “ignore self-cultivation” (p14). I thus agree with Queen that pre-modern Mahāyāna ethics, and especially the ethics of Śāntideva, are best represented by the term ‘altruism’, but an altruism that depends upon the ripening of certain virtues.

I will also show that Śaṅkara’s ethics should also be seen as altruistic. But we should not forget that most of the followers that Śāntideva and Śaṅkara address are monks. Thus, Śāntideva’s ethics, especially those aimed at the commencing-*bodhisattva* (see Chapter 3.2), and Śaṅkara’s ethics, aimed at the Advaitin teacher (see Chapter 6.2), are a type of altruism largely bridled by the need for discipline. Their ethics are best defined then as a monastically-informed altruism. And we might note here how the

\(^{1}\) Of course, one could argue that certain Japanese “liberation movements”, such as Nichiren (see Metraux, in Queen & King, 1996: 365-400) were involved in “Engaged Buddhism”, but there is no justification for reading “Engaged Buddhism” back into Indian Mahāyāna.
possibility of grounding one’s ethics in the rules of a “tradition” overcomes the need for a pure virtue ethics (see Mohanty, 1997b: 296). Needless to say, Śāntideva, like Śaṅkara, was essentially non-political, and his writings should not be used to justify arguments for “Engaged Buddhism”, a mistake that Goodman (2009) sometimes commits.

In trying to collapse all Buddhist Ethics into the category of consequentialism, Goodman also falls into a similar trap as Keown, skipping over and re-interpreting those examples that are clearly virtue or duty orientated, or else adding a qualifier such as “character” to the term consequentialism (Goodman, 2009: 41), thus claiming the entire moral field. As Meyers (2010: 2) notes, Goodman’s work “tends to efface elements of Buddhist ethics that do not fit neatly into the consequentialist model”.

Baron once wrote:

> It is a little silly to ask whether a theory is more concerned with action or with character, as if theorists have to favour one over the other. One would expect any reasonably rich ethical theory to be concerned with both (Baron, et al, 1997: 36).

We need to heed Harvey’s (2000: 51) warning that:

> Overall, the rich field of Buddhist ethics would be narrowed by wholly collapsing it into any single one of the Kantian, Aristotelian or Utilitarian models.

Naturally, this is not to deny the fact that we cannot always avoid making reference to these three dominant paradigms. In fact, we may need to make reference to all three, along with appropriate qualifications. For this reason, I will not get involved in the Hallisey methodological debate on “ethical particularism” (see Clayton, 2006: 5ff). Rather, let me simply note, with Harvey (2000: 51), how Buddhism makes equal
demands on: 1) a good motivating will, 2) cultivation of character, and 3) the reduction of suffering in others and oneself. It will later be shown (Chapter 6) that Śāntideva’s, and indeed Śaṅkara’s, ethics include all three.

We should also bear in mind that monasteries in India are very much a communal culture, and the sight of an undisciplined monastic may well have a detrimental effect on other monks. Thus, it is rather inappropriate to suggest the title of “act-consequentialist” for a monk like Śāntideva, as Goodman (2009: 90) does. It becomes especially irresponsible when one ponders on the possibility of “humanitarian military intervention” by an army of bodhisattvas (p81). The ethical conduct of ascetic monks, of which Śāntideva (and Śaṅkara) are extreme cases, will be heavily influenced by their social context. While the rules are frequently disregarded, in line with act-utilitarianism, the moral of non-harming (ahimsa) is never disregarded. The actual life of the monk is likely to be far more cautious than certain rhetoric would have us believe. According to Prajñākaramati (the 10-11th century Indian commentator on the BCA), the bodhisattva ought not to be too heroic (vīrya) (BCA. Pañjikā, 143). In such a communal culture, an act of misconduct by a single monk could cast a shadow over the whole community. Thus, Mrozik (2007: 54) speaks of “communal ripening” and the pressure on the monks to be inspirational (prāsādika) (p76). Hence, the bodhisattva reflects, “I must please my fellow-students” (samtosanīyā me sabrahmacāriṇa) (Ś.S. 150). The Compendium adds that the bodhisattva should be “modest” (salajjām), “cautious” (sabhayaṃ) and “peaceful” (śāntaṃ). Through possessing a collection of virtues (śīla-skandha), the bodhisattva becomes a great being (mahā-sattvah) (Ś.S. 147). His karmic merit (puṇya) is said to be pure when his morality (śīla) is pure. Hence, we can detect an equal stress on traditional “monkish virtues” as well as on certain rule-breaking scenarios. Thus, Clayton speaks of a
mixture of “restrained good conduct” (p75) and skilful means (p103). Hence, one may think of a *monastically-informed altruistic ethics* which constantly seeks to benefit, first oneself, and then others. If Buddhism was indeed “decadent” at this time (Klostermaier, 2007: 302); it does not show itself in Śāntideva’s ethics.

The temptation here, of course, is to follow up this discussion of Śāntideva’s list of virtues with a whole list of similar virtues in the writing of Śaṅkara, and indeed it would not be difficult to do so (see Cenkner, 1983: 50-54). But my whole point here is that it would be futile. For example, the way one ‘pleases’ one’s fellow students may vary in the two camps, as might their definitions of what it means to be ‘peaceful’ or ‘modest’. Even Śāntideva himself has two types of ‘modesty’ in mind in his writing, one for monks and another for lay women. More generally, Chappell (1996), notes that the “same value ... can function in different soteriological contexts that result in different expressions” (p57). And we might also note here how the Buddha often implied that the *Brahmins* even failed to understand the meaning of their own language of virtue ethics and he thus reinterpreted them for their own sake (see Gombrich, 2009: 183). Similarly, within Vedānta, Lipner (2010: 213) has pointed out how the charge of lacking “moral integrity” was made against Śaṅkara by Rāmānuja, who felt that the Advaitin was incapable of grasping the proper meaning of ethics from scripture.

What we can offer then, as a compromise, is that, in Advaita, “Moral virtues, such as compassion, charity, self-control, and non-injury, may be supports for the attainment of the spiritual end, although they are not the end themselves” (Deutsch, 1973: 102). These “spiritual” qualities are not the cause of liberation, but act as associate causes to knowledge. Śaṅkara says that the student “should also be guided in humility, etc., the
virtues which are means to knowledge” (amānitvādi guṇa ca jñānopāyaṃ samyak grāhayer) (U.S. Prose, 1.5). These virtues, then, are merely a “means to knowledge”. In other words, this is not a virtue ethics, but a particular form of soteriological consequentialism. However, like Śāntideva’s consequentialist thought, it certainly requires the virtues as a basis, virtues which have their basis in tradition. Hence, pace Rāmānuja, Potter (1981) feels that Śaṅkara’s ideal renouncer “must be imbued with strong positive moral inclinations” (p.36). One look at Śaṅkara’s description of the ideal teacher proves Potter right:

ācāryas tūhūpohagrahaṇa dhāraṇa śama dama dayānugrahaḥ sampanno labdhāgama dhṛṣṭaḥ bhogesv anāsaktah tyakta sarva karma sādhano brahma-vid brahmañi sthito ‘bhinnavṛtto dabham darpa kuhaka śāhyā māyā mātsaryāṇṛtāḥ kāra māmāvādi doṣa varjitaḥ kevala parānugraha prayaṇo vidyopayogārthīṃ

Now the teacher is one who is able to grasp the pros and cons of an argument, who understands and remembers them, who has tranquillity, self-control, compassion, kindness, etc., versed in the scriptures, unattached to enjoyments (visible or invisible), having abandoned all ritual actions, he is a knower of brahman, he is established in brahman, breaking not the rules of conduct, free from faults such as: deceit, pride, trickery, wickedness, deception, envy, falsehood, egoism and selfishness. With the sole aim of helping others, he wishes to make use of knowledge (U.S. Prose, 1.6).

And again, as with Śāntideva, it is when one begins to pass on this highest good that the true “ethical” work begins, and this I take to be a form of duty (Dharma). Once again, we see a complete mix of ethical systems.

As we can gather, the issue with Keown’s Virtue Ethics model goes much further than whether we can rightly translate from the Greek or the Pāli. While we may accept MacIntyre’s (1966) point, that a “change in language is also a change in concepts”

42 While it is interesting to note that there is “no exact or exclusive equivalent in Sanskrit to the Greek aretē or Latin virtus” (Mrozik, 2007: 77), we might also note Chakrabarti’s (1997: 259) point that Sanskrit has no word for “thank you”, but that does not mean that gratitude was a foreign concept.
(p59), my position is more akin to another of his arguments, that “different forms of social life will provide different roles for concepts to play” (p2). Keown (2001: 193), well aware of this problem, merely insists on a “formal” parallel with Aristotle. But such a formal parallel tells us next to nothing.

It might of course be tempting to imagine that because Śāntideva and Śaṅkara share a common language and a common culture that we could go beyond this formal parallel. So allow me to test this hypothesis. Let us imagine that two modern-day, conservative, British ethicists have each offered the British Board of Education a set of virtues which they feel would be beneficial to teach and nurture in our secondary schools and beyond. Let us imagine that the common members of these two sets turn out to be: practical wisdom, understanding, friendliness, courage, loyalty, and generosity. From this coincidence of sets, can the Government be at all certain that these ethicists are picking out the same virtues, giving them equivalent meaning? One way of testing this is to introduce a fourth party. Let’s call her Hilary.

Let us imagine that Hilary has developed all of these virtues, and has become thoroughly wise, understanding, friendly, courageous, loyal, and generous. She left university with honours and began her own retail business. Her family are very proud of her, but let us leave pride alone for now! Hilary, at 27, is now fully prepared to make a “wise” life-style choice and thus takes up yoga. She goes beyond the fitness DVD stage and starts to read some spiritual texts. She reads the Gītā, the Dhammapada, and one or two popular books by the Dalai Lama. In the winter break, she takes her two children on a trip to India (her husband wouldn’t go). She is hooked by India. On returning, she now starts to neglect her business as she studies books on how to become one with the universe. Her “understanding” of the theory and practice
reaches new heights, or so she thinks. When a guru arrives for a workshop near her hometown, she leaves someone in charge of her business for a week and hurries off to the retreat. She gazes at the guru, sits at his feet, watches his big-screen videos with awe. She has found her calling. She leaves her husband and kids and follows the guru back to India. The guru starts to love her in the way she loves him. They become great “friends”. So great that she becomes pregnant. She hides her pregnancy from others out of devotion for the guru. Weeks go by, and after some agonising evenings, she gains in “courage” and opts to force her own abortion. During this time, she has noticed how the guru has seemingly loved other women as much as her. But she forgives him, for his love is of course unconditional; unlike hers. When the Indian and foreign press arrive under allegations of rape of another western woman, Hilary remains “loyal” and says nothing of her ordeal. When the guru receives a divine message to move camp to the USA, she decides to show supreme “generosity”, selling her business back home and placing the money at his lotus-feet. She starts divorce proceedings in the hope of getting half the sale of the house. She blindly follows her guru to the USA, carrying his bags to the airport …

Let us return to our question. Would Hilary thereby have passed the authors’ test of what constitutes a virtuous person? Has she become a good citizen? What would our governing body think? The problem remains, does it not, that even if Hilary was ‘wise’ and ‘understanding’ and ‘friendly’ and ‘courageous’ and ‘loyal’ and ‘generous’ in these situations, the source of her actions may not bear the remotest resemblance with the authors’ meaning of these virtues. And the consequences of her actions may take her far afield from what our governing board had in mind for our modern citizen. And it is not enough to simply claim that Hilary has misunderstood the “British gentleman’s code”.

72
The point I wish to drive home is that virtuous traits are allocated words which are then open to various interpretations. This problem becomes particularly acute when we try to make sense of one of the so-called ‘cardinal virtues’ of Buddhism, which Keown (2005b: 13) translates as ‘understanding’. What exactly does it mean to be or to have understanding? In fact, when we look at the Sanskrit, we see that ‘understanding’ is in fact a negative noun ‘a-moha’, which more literally means ‘non-delusion’. But what am I to be non-deluded about? Surely this is tradition-specific. A non-deluded Buddhist understands there to be no abiding self. A non-deluded Advaitin understands the self to be non-dual with brahman. A non-deluded Cartesian understands that the self is a thinking thing which is distinguishable from the material body.

In fact, Śāntideva provides us with a perfect example of this in his attack on the Sāṃkhya’s so-called “knowers” of reality. And as those that supposedly know (jñā) are being compared with those that are deluded (moha), we can take ‘knowing’ here to be synonymous with ‘non-delusion’:

\[
\text{mohāc cen nekṣate lokah tattva jñasyāpi sā sthitih }||
\]

If you argue that the worldly do not see [the true state of things] due to delusion, [we say that] those that [you claim] “know” reality are in the same position (BCA. 9.136b).

For the Buddhists, the Buddha is the only perfect teacher and his teaching is unique to him. Similarly, the Gaudapāda Kārikā (4.99) drives a wedge between the Buddha’s knowledge and the knowledge of Vedānta. Even the Buddha (lit. the awakened one) remains deluded:
yadyapi bāhyārtha nirākaraṇaḥ jñāna-mātra kalpanā ca advaya vastu sāmīpyam uktam | idaṁ tu paramārtha tattvam advaitam vedānteṣv eva vijñeyam ity arthah ||

Even though the view [of the Buddha], which rejects the existence of external objects and asserts the doctrine of consciousness-only, is said to be similar to the notion of non-duality; the ultimate non-dual reality is, however, only known through the Upaniṣads. This is the meaning (G.K.Bh. 4.99).

This demonstrates that it is not simply *that* we understand that is of relevance, but *what* we understand and *how* we came to understand it. As Steven Collins once reportedly said, the Buddha is not saying “Make your own truth”, but “Make the Truth your own” (in Gombrich, 1988: 72). It is for such reasons that we cannot simply compare, say, the Buddha’s categories of the ‘the immature’ and ‘the wise’ (Dhp. Chapters 5 & 6) with Hume’s categories of ‘the vulgar’ and ‘the wise’ (Treatise).

Now we may be tempted to think that the situation is different for Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, for they both posit a Two-Truths model, and so, ‘the wise’, for them, are those that know the ultimate as well as the relative. But even here we should tread very carefully. Both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will indeed proclaim their traditions’ understanding of reality in these epistemological terms, but as far as Śaṅkara is concerned, Śāntideva falls far short of the knowledge or understanding he has in mind, and *vice versa*. Neither of them understands the other’s form of ‘ultimate’. Their knowledge may well place them within the ‘wise’ category of their own tradition, but they still fall within the ‘immature’ category of their opponent’s tradition. To make the basic claim then that Śaṅkara and Śāntideva both see ‘non-delusion’ (*amoha*) or ‘knowledge’ (*jñā*) or ‘wisdom’ (*prajñā*) as a virtue would be quite meaningless, even from within the common parameters of a Two-Truths model. Here we see just how
powerful metaphysics is in dividing traditions and just how weak the comparison of virtue models is.

Likewise, when it comes to the ethical life, Aristotle may tell us that *eudaimonia* (happiness?) is the final goal (Nicomachean Ethics, 1095a), and that this, in its highest form, lies in a certain kind of contemplation (*theoria*), of which, incidentally, he says so little that it would be impossible to compare his notion with the vast literature that the Buddhists have produced on this matter. Certainly, if Flew (2005) is correct in thinking that, for Aristotle, “goods exist by choice rather than by nature” (p126), then we would find ourselves embroiled in a most complex parallel with *nirvāṇa*. But assuming that Aristotle is indeed advocating a life of contemplation over action, and Stalley, for example, thinks he is (in Aristotle, 2009: xiii); would Śāntideva be happy with this mode of life? Would Śāntideva praise the ‘wise’, detached monk who sat there all day enjoying his own blissful contemplation? There is textual proof that he would not:

\[
\text{evam ādibhir ākārair viveka guṇa bhāvanāt} | \\
\text{upāśānta vītarkaḥ san bodhicittaṁ tu bhāvayet} | |
\]

Having cultivated the virtue of solitude in this way, discursive thought being calmed; one should now cultivate *bodhicitta* (BCA. 8.89).

Furthermore,

\[
\text{sakti trāsāttva nirmuktyā samsāre sidhyati sthitih} | \\
\text{mohena duḥkhinām arthe śūnyatāyā idaṁ phalam} | |
\]

Being able to remain in cyclic existence, free from attachment and fear, for the benefit of those suffering through their delusion - such is the fruit of emptiness (BCA. 9.52).

By cultivating *bodhicitta* (thought of enlightenment), Śāntideva has in mind the need to generate compassion for all sentient beings and to act on this compassion. It is this
capacity to act for others that justifies the view of emptiness. Bodhicitta thus “stresses the altruistic motive” of the bodhisattva (Brassard, 2000: 1). But it is only with the view of emptiness that selflessness is truly self-less. In the final analysis, it is the bodhisattva’s ability to remain in the relative world (without defilements) that justifies the search for ultimate knowledge. Śāntideva never takes epistemic certainty as an end in itself, but sees its value in terms of its power to overcome suffering, especially the suffering of others. No doubt, if he knew of it, Śāntideva would strive to turn Aristotle’s hierarchy of contemplative and practical wisdom (Nicomachean Ethics, 1177a) on its head and demand an altruistic response to the suffering of beings:

\[
yadi tu svecchayā siddhiḥ sarveṣām eva dehinām
na bhavit kasyacid duḥkhaṁ na duḥkhaṁ kaścid icchati
\]

If all sentient beings were to have their wish fulfilled, no one would suffer. No one wishes for [their own] suffering (BCA. 6.34).

And again:

\[
bahūnāṁ eka duḥkhena yadi duḥkhaṁ vigacchati
utpādyam eva tad duḥkhaṁ sadayena parātmanoḥ
\]

If the suffering of many disappears through the suffering of one, then that suffering must definitely be made to arise by one with compassion for oneself and for others (BCA. 8.105).

That is, if one has pity (daya) for one’s own suffering, including the slight suffering that is brought on by having compassion (daya) for others, then that suffering must be taken on as a duty to others. This shows the need for a more positive, altruistic approach to Buddhist ethics, one which goes beyond seeing nirvāṇa as the goal of Buddhism. And needless to say, the nirvāṇa of which Buddhism speaks is not the brahma-nirvāṇam the Hindu seeks (cf. Bh.G. 2.72).
Altruism as an Alternative Model of Comparison:

Returning then to the question of comparative ethics; one occasion where I feel Western ethical categories may come to our aid is when we consider more deeply the meaning of ‘altruism’, and especially the act of self-sacrifice for the good of others. Borrowing from Oliner’s (2003: 15) interpretation of Comte, we might take altruism to have two main phases: 1) the eradication of self-centred desire, and 2) a life devoted to the good of others. It is my contention that both these phases can be found in the ethics of Śaṅkara and Śāntideva. Indeed, I believe that most Advaitins and Mahāyāna Buddhists would agree with John Stuart Mill’s statement that the readiness to self-sacrifice was “the highest virtue which can be found in man” (Util. II.16).

Nevertheless, having been so demanding on Virtue Ethics, perhaps we need to be just as critical of ‘altruism’. For while it may be true that, “All world religions concur that altruism … is virtuous” (Neusner & Chilton, 2005: vii); would all religions condone the ‘self-sacrifice’ of a suicide bomber? I think not. Similarly, when we are told that the regard for others is “almost universally hailed as a virtue” (Rushton, 1980: 2), we need to ask whether that regard is limited to certain others, or whether it is universal in scope. For example, would all religions condone the donation of one’s wealth to the rich at the exclusion of the poor? I think not. And so we will need to ask whether the altruism of Śaṅkara and Śāntideva may rightly be called ‘moral’, and we will also need to ask how universal their ethics are. This argument I will leave for Chapter 7.

Going back to the problem of comparing Buddhism with Aristotle’s Virtue Ethics, it is very interesting that Ryan claims that Mill’s sentiments about self-sacrifice and a “life of goodness” were “entirely foreign” to Aristotle (in Mill & Bentham, 2004: 21).
Goodman, who incidentally refers to Śāntideva’s ethics as “radical altruism” (Goodman, 2008: 12 & 2009: 90), states that, “for Aristotle, the foundational justification for virtuous acts is their contribution to the flourishing of the agent” (Goodman, 2008: 19). Goodman (2009) also states that the welfare of all beings, which is so central to the ethics of Śāntideva, is “not found in Aristotle” (p42). In fact, Berchman (2005) has suggested that Aristotle’s ethics may be seen as “decidedly self-centred” (p10). Should we really be comparing Buddhist ethics with a self-centred ethics? Surely altruism is a better contender.

That a utilitarian, like Mill, should give us an apparent parallel to Śāntideva is perhaps not so surprising when we note that Krebs and van Hesteren (1994) have defined “high-quality altruism” as that which maximizes the “greatest good for the greatest number” (p136). But even here, we need to be careful, for we should not confuse Mill’s Greatest Happiness Principle with the Mahāyāna call to benefit all beings. Firstly, a multiplicity of socially active lives, full of temporary moments of contentment, is not what Śāntideva is asking his fellow monks to sacrifice their own happiness for. This is so, for, like Śaṅkara, he has denounced such a social life as one of suffering, and feels that he (along with all others) must be led to a more ultimate form of bliss, even if that “bliss” is but a negation of worldly suffering (see Chapter 3). While Śāntideva’s rhetoric on aiding the poor and the weak often has the feel of “social service” (Clayton, 2006: 59) about it (e.g. Ś.S. 274), transcendence of society is his ultimate aim, and such a view demands a negative evaluation of existence.

More important, however, is the question of the term ‘self’ in ‘self-sacrifice’. If we are to talk meaningfully about the place of altruism in Śāntideva and Śaṅkara, then this is the key problem to address. Śāntideva, for his part, will play on the notion that
there is no *self* from the side of the *bodhisattva* involved in the sacrifice of time and effort. Śaṅkara will also claim that there is no (individuated) self coming from the side of the *brahman*-knower who has “no need of living” (C.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2) and who lives on with “the sole aim of helping others” (U.S. Prose, 1.6). So the very meaning of ‘self-sacrifice’ is brought into doubt. Hence, we need to be aware of the fact that altruism, in its original Western context, referred to the conscious attempt to override one’s selfish inclinations in order to act selflessly. In other words, one puts one’s own self aside. This self was never in doubt; it was merely down-played. The self of others, or the desires of those selves, were thereby put first.

But Śāntideva and Śaṅkara are making a much stronger (metaphysical) claim. They are saying that there simply is no *self* which needs putting to one side. The bare recognition of non-self (*anātman*) or non-duality (*advaita*) leads to selflessness. Thus metaphysical assumptions along with their differing concepts of “common good” make comparison with Mill problematic to say the least.

Nevertheless, a further look into utilitarian-defined altruism shows that what matters is not simply that one is other-centred, but also that one helps others in “less superficial and less transient ways” (Krebs & van Hesteren, 1994: 136). That is, higher stages of altruism are 1) purer, and 2) deeper. That Śaṅkara and Śāntideva wish to remove *all* of one’s suffering *forevermore* is surely testimony to their depth.43

There is still a major problem with comparing their models with those of Mill. It is indeed their condemnation of the superficial and transient nature of worldly life that

---

43 On the difference in Buddhism between wishing others to experience “fleeting pleasures of the world” versus “deep lasting happiness”, and how this relates to altruism, see Clough (2005:134).
gives them their depth, but it is this very same feature that commits them to a transcendence of that very world. Even though the end justifies the means in Advaita, this is only so if the end in question is self-realization. Hence, the Upaniṣads distinguish the “good” (śreyāḥ) from the merely “pleasant” (preyāḥ) (Ka.U. I.ii.1). Liberation (mokṣa) is thus the highest good (param-śreyasah, niḥśreyasah), a “good outside this miserable world” (Otto, 1957: 191). It might therefore be argued that the ultimate goals of Buddhism and Advaita are, to borrow Mill’s words, “pernicious to society” (Util. II.19). Both find themselves centre-stage in the “conflict between societal and renunciatory values” (Olivelle, 1992: 23). Despite implicitly sharing with Śāntideva and Śaṅkara the belief that certain voices are “more authoritative than others” (Skorupski, 1998: 23), and despite therefore being an “elitist” (p29), we still might reasonably cast Mill as a “social egalitarian” (p2). On the other hand, neither Śāntideva nor Śaṅkara were “egalitarian” (see Chapter 7), nor were they ever politically-minded. And they clearly go against the current belief that “Religious individuals are committed to the preservation of the family unit” (Barnes, 2008: 205).

To bring this conflict to life, let us imagine that a certain bodhisattva or jīvan-mukta was so successful in his call for renunciation that a substantial sector of society left their families and jobs in the search of liberation (cf. the case of Hilary). What would be the outcome on society? Disastrous, one would assume. Not that this is anti-social behaviour. One might still coherently claim that Buddhism and Advaita would, along with Hume’s average citizen, prefer what is “useful and serviceable to mankind, above what is pernicious” (EPM, IX.1). And like J.J.C. Smart’s (1973) sympathetic

44 For more on this distinction, see Mohanty (1997b).

45 Brodbeck assumes that the writers of the Gītā took this threat very seriously and that the Gītā was an explicit reaction to the pursuit of ultimate liberation (mokṣa), which “threatened social, cultural and economic continuity” (in Mascaró, 2003: xvi).
and benevolent men, both might maintain an “ultimate pro-attitude to human happiness in general” (p31). Thus, unlike Olson (1997: xiv), I do not see how the renouncer, be he Buddhist or Hindu, could be taken as “anti-social”, though perhaps he is “unsocial” (p2) or, more accurately, “asocial” (Bilimoria, 2007: 45). Certainly, if altruism is necessarily “prosocial” (Rushton, 1980); then the ideal of inactivity (nivṛtti) of the renouncer appears to stand outside this domain.

Yet, as we will see in both Śaṅkara’s and Śāntideva’s selfless ethics (Chapters 4.3 & 6), despite their aloofness from society, there is adequate room for wilful engagement (pravṛtti) and other-regarding responses. But while it might be true that, “complex societies cannot exist without a large degree of concern for others” (Rushton, 1980: 10), could it not also be true that these societies would stop existing if this “concern” were taken to Buddhist and Advaitic extremes? Thus, Radhakrishnan (1989: 381) prefers the term “super-social man” to describe the Indian renouncer, who has seen reality-as-it-is. The Advaitin and the Buddhist would argue against Rushton (1980: 197) that it is more than the “flexibility of our intelligence” which distinguishes us from “social insects”. We are also capable of the transcendence of that intelligence and thus the transcendence of the technological society which modern sociologists, like Rushton, envisage. And it may even be argued that the monk who goes about teaching these truths to others, performs the most important ‘social service’ of all.

Such inner complexities confirm the above statement that we cannot entirely rely on ethical categories, be they “virtue ethics”, or “consequentialist ethics”, or even Western-derived “altruistic ethics” in our comparative frameworks. Instead, we must forever keep an eye on the metaphysics, the soteriology, the gradualism, and the social traditions which underpin the author’s values, qualifying their ethics accordingly.
Thus, the altruism I want to link with Śaṅkara and Śāntideva is very much a “qualified” altruism.

To be other-regarding, according to Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, one has to delude oneself that the ‘other’ is in fact there as a separate independent entity. One needs to reconstruct their fixed personhood, as it were. To regard the other at all is to agree to play by the rules of conventionality. That is, to be selfless on their account is a metaphysical game. Thus, the altruistic model presented here will not be a Western one, but a radically qualified one, requiring much attention to detail. So whilst drawing upon Western models of altruism, I cannot over-emphasize the differences, namely the metaphysical underpinnings and the epistemological manipulations. I call this ethical model “constructive altruism”.

I therefore agree with Dharmasiri (1989) that Buddhist ethics, “cannot be satisfactorily analyzed through Western categories” (p. xii), and I believe the same goes for Advaitin ethics. Dharmasiri talks of Western categories as being too “narrow” (ibid.) to account for Buddhist metaphysics, and so I believe my model of constructive altruism may well help to widen these categories. Dharmasiri is indeed correct to say that the distinction between [Western] “altruism and egoism breaks down” (p15), but not for the reasons he offers. The real issue is not that, in Buddhism, “helping others is a way of helping oneself” (p16), but that, in Madhyamaka (and Advaita) helping others is about constructing others. This is the key difference between Western models and my Indian-derived model. Constructive altruism, then, is a model that allows for notions of moral action within a framework of ultimate non-individuation.
**Inter-Religious Comparison:**

Like Lovin (2005: 19), I believe that the modern moral theorist is (and should be) less concerned with the actual norms of a system and more concerned with the Nietzschean question of *why we ought to be moral at all* (G.S. 344). Perrett (1998) takes this to be one of the two major questions in ethics, whilst Hindery (1996) sees it as the first question that must be asked of any moral tradition. And given the metaphysical revisions which underlie the model of constructive altruism proposed here, the *why*-question would seem especially urgent.

The question as to why we ought to be moral might arise from a multitude of subjective or objective starting points. For example, it could be taken as a sceptical one, essentially challenging ethical discourse *en masse* (à la Nietzsche). For Hindery (1996), it is an epistemological question. Alternatively, it might be asked existentially (à la Camus). Here, the departure will be taken from the grounds of Śāntideva’s and Śaṅkara’s competing metaphysics. The question then is, if I were one or other of these two thinkers, if I held either of their metaphysical views, why would I wish others to follow a particular ethical code? How could I justify such prescriptions? This metaphysical approach will be taken for two reasons.

In the first place, ethics seems to me to be inseparable from metaphysics. As Gamwell (2005: 116) so nicely puts it:

> [A] theoretical explication of any given religious ethic is inseparable from metaphysics, and the similarities and differences among the ethics of differing religions cannot be fully explicated without a metaphysical comparison.
If we are going to compare how two religious thinkers ask their disciples and peers to live within the world, then it would seem unquestionably necessary to first define just what those worlds are like. That is, authors and believers do not simply live within the world as we currently define it, but exist within a world-view. That world-view will of course depend on time and place, and so we can note from the start that Śaṅkara and Śāntideva both inhabited an 8th century India.

Also, as the concern here has little to do with how morality functioned on the ground, it is even more justifiable to give primary value to world-view. This is especially justified in the case of Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, for they both offered a radical metaphysical revision. Thus, Deutsch (1973: 99) went so far as to claim that ethical questions for Advaita are present in “every metaphysical or epistemological question” they ask. With regard to Śaṅkara’s broader epistemological concerns, this is no doubt an exaggeration. However, we can interpret Deutsch to mean that Śaṅkara was more interested in searching for the ‘right’ knowledge (ṣaṃyag-jñāna) than in verifying that his knowledge was ‘right’ (i.e. justified). In other words, right knowledge, being brahman-knowledge, is its own justification. Śaṅkara writes:

\[
\text{kathaṃ hy ekasya sva hṛday pratyayam brahma-vedanāṃ deha dhāraṇāṃ cāpāreṇa pratikṣeptuṃ śakyeta?}
\]

For when somebody feels in his heart that he has realised brahman, and yet bears a body, how can this be contested by anyone else? (B.S.Bh. IV.i.15).

Thus Taber (1983: 13) translates samyag-jñāna as “self-verifying knowledge”. In fact, Śaṅkara borrows this notion of “self-validating” (sva-pramāṇaka) knowing from the Pūrva-Mīmāṃsā School, but adds the further pramāṇa of “experience”
(anubhava)\textsuperscript{46} to the list of validating means of knowledge (Suthren Hirst, 2005: 66-7), a move that Ram-Prasad (2001a: 170-171) describes as “unfortunate”, given that an experience needs an experiencer, which, in Advaitic terms, implies jīva-consciousness. Be that as it may, Śaṅkara states that:

\begin{quote}
\textit{anubhavāvasānatvāddhūtavastuviṣayatvāc ca brahma-jñānasya}
\end{quote}

The knowledge of brahman culminates in experience which relates to an actual entity (B.S.Bh. I.1.2).

As for the metaphysics of self, we have already noted how the concept of self was so pivotal to Śaṅkara’s ethics, the rejection of egoism being directly linked with his metaphysics of ātman. One reaches brahman through a complete destruction of egocentricity. Thus, Hopkins (1996: 187) points out the apparent contradiction in the Prāsaṅgika’s suggestion that labelling the highest reality “Self” would increase egocentricity. In fact, Śaṅkara clears the way for a life of selfless service through an insight into Self:

\begin{quote}
\textit{svayamvedya tva paryāyaḥ svapramāṇaka isyatām | nivṛttāvahamāḥ siddhaḥ svāmāno ‘nubhavaś ca naḥ ||}
\end{quote}

It must be accepted that [the self] is ‘self-evident’, which is synonymous with ‘self-knowable’. And the experience of one’s [true] self is established along with the cessation of the [false] notion of ‘I’ (U.S. Metric, 18.200/203).\textsuperscript{47}

And as we have already noted, Śaṅkara’s metaphysics and ethics meet through the following verse from the Upaniṣads:

\begin{quote}
\textit{yatsu sarvāṇi bhūtāny ātmany evān upaśyati | sarva bhūteṣu cātmānaṃ tato na vijugupsate ||}
\end{quote}

When a man sees all beings in this Self, and the Self in all beings, he feels no hatred (Īś.U. 6).

\textsuperscript{46} Cf. the V.C. (474-477).

\textsuperscript{47} In Mayeda’s translation it is verse 18.200; in Jagadānanda’s translation it is verse 18.203.
If we fail to understand Śaṅkara’s views on self, it is simply impossible to understand his ethics. Likewise, as Goodman (contra Keown) has pointed out, “The doctrine of no self is at the heart of Mahāyāna ethics” (Goodman, 2009: 96). Finnigan and Tanaka (2011) have also concluded that both Candrakīrti and Śāntideva “explicitly connect Madhyamaka metaphysics with Mahāyāna ethics” (p231). Śāntideva writes that, “the bodhisattva who thus sees reality as-it-is feels a profound compassion for all beings” (yathā bhūmata darśino bodhisattasya sattvēṣu mahā-karunā pravartate) (Ś.S. 119). In Śāntideva’s hands, metaphysical self-lessness becomes “the tool of altruistic service” (Matics, 1971: 89), that is, ethical selflessness:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ātmānam aparityayāya duḥkham tyaktum na śakyate} & \quad | \\
\text{yathāgniṃ aparityayayā dāhāṃ tyaktum na śakyate} & \quad || \\
\text{tasmāt svā-duḥkha śanty arthaṃ para-duḥkha śamāya ca} & \quad | \\
\text{dadāmy anyebhyā atmānaṃ parān grhnāmi cātmavat} & \quad ||
\end{align*}
\]

If one does not let go of self, one cannot free oneself from suffering, as one who does not remove themselves from fire cannot avoid being burnt. Thus, in order to alleviate my own suffering and put an end to the suffering of others, I devote myself to others and accept them as ‘myself’ (BCA. 8.135-136).

The doctrine of selflessness is thus a “philosophical concept, an ethical principle, and a soteriological device” (Huntington, 1989: 70). Only when we understand Śāntideva’s manipulations of the concept of self can we ever come to understand his ethics. If I am confusing ethics with metaphysics, then so did Śaṅkara and Śāntideva.

And not only did they link ethics with a radical metaphysics, but they both offered an ideal type, a liberated being, who is said to act correctly because of an insight into the true nature of reality. This ideal type is also based on a common ascetic/monastic stance functioning within a network of norms. We may call this network ’Dharma’, though Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will have different definitions of what this means to
their traditions (see Chapters 4.3 & 6). We can therefore respond to MacIntyre’s (1996: 1) warning that “Moral concepts are embodied in and are partially constitutive of forms of social life”, by pointing out that the two traditions under analysis share a huge amount of social ground, yet differ in religious lineage. It could be claimed of both systems that their ethics were metaphysically grounded in a realist sense, that is, both confirm a common moral realism, the law of karma, which is highly deterministic. Furthermore, there are truths out there to be known, and there are humans who have exemplified such a realisation.

The critical question for both systems is this: do the descriptions of their modes of conduct make sense within their respective metaphysical descriptions? That is, we will need to ask whether an altruistic ethical stance is at all compatible with the respective metaphysical revisions offered. This will include both the apparent discontinuity of a confirmation of worldly tradition with the goal of liberation from that very world, along with the more subtle problem of whether persons (as individuated agents) are accepted as truly existent (sat) or not, and indeed what ‘truly existent’ means. Readers of Little and Twiss (1978: 231) might recognise the former feature as parallel to the problem of transcendent morality, and the second feature as parallel to the so-called “paradoxical element” in the teachings of Theravāda Buddhism. An attempt will be made here to show how the transcendent morality thesis fails to apply to the ethics of Śāntideva or, for different reasons, to those of Śaṅkara. It is also hoped that the “paradox” might be solved by introducing the concept of a “voluntary” delusion on the part of Śāntideva and by examining the complex question of residual (prārabdhā) karma in Śaṅkara.

48 By this I mean “doing x typically leads to y”, rather than, “one had no choice but to do x”.

87
Stating the case briefly here, comparing the two systems, we might note that at the universal level, their metaphysics are radically opposed, whilst at the level of agency, their metaphysics quite unexpectedly converge. Neither level is compatible with the realist’s view of the world. And it should be noted that the ultimate denial of individual agency was as equally counter-intuitive in 8th century India as it is now in the 21st century west. Nevertheless, for Śaṅkara, all is brahman, and as such, anything other than brahman fails to have independent existence, including the so-called individuated self (jīva), whose personal agency is the result of a mistaken cognition. For Śāntideva, all is empty (śūnya), that is, empty of inherent or independent existence; hence an agreement with Śaṅkara that there is no individuated self. The shocking conclusion is that the foundational ethics of these two systems turn out to be remarkably similar despite the radically opposed metaphysics which ground them. They both respond with a call for ethical, even compassionate, action, yet they are both open to the “why” question. These are the roots of my thesis.

Summary of Aims:

Twiss (2005) lists five broad areas for the future of comparative (religious) ethics, and this thesis clearly sits within the first of these, with its focus on “Comparative inquiry into selfhood and moral agency” (p152). What follows then is such an examination into the metaphysics and ethics of two contemporary Indian thinkers. As a guide to

---

49 Both Śāntideva (BCA. Chapter 8) and Śaṅkara (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xvi.3) thoroughly accept that their claims are counter-intuitive, if by that we mean a view that goes against those which the average person (loka) instinctively holds prior to analysis (avicārīta). Both acknowledge that the commonly held view is that we are the “body” (deha, kāya). Śaṅkara (Bh.G.Bh. 3.27) relates this to self-delusion (vimūḍha-ātma). Śaṅkara also states that, to think “I am an individuated soul, separate [from the body and mind]” (ahāṃ jīvāḥ kartā), i.e. the view of non-Advaitins, is not a “naturally held view of beings” (svabhāvataḥ prāṇinām vijnānā daṁśanāt) (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xvi.3).
such an examination, the reader may take my aims as threefold: one philosophical, one historiographical, and one disciplinary.

The first aim, which I regard as philosophical, is to show how two very different – even radically opposite – views on the cosmology of self can generate strikingly similar accounts of the relationship between human conduct and the world within a ‘selfless framework’. This will form the major thread of the thesis. The philosophical point to be captured by the reader is that neither Śāntideva nor Śaṅkara will require a view of the person as a stable individuated agent in order to posit a system of moral values that ought to be followed. In fact, they will both conclude that the very belief in oneself as a unified moral agent is counter-productive to other-regarding moral thought. The outline of their models presented here should therefore impact on the way philosophers of the self approach the question of ethics.

The second aim, which I regard as historiographical, is to show how committed these two thinkers were to the continuity of their lineages, both in terms of doctrinal commitments and normative conduct. It will demonstrate how the language of ultimate truth sets the limits on these commitments, but also how the seemingly opposing language of conventional truth tends to balance the weight of any ultimate assertions. We may see this as a partial resolution of the “tension” introduced earlier. For example, Śāntideva will use ultimate-style logic to put the very idea of selfhood under question, but will then adopt conventional-style rhetoric to reinstate the ‘other’ as the raison d’être of the ethical life. In like manner, Śaṅkara will use ultimate-style rhetoric to shift the focus of the seeker’s awareness from the relative world to the absolute realization of brahman-consciousness, whilst later reinstating those very
cultural categories he criticizes in order to maintain traditional social class norms, and thus the ‘purity’ of his lineage, both in terms of social background and education.

The third aim, which is **disciplinary**, has two parts:

The first **disciplinary** objective is basically to warn those who would over-stress the ātman/anātman distinction as a way of categorizing Hinduism versus Buddhism. It will be highlighted how their ultimate views lead both thinkers into a denial of jīvātman as individuated self, and also how their call for a “selfless” response to others demands that they pay lip service to a provisional level of individuated self. That they both shift between these two levels, and for the same reasons, is demonstration enough that we need to reconsider the commonly voiced view that ātman/anātman is the major distinguishing feature of these two religions.

One of the most recent examples of this is Hayes’ claim that anātman is “the one doctrine of Buddhism that distinguished it from all other teachings in India” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 28). This follows on from Kasulis’ (1997) claim that the “negation of ātman” by the Buddha was an “emblem of his break from the Hindu tradition” (p400). Yet, had not Ruegg (1989a) already insisted that it would be “quite incorrect to represent Buddhism simply (and simplistically) as invariably asserting the non-existence of self” (p243)? Ruegg does not specify his reasons for this; however, my reason will focus on what Śāntideva actually argues for and how he does it. To do justice to the Sanskrit material, we need a more nuanced approach to the question of self (see Chapter 4.2), which has to consider not just the Two-Truths mode of discourse, but also the persuasive, even voluntary self-deluding, form of emotive ethical rhetoric taken up by both Buddhist and Hindu traditions (Chapter 6).
The second **disciplinary** objective overlaps the others. Here I wish to point out how Śāntideva and Śaṅkara, as representatives of two often competing religions, actually share far more ground than their ultimate stances would first indicate. It will be shown how their methodologies and aims, and even their inter-sectarian differences, are in fact **cross-cutting**. This will show itself in the way that both ultimately deny the individuated self, both adopt the concept of Two-Truths or Two-Realities, and both then posit a teacher who can distinguish between these realities and who can equally lead others to an understanding of the Two Truths. It will also show itself in their mutual attack on the Yogācāra School of Buddhism (Chapter 4.1).

In order to highlight how the two thinkers so similarly answer the question of right moral conduct, two marginal cases have been chosen. The first case study will examine how the two traditions describe the “mystical” intuitions and “effortless” actions of a person who is said to be liberated from conditioned existence (Chapter 6). This is marginal in the sense that this ‘person’, according to both systems, is said to be beyond the moral code, and is yet said to exemplify it. The accounts given by Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will be shown to be remarkably similar. The second case study will take place at the opposite boundary, concerning those who tend to be discriminated by the culture under examination. The purpose here is to compare how Śaṅkara handles the subject of class and caste with the way Śāntideva handles the subject of women (Chapter 7). Both will claim that these categories are *mere labels* to be left behind, yet both will confirm these labels within their ethical systems. Through these means, it will be demonstrated how the conventional, and thus moral-making, ground of each tradition consistently manages to survive the ultimate level of discourse.
3. Situating Śaṅkara and Śāntideva

There are essentially two major doctrinal differences between Brahmanism and Buddhism which have forever held them apart as separate, even opposing religions. The first is the Buddhist denial of the validity of the Vedic view of the cosmos and its sacrificial rites, and thus the authoritative testimony (śabda) of the Vedic literature. The second is the Buddhist denial of a permanent, essential self, be it brahman, ātman or jīva. Both of these Buddhist positions, in one form or other, go right back to the Buddha himself, and thus precede the Mahāyāna.

The contrast between Śaṅkara and Śāntideva is thus, in the main, one inherited from their traditions. However, it is further sharpened by the radical (re)formulations which later take place; on one side, the Advaita doctrine which states that “all is brahman”, and on the other, the Madhyamaka doctrine which states that “all is empty”. These radical metaphysical positions do two things: first, they place Śaṅkara and Śāntideva at opposite ends of the “Self-spectrum”; second, they threaten to undermine their own traditions. Before we can judge how much they each threaten their own traditions, we first need to lay out the doctrines and modes of conduct that Śaṅkara and Śāntideva inherited from their respective traditions.
3.1 Approaching Śaṅkara

In India, it is not so much originality, but fidelity to tradition that is prized most. While Śaṅkara may well be called an innovative philosopher, he did not claim to be the inventor or expounder of an original system. The tradition that Śaṅkara wishes to defend has its origins in the Vedas. Śaṅkara wishes to provisionally defend the early (pūrva) Vedic scriptures, with their sacrificial rites and associated social systems, whilst wishing to ultimately defend the later (uttara) Vedic scriptures, otherwise known as the Upaniṣads. Śaṅkara asks us to accept the prescriptions with regard to actions as found in the early Vedas, whilst also understanding that the non-dual (advaita) description of brahman given in the Upaniṣads (in his interpretation) is the ultimate truth (paramārtha-satya), and that the attainment of this knowledge leads to liberation from the conventional (vyāvahārika), and is verily the final goal. And so:

\[
na \ldots advaitātma vijñānād anyatra ātyantikī niḥśreya saprāptih
\]

Absolute liberation cannot be achieved without the realisation of the non-dual self (Ch.U.Bh., intro).

At the conventional level, Śaṅkara essentially follows the Pūrva-Mīmāṃsa (see Halbfass, 1991: 385). For this school, the Vedic revelation must be interpreted solely as injunction (vidhi) to action. That is, Vedic sentences are incitements (codanā) to ritual action (karma). Thus Jaimini’s Mīmāṃsā Sūtra (I.i.2) defines Dharma as incitements to action (codanā lakṣaṇo ‘rtha dharmah) (see Mohanty, 2007: 59). Furthermore, the Vedas are said to be the only source which can teach us about Dharma. Yet, for Śaṅkara, the Vedic sayings are most potent when they speak of knowledge (jñāna) rather than ritual action (karma).
Śaṅkara has been called the greatest representative and interpreter of Eastern mysticism (Otto, 1957: xvi). Others have suggested that his exegesis was “too rational” to be classed as mystical (Cenkner, 1983: 82). Some have stressed that Śaṅkara was first and foremost, a teacher (Suthren Hirst, 2005: 1). He will be treated here primarily as an exegete. As for the teaching aspect, the focus will be on his insistence that one needs a qualified teacher, and on the notion that the teacher himself, having realised brahman, is in need of nothing. The brahman-knower-cum-teacher, the living-liberated being (jīvan-mukta)50, being a voluntary actor, solely responding to the needs of others, will be described as “altruistic”. The basis of this altruism, I will argue, is a sense of compassion.

The exegetical focus will be on his commentaries to the so-called Triple Canon (prasthāna-traya) of the Vedānta tradition: the major Upaniṣads, the Bhagavad Gītā and the Brahma Sūtra. Attention will also be paid to his principal (authentic)51 non-commentarial work, the Upadeśa Sāhasrī, where Śaṅkara pays most attention to the role of the teacher. This text is divided into two parts, the Prose-section, which is a “handy guide for teachers”, and the Metrical-section, which acts as a “textbook for the pupils”; perhaps based on Śaṅkara’s own “pedagogical experiences” (Mayeda, 1992: xvii). The explicit need for a teacher to pass on the ultimate knowledge of the Vedas is also found throughout his commentaries and it is consistently to the Upaniṣads that

50 Skoog (1996: 75) notes that the term ‘jīvan-mukta’ appears nowhere in the Upaniṣads. However, Dasgupta (1975, Vol.II: 246) has traced a reference in a late Upaniṣad, the Muktika Upaniṣad. Despite the lack of explicit references to the term, Dasgupta states that “the idea seems to be pretty old” (p247). Śaṅkara, in all his authentic writings, only used the actual term once (Bh.G.Bh. 6.27). Thus, Nelson (1996: 21) assumes that, for Śaṅkara, it had not yet become a “technical term”. The V.C., on the other hand, uses the term repeatedly (e.g. 428-440).

he turns for authority, not to his own experience. That is why we should treat him primarily as an exegete.

The Upaniṣads are known as śruti (revealed text), which Śaṅkara typically treats as self-validating (B.S.Bh. I.iii.28). The Bhagavad Gītā, though an example of smṛti (remembered text), and thus one which ought to be interpreted through other texts (B.S.Bh. I.iii.28), is actually treated by Śaṅkara with the same authority as śruti.52 This is no doubt because Śaṅkara takes it to be in agreement with the Upaniṣads (see B.S.Bh. II.i.1). Bādarāyaṇa’s Brahma Sūtra is the most revered Vedāntic example of nyāya (logical treatise), and is said to closely follow the teachings of the Chāndogya Upaniṣad (Klostermaier, 2007: 159). Śaṅkara, in commenting on all these ancient texts, was involved in what Deutsch (1988: 169) has called the language of “recovery”. However, Śaṅkara has sometimes been accused of forcing the texts into the service of his own doctrines (Otto, 1957: xvii), or taking liberties with his interpretations (Isayeva, 1993: 100). But as Deutsch (1988) more generally states with regard to Indian texts, the “philosopher-commentator … seeks to remain faithful to his authoritative sources, but in his own creative terms” (p170). Śaṅkara was clearly a serious and creative thinker, endowed with “too much creativity and reasoning power to remain a simple traditionalist” (Mayeda, 1992: 48). Hence, the religious and historical significance of Śaṅkara’s commentaries is immeasurable.

Now Śaṅkara is often spoken of as “virtually the founder of Advaita” (Ram-Prasad, 2002: 5). However, he did not truly found Advaita and writes as if he were following

52 The Gītā is sometimes referred to as ‘Gītopaniṣad’ (Theodor, 2010: 36). The Mahābhārata, from which the Gītā was extracted, also calls itself the “Fifth Veda” (Lipner, 2010: 71). On the accepted authority of the “didactic portions” of the Mahābhārata, see Potter (1981: 5).
a tradition (*sampradāya*). Three ancient teachers are mentioned in the *Brahma Sūtra* itself (B.S. I.iv.20-22), but little is known about them except that they are claimed by both Advaita and Viśiṣṭādvaita (Potter, 1981: 10). Other traditional teachers are also mentioned by Śaṅkara (p12). However, no study of Śaṅkara would be complete without mentioning his huge indebtedness to the work of Gauḍapāda, who may well have been the teacher of his teacher (Govindapāda). Indeed, Śaṅkara refers to Gauḍapāda as “*parama-guru*” (G.K.Bh. Salutation), which translates as either “teacher of the teacher” or “great teacher”.\(^{53}\) Aside from Bādarāyaṇa, the author of the *Brahma Sūtra*, the theoretical source of Vedānta, Gauḍapāda was possibly the most influential figure on Śaṅkara’s philosophy.\(^{54}\) His use of the Two-Truths doctrine and the notion of māyā can be traced back to Gauḍapāda’s *Māṇḍūkya kārikā*, as well as his use of the term ‘advaita’ to describe the highest reality.

Now, Gauḍapāda’s text was “undoubtedly composed under the direct impact of Buddhist ideas” (Isayeva, 1993: 10). Even its use of māyā (as illusiveness of the phenomenal world) is a Buddhist rather than Vedāntin interpretation, traceable to Nāgārjuna’s *MMK*. This has been confirmed by Richard King (1995: 2 & 126-127), amongst others (see Potter, 1981: 78-79). Furthermore, Gauḍapāda’s monism owes much to the Yogācāra (see Chapter 4.1). Dasgupta (1975) took this borrowing from both Madhyamaka and Yogācāra to be “so obvious” that it was “needless to attempt to prove it” (Vol.I: 429). Mayeda (1992) thus speaks of the “buddhification of the Vedānta tradition” (p13). Due to a verse in the Kārikā (4.1) where Gauḍapāda apparently pays reverence to the Buddha, Dasgupta (1975, Vol.I: 423) even suggested

---

\(^{53}\) On the ambiguity of this term, see King (1995: 16).

\(^{54}\) Of course, the Vedas themselves are said to be authorless (*apauruṣeya*). For further commentarial influences on Śaṅkara, see Roodurmun (2002: 9-25).
that Gauḍapāda was “possibly” a Buddhist. Hacker says that “There cannot be any reasonable doubt that the person meant is the Buddha” (in Halbfass, 1995: 36). Battacharya, however, believed Gauḍapāda remained a “Vedāntist”, despite the Buddhist influence; a view echoed by Murti (1980: 13) and by Mahadeva and Roy (cited in O’Neil, 1980: 54-56). Personally, I feel that the more obvious conclusion to draw is that Buddhist and Brahmanical ideas are often cross-cutting and that their methodologies were mutually borrowed. I therefore see Malinar’s (2007: 259) notion of “floating concepts and practices” as a healthy one. In Chapter 4, I hope to convince the reader of this cross-cutting with regard to Śaṅkara and Śāntideva.

Śaṅkara does his best to distance Vedānta from Buddhism, attempting to explain away all the references to the Buddha. In a decisive passage, whilst admitting the similarities with Vijñānavāda doctrines and Vedānta, he insists on keeping them apart:

\[
yadyapi bāhyārtha nirākaraṇaṃ jñāna-mātra kalpanā ca advaya vastu sāmīpyam uktam | idaṃ tu paramārtha tattvam advaitaṃ vedānteṣv eva vijñeyam ity arthaḥ ||
\]

Even though the view [of the Buddha]\(^{55}\), which rejects the existence of external objects and asserts the doctrine of consciousness-only, is said to be similar to the notion of non-duality; the ultimate non-dual reality is, however, only known through the Upaniṣads. This is the meaning (G.K.Bh. 4.99).

This is a critical statement, and supports the point made in Chapter 2 that you simply cannot compare religions by comparing virtues like ‘understanding’. An ultimate truth for one camp is but an approximation to it in another. Śaṅkara here refuses to acknowledge that the Buddha could have been enlightened even though they hold basically the same doctrine. Elsewhere, in his defining work, the Brahma-Sūtra

\(^{55}\) In the verse on which Śaṅkara is commenting (G.K. 4.99), Gauḍapāda claims that the knowledge of Vedānta is “not that uttered by the Buddha” (na ita buddhena bhāṣitam). While Śaṅkara often debates with the Yogācāra as a separate school, he also takes the Buddhists (en masse) as claiming that the Buddha taught all “Three-Turnings” of the Dharma (B.S.Bh. II.i.31). So in his G.K. commentary, Śaṅkara speaks of this idealistic doctrine of the Yogācāra as being that of the Buddha himself.
\textit{Bhāṣya}, he accuses the Buddha of “incoherent Prattling” (\textit{asambaddha pralāpitvaṃ}). Buddhism is there declared to be “nihilistic” (\textit{vaināśika}) and “untenable” (\textit{anupapanna}). As such, Śaṅkara recommends that:

\begin{quote}
\textit{sarvathāpy anādaraṇīyo ‘yaṃ sugata samayaḥ śreyas kāmair}
\end{quote}

The Buddhist religion should be totally renounced by those who desire the highest good (B.S.Bh. II.ii.32).

Śaṅkara here calls for a complete break with Buddhism. In fact, as a good exegete, he ends the phrase with, “that is the intended meaning” (\textit{ityabhiprayah}). In other words, he traces his position back to the Brahma Sūtra itself. Obviously, some change took place between Śaṅkara (the writer of the \textit{Kārikā Bhāṣya}) and Śaṅkara (the writer of the Brahma-Sūtra Bhāṣya). Thus, Mayeda (1992: 7) suggests that it was left to Śaṅkara to “revedanticize” the Advaita tradition. And while Ruegg (2010: 32) sees this move from Buddhist thought to Vedāntic sources as a “progressive” one within the \textit{Kārikā} itself, Śaṅkara certainly takes it one step further.

Hacker suggests that Śaṅkara moved on from Gauḍapāda into a more obvious “Advaita period” developing a “more independent way of thinking” (in Halbfass, 1995: 108). We can certainly see that he moved away from the doctrine of “mind-only”, which he most certainly upholds in the \textit{Kārikā Bhāṣya}. Here he states that an object (\textit{arthah}) perceived in the waking-state is as non-existent (\textit{abhūtaḥ}) as those perceived in the dream-state. It is “consciousness alone that appears as objects such as pots, just like in dream” (\textit{cittam-eva hi ghāṭādy artha vad avabhāsate yathā svapne}) (G.K.Bh. 4.26). Śaṅkara here holds a “mind-only” (\textit{cittam-eva}) doctrine, in complete contradiction to his major works. Moreover, Śaṅkara admits that these doctrines are those of the Yogācāra Buddhist (\textit{Vijñānavādino Bauddhasya}), and that “they are accepted” (\textit{anumoditam}) “by the teacher” (\textit{ācāryena}), i.e. Gauḍapāda (4.28). The
reason they are accepted is that they “refute the views of those who maintain the reality of external things” (bāhyārtha vādi pakṣa pratiṣedhaparam). He goes on to say that the only objection Gauḍapāda has to the Yogācāra thesis is the “momentariness” (kṣanikatva) of consciousness (ibid.). For Advaita, consciousness is always steady and unchangeable in itself.

Two important points to notice here are: 1) Gauḍapāda is not simply accepting a particular Buddhist ontology without critique. He in fact denies part of their thesis. And 2) Śaṅkara, in this Bhāṣya, is happier to sit alongside an idealist Buddhist than be confused with the realists. Nor can we say that Śaṅkara was merely parroting the doctrines of Gauḍapāda here, for he says something very similar in the Aitareya-Upaniṣad Bhāṣya. Here, Śaṅkara likens the waking state to the dream state:

\[
\text{paramārtha svātma prabodhābhāvāt svapna-vad asad vastu darśanāc ca}
\]

In the waking state there is no consciousness of one’s own self as the Absolute Truth, and one perceives unreal things as in a dream (Ait.U.Bh. I.iii.12).

However, we should not too hastily assume that Śaṅkara’s final position is that the “world of everyday experience is a dream”, as Phillips (1997: 326) does; for a whole different picture forms when we compare the following statement from his (later) Brhadāraṇyaka-Upaniṣad Bhāṣya:

\[
vijñānadarthāntaraṃ vastu na ced abhyupagamyate, vijñānāṃ ghaṭaḥ paṭa ity evamādīnāṃ ṣabdānāṃ ekārtvate paryāṣabdatvam prāṇnoti |
\]

56 It is noteworthy that Loy (1988: 129) unquestionably adopts such teachings of Gauḍapāda as if they were Śaṅkara’s. If Hacker is right, then this methodology is questionable.

57 The V.C. (170-171) also holds a “mind only” (mana-eva) doctrine “after the fashion of Gauḍapāda” (Potter, 1981: 335). It repeats the notion that sense objects perceived in the waking-state are as “false” (mithyā) as those perceived in the dream-state (V.C. 252).
If no object distinct from consciousness were admitted, then the words ‘cognition’, ‘pot’, ‘cloth’, etc., having the same meaning, would all be synonymous (Br. U. Bh. IV. iii. 7).

A similar style of inquiry is found in his defining work, the Brahma-Sūtra Bhāṣya, where the following argument is offered to him by a realist opponent:

\[ \text{prasiddho hy ayaṃ bhoktṛ bhogya vibhāgō loke bhoktā cetanaḥ śarīro, bhogyāḥ śabdādayo viṣayā iti} \]

It is quite obvious that there is a fundamental distinction between the subject of experience and that which is experienced; the subject being the embodied consciousness, the experience consisting of objects such as sound, etc. (B.S. Bh. II. i. 13).

His answer is that:

\[ \text{upadyate evā yamasmat pakṣe ‘pi vibhāgah, evaṃ loke drṣṭatvāt} \]

This distinction can indeed be upheld from our point of view, for it is seen to be so in the world (ibid.).

In other words, Śaṅkara is agreeing with his opponent that the pramāṇa of perception (pratyakṣa) has the world of sensation as its valid domain.58 But this does not mean that he accepts the opponent’s claim that the Vedas only have “validity in their own

---

58 As Deutsch (1973: 69, n. 6) notes, Śaṅkara tends to focus on three pramāṇas: perception (pratyakṣa), inference (anumāṇa) and scriptural testimony (śabda, śruti). He typically places smṛti in the category of inference (B.S. Bh. I. iii. 28). However, as noted by Suthren Hirst (2005: 66-67), with regard to knowledge of the Self, he also seems to allow for experience (anubhava) as a further pramāṇa (B.S. Bh. I. i. 2). For Potter’s comments on anubhava, which he translates as “immediate intuition”, and other pramāṇas, see Potter (1981: 96–98). For a more detailed discussion of anubhava in Śaṅkara, see Sharma (1992). Also see the V.C. (477). Now, Suthren Hirst (2005) has claimed that Śaṅkara would not engage with the Mādhyaṃkikas because they “did not accept any pramāṇas” (p49). And Matics (1971) claims that Śāntideva “accepts no criteria of valid knowledge” (p118). However, this is simply not true. Śāntideva clearly accepts certain Buddhist scriptures as authoritative; the Compendium is almost entirely made up of such authoritative citations. He uses scripture as a means to prove the validity of the workings of karma, and even to justify his emptiness doctrine (BCA. 9.38–50). He also accepts the yogi’s “superior understanding” as a form of knowledge (9.7-8) worthy of replacing the direct perception of common people (9.6). Furthermore, for Śāntideva (see B.S. Bh. I. i. 4 & II. i. 14), ultimately, the pramāṇas “fail to tell us about reality” (Potter, 1981: 96), culminating in a neither/nor position, which parallels that of Nāgārjuna (ibid.). When brahman-knowledge is gained, the “very conditions under which the system of knowledge operates cease to hold” (Ram-Prasad, 2007: 128). That is why Halbfass (1991) claims that “Śāntideva withdraws ultimately from the open arena of philosophical debate” (p36). Furthermore, Nāgārjuna did not say that he denied the pramāṇas, but that he neither affirmed nor denied them (na pravartayāmi na nivartayāmi) (Vv. 30). As pointed out by Westerhoff (2009: 179), Burton (2001: 194) is wrong in claiming that, for Nāgārjuna, the pramāṇas and their objects do not exist at all. Rather, they have no independent existence. Nāgārjuna’s assault was targeted at foundationalism, not epistemic instruments, per se (Garfield, 2011: 28-29). Thus, the apparent methodological difference between Śaṅkara and Śāntideva fails from both sides.
domain” (*pramāṇaṃ sva viṣaye bhavati*) and that direct perception is to be awarded priority in this provisional domain. It is rather that the Two Truths of the Vedas can equally allow for both domains. For Śaṅkara, the “Veda does not simply leave this world to the “worldly” means of knowledge” (Halbfass, 1991: 152).

Ram-Prasad (2002: 32) comments on this exchange with the realist:

> It is from this experiential situation that the systematic nature of the *pramāṇas*, together with the requirement of a systematic order of objects (the extrinsic world), is derived. Objects have to be that way, or else experience could not be accounted for.

It is here worth comparing this to Śāntideva on the conventional status of objects and his defence of the Buddha’s “First Turning” pseudo-realist treatment of objects:

\[
\text{lokāvatāraṇārthaṃ ca bhāvā nāthena deśitāḥ} \quad | \\
\text{tattvataḥ kṣaṇikā naite samvṛtyā ced virūḍhyate} \quad || \\
\text{na doṣo yogi samvṛtyā lokātte tattva darśinaḥ} \quad |
\]

The Protector taught of existents in order to guide people [gradually into the knowledge of emptiness]. If it is objected then that these [“entities”] are not really momentary, but only conventionally so [the fact is that] there is no fault in a yogi adopting the conventional usage. He has a better understanding of reality than the worldly (BCA. 9.7-8a).

Before we compare this view on valid means of knowledge with Śaṅkara’s, let us return to the latter’s response (B.S.Bh. II.i.13) to his realist opponent:

\[
\text{tathāhi samudrād udakātmano ‘nanyatve ‘pi tad vikārāṇāṃ phena vīcī taraṅga budbudādīnāṃ itaretāra vibhāga itaretāra saṃśleśādī} \\
\text{lakṣaṇas ca vyavahāra upalabhāye} \quad | \quad \text{na ca samudrād udakātmano} \\
\text{‘nanyatve ‘pi tad vikārāṇāṃ phena taraṅgādīnāṃ itaretāra} \\
\text{bhāvāpattir bhavati} \quad | \quad \text{na ca teṣābhittaretāra bhāvānāpattāvapi} \\
\text{samudātmano ‘nyatvam bhavati}
\]

Thus, although foam, ripple, wave, bubble, etc. (which are different modifications of the sea) are non-different from that sea (being themselves water), they still demonstrate separate actions and reactions in the form of breaking up and coalescing. And yet, the foam, wave, etc, do not lose their individuality in relation to one another, even though they are modifications of the sea and non-different from it (being themselves water). To re-iterate, even though
they do not lose their individuality in one another, they are never different from the point of view of their being the sea itself.\textsuperscript{59}

We can see from the above that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva struggle to find a place for external reality in their traditions’ neither/nor models. They are thus both intent on creating a both/and model. A wave both \textit{is} and \textit{is not} the sea. Individuals both \textit{do} and \textit{do not} exist.\textsuperscript{60} One way Śaṅkara does this is by claiming that the \textit{pramāṇa} of direct perception (\textit{pratyakṣa}) can be used to validate the \textit{pramāṇa} of scriptural testimony (\textit{śabda, śruti}). This makes him subject to normal conventions (\textit{vyavahāra}) and a transcendental thesis. Śāntideva, however, maintains that the perception of a \textit{yogi} is superior to normal perception (see Chapter 7.2). He therefore has no need to play ball with the conventional \textit{pramāṇa} system. His ultimate \textit{pramāṇa} then is the \textit{yogi}’s superior understanding, which amounts to their “privileged way” of describing reality (Brassard, 2000: 4). This is not so much a transcendental argument, but a gnoseological one.\textsuperscript{61}

Śāntideva’s \textit{yogi-bodhisattva}, by flickering from ultimate to conventional reality, commands authority in both domains. Of course, to a certain degree, the same is true of Śaṅkara’s \textit{brahma-vid}, who will claim self-validating knowledge of ultimate reality (see Chapter 5.1). He will also claim to understand the true intent of the Vedas (see Chapter 6.2). But his knowledge seems not to extend to the point of claiming to know the truth about whether objects exist externally or not. He seems more concerned than

\textsuperscript{59} Cf. \textit{V.C.} (390 & 496). This non-dual response could have been taken straight out of a Ch’\textsc{an} Buddhist text. But let us not forget that Śāntideva (unlike Chinese Madhyamaka) would not accept its metaphysical basis, there being no “Absolute” ground in Indian Madhyamaka. See note 27 on p\textsuperscript{39}.

\textsuperscript{60} Zaehner (1973: 187) saw a similar \textit{both/and} model as a characteristic of the \textit{Gīhā}.

\textsuperscript{61} For the argument that the Madhyamaka are in fact offering “transcendental arguments”, read the excellent book by Arnold (2005). I will return to this in Chapter 7.2.
the Buddhist as to whether his revisionary account will be “dismissed out of hand” (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 180). But, more than fear of philosophical rejection is at stake. Both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva need the outside world for their traditions’ ethics to function. They also need to remain sceptical of the world’s ‘solidity’, as it were, in order for their world-transcending thesis to have full force. They must both make cognition central without falling into a mind-only position (see Chapter 4.1). Thus, we see a tension between the Two Truths.

Returning to the question of textual development; if we accept that the Br.U.Bh and the B.S.Bh are his more ‘mature’ works, and if we also accept that the Ch.U.Bh was one of his two most important Upaniṣadic commentaries (see Suthren Hirst, 2005: 19-25), then Hacker seems correct in his assessment that Śaṅkara moved away from Gauḍapāda.62 Dasgupta (1975, Vol.II: 28-29) also notes this change in Śaṅkara’s attitude to external objects, feeling that his various statements would amount to “contradictions” unless we accept a shift in thought between the time of writing the G.K.Bh. and the B.S.Bh. And any sympathetic reading of Śaṅkara should try to avoid such contradictions.

Certainly, if we examine the arguments that Śaṅkara offers against the Yogācāra in his mature texts (see Chapter 4.1), we have to agree with Ram-Prasad’s (2002: 25-92) reading of Śaṅkara as offering a “transcendental argument” with regard to externality. Put simply, the argument goes that we cannot prove external reality, but we have to take it, a priori, as given in order to tally the world with our experience (p28). But we can neither prove that there is an external world, nor outright deny it (p81). The world

62 Admittedly, Hacker’s (and later Vetter’s) development thesis remains “inevitably hypothetical” (Halbfass, 1991: 144).
then, for Śaṅkara, has what Radhakrishnan (1989: 87) has called “pragmatic justification”. Contrary to Thurman’s (1976) thesis of “absolute” metaphysics, Śaṅkara does not impel us to “negate our immediate reality” (p3). The ‘mature’ Śaṅkara therefore sits closer to the Madhyamaka than to the Yogācāra. We might say that Śaṅkara moves from an idealistic/anti-realist position to a sceptical/non-realist position. This allows him to talk coherently about the world and its social structures without compromising the possibility of world-transcendence.

If we do accept this chronology, then it could be argued that at some point in his life, Śaṅkara no longer found idealism to be reasonable. But I would like to think that he also moved away from the mind-only position because he saw it as undermining the ethics of the Vedas and the Gītā. However, he maintained the Two Truths because that allowed him more scope to split the Vedas in two, creating two clear domains, the provisional and the ultimate. Keeping hold of the early Vedas allows for a more conservative traditional structure, and the Bhagavad Gītā provides him with the vehicle to express his views on class-based Dharma (see Chapter 4.3). Ram-Prasad (2007: 126) describes the Advaitin’s position thus:

Advaitins must reconcile a radical concept of liberation that rejects Vedic ritual by calling for it to be transcended with a conservative acknowledgement of the significance of Vedic orthopraxy.

On its Advaitin methodology, the V.C. states:

\[
\text{nālaṃ jahatyā na tathā 'jahatyā kintūbhayārthātmikayaiva bhāvyam |}
\]

Neither the method of complete rejection nor that of total retention is fitting. But a method based on both approaches should be adopted (247).

It is this tension which comes of maintaining the Two-Truths hermeneutics along with an insistence on traditional ethics that makes Śaṅkara’s both/and methodology appear
so much like Śāntideva. But the doctrine he holds is not that of the Madhyamaka, only the methodology. When dealing with ethics, texts are explained in conventional terms, but when dealing with liberation, texts are explained in ultimate terms. Thus, in balancing the provisional with the ultimate, both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva manipulate the traditional texts to suit the context. For Śaṅkara, the wave is both wave and sea; for Śāntideva, the wave is both wave and empty. They share the ‘and’, but not the ontology. And, of course, they disagree on the source of their provisional ethics. For Śaṅkara, the Vedic rituals must go on; for Śāntideva, they are futile. Thus, Śaṅkara’s traditional Vedāntin stance remains intact despite the similarities with his Buddhist compatriots (see Chapter 4). And, along with Ruegg (2010: 33), we might believe that he became more radically sectarian as a reaction to the obvious similarities.

In terms of caste and lineage, Śaṅkara seems to have a major task at hand if he wishes to: 1) link himself with the early Upaniṣads, and 2) see his own lineage as that of celibate monks. Even though the non-celibate life was ridiculed in the Muṇḍaka Upaniṣad (see Olivelle, 2008: 156-157); it is quite evident that the earlier Upaniṣads take the lineage of “knowers” to be a lineage of householders. The Chāndogya Upaniṣad, for example, is quite explicit that its lineage is one of “great-householders” (mahā-śālāḥ) (Ch.U. VI.iv.5). And Śaṅkara himself makes it explicit that by “knowers” the Upaniṣad means “knowers of brahman” (brahma-vidāṃ) (Ch.U.Bh. VI.iv.7). But in the very same commentary, Śaṅkara is quite insistent that “the monk alone, having ceased rites, remains established in brahman” (nivṛttā karmā bhikṣuka eva brahma-saṃstha) (II.xxiii.1). So insistent, in fact, that he repeats it with the paraphrased, “only as a mendicant who has completely given up difference can one remain established in brahman” (parivrājakasya eva nivṛttā bheda pratyasya brahma-saṃstatā saṃbhavāt) (ibid.). He simply does not want to admit that householders could have knowledge of brahman. In fact, he goes one further, and claims that those who desire women cannot possibly have knowledge of the Self (VIII.v.4). This is because lust (kāma) supposedly arises from ignorance (avidyā) (U.S. Prose, 1.20).

Elsewhere, he makes this explicit:

\[
\text{na hi turīyasyātmatvāvagame sati avidyā trṣṇādi dośāṇāṃ saṃbhavo 'sti}
\]

Indeed, there can be no possibility of such defects as ignorance, craving, and the like, after the realisation of the “fourth”\(^{63}\) as one’s Self (Mā.U.Bh. 7).

Moreover, once one attains to the Self, there is nothing left to be desired:

\[
\text{brahma-vidaś ca āpta kāmatvāt āpta kāmasya kāmānupapateḥ}
\]

\(^{63}\) The “fourth” (turīya) state, i.e. (neither awake, nor dreaming, nor asleep) (see Mā.U. 3-7).
The knower-of-\textit{brahman} has already attained the desirable, an incomparable desire; so he cannot therefore have any more desires (\textit{Bṛ. U.Bh. II.iv., intro}).

The \textit{Chāndogya Upaniṣad} thus speaks of a self-knower as “one who has bliss in the self” (ātmānandah) (VII.xxv.2), and Śaṅkara comments that this bliss (ānanda) is “without the need for union” (dvandva nirapekṣaṃ). Furthermore, it comes to a man “even while living” (jīvann eva)\textsuperscript{64} (Ch.U.Bh. VII.xxv.2). Clearly, Śaṅkara is simply trying to trump the bliss of sexual union with the so-called “incomparably exalted version” of bliss of realisation (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 192). As in Buddhism, it is used as a “sort of bait” (Chakrabarti, 1983: 171), merely to persuade would-be renouncers, especially those who put more value on sensual-pleasure (kāma-sukha) than on knowledge. Śaṅkara’s style of argument, like Śāntideva’s, was also persuasive, but also like Śāntideva, he found himself involved in persuading his followers in both ascetic terms and in more metaphysical terms. Thus, there is an inherent tension in his exegesis. On Śaṅkara’s pure Advaitin terms, personal bliss is a faulty argument, for we see elsewhere that he denies that a \textit{brahman}-knower could feel bliss as if it were something to be cognised (\textit{Bṛ. U.Bh. III.ix.28.7}). That is why scholars speak of Śaṅkara’s “reticence” (Potter, 1981: 91) and “reservations” (Hacker in Halbfass, 1995: 112) with regard to bliss. Śaṅkara is anxious to show that bliss of the self is not the object of a feeling (\textit{samvedya}). Hence:

\begin{quote}
jalāśaya ivodakājjaliḥ kṣiptaḥ na prthaktvena vyavatiṣṭate ānandātmaka brahma vijñānāya; tadā mukta ānandātmakam ātmānam vedayata ity etad anarthakaṃ vākyam
\end{quote}

Like a hand-full of water thrown into a lake, he does not retain a separate existence by which he could ‘know’ the blissful \textit{brahman}.

\textsuperscript{64} This is Śaṅkara’s typical way of referring to \textit{jīvan-mukti}. 
Hence, to say that the liberated man knows the blissful self is [ultimately] meaningless (Br.U.Bh. III.ix.28.7).

More importantly, contra numerous claims for jīvan-mukti, Śaṅkara states that only “absolute separation from the body amounts to final liberation” (śarīra viyogo hi mokṣa ātyantikaḥ) (ibid.). Thus, Śaṅkara’s acceptance of jīvan-mukti appears to Nelson (1996: 18) as “not entirely wholehearted”. And it may therefore appear that mokṣa “belongs to Ātman, not to embodied existence” (Koller, 1997: 289). The problem with this assessment, though, is that, if Śaṅkara wished to promote “post-body liberation” (videha-mukti), then there are passages in the Upaniṣads that lend themselves to it, but Śaṅkara does not interpret them that way. For example, the Chāndogya’s “This is brahman. After departing from here after death, I shall become that” (etad brahmaitam itaḥ pretyāḥbhisambhavitāṁśi), which seems a classic case for videha-mukti, is taken by Śaṅkara to refer to a qualified (saguṇa) objective form of brahman, not the ultimate nirguṇa-brahman (Ch.U.Bh. III.xiv.4). Better then to see Śaṅkara as being left in a similar situation to the early Buddhists who devised the notion of two types of nirvāṇa, i.e. “with remainder” (sopādhiśeṣa), and “without remainder” (anupādhiśeṣa) of the aggregates. Whilst physically embodied, the jīvan-mukta can still be said to be an “immortal” (amṛitatva), in the sense that he has conquered death (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2) and has, as it were, become “unembodied” (aśarīram) (Ch.U.Bh. VIII.xii.1). This makes sense when we realise that Śaṅkara defines embodiment in terms of the mistaken cognition (mithyā-jñānaṁ) which

---

65 Hacker argues here for a development in Śaṅkara’s thought (in Halbfass, 1995: 108-115). He may be correct. However, I argue that bliss is necessary as a motivator towards renunciation, but its notion is to be ultimately dropped. In other words, it suits the ascetic discourse, but not the transcendental discourse. Where Hacker sees chronological development, I see a “both/and” model. Naturally, as already noted, I also accept that there is a Śaṅkara at t₁, a Śaṅkara at t₂, etc.; but not all his “inconsistencies” need to be ironed out in this way.

identifies self with the body (B.S.Bh. I.i.4), and then defines bodilessness in terms of liberation (mokṣākyasyaśarīratvasya) (ibid.). The bodiless state is thus said to be eternal (nitya) and inherent (svābhāvikatvā) in the Self (ibid.), as is immortality (Ken.U.Bh. 2.4). As Kuznetsova (2007) points out, in Vedānta, liberation becomes the new immortality, a “meta-ritual state” (p35) that usurps the privileged position of Vedic ritual sacrifice.

There is therefore another sense in which the brahman-knower can be said to be unembodied and/or immortal, for the Samnyāsa Upaniṣads speak of renunciation itself as the “ritual death of the renouncer” (Olivelle, 1992: 89). Thus, Dumont (1980) speaks of the renouncer as being “dead to the social world” (p184). Likewise, the renouncing bodhisattva is said by Śāntideva to have “already died to the world” (pūrvam eva mṛto loke) (BCA. 8.36b). However, the jīvan-mukta cannot claim to have complete liberation; that which the Buddhists would call ‘parinirvāṇa’ and Śaṅkara calls ‘mokṣa ātyantikaḥ’ (Br.U.Bh. III.ix.28.7), for that would require actual dis-embodiment.67

What we can tentatively conclude here is that, in order to promote the celibate life over the householder’s life, Śaṅkara is willing to promote the notion of the pleasure that one derives from absorption in brahman. However, in order to save his non-dual interpretation of scripture he is willing to give up this notion of this superior pleasure. Furthermore, he is even willing to give up the notion of the ultimate liberation of the

67 Śaṅkara attacks the Buddhist’s non-self thesis on the grounds that it leads to the absurd conclusion (anupapattiḥ) that the fruit (phala) of liberation belongs to no subject (āśraya) whatsoever (Br.U.Bh. IV.iii.7). But clearly, as Rāmānuja points out (see Thibaut, 1904: 58), Śaṅkara is open to the very same critique. I will not follow up this issue here for four reasons: 1) Śaṅkara’s critique affects the Śrāvaka concept of nirvāṇa more than Śāntideva’s, 2) all the Buddhist need say is that elimination of duḥkha has intrinsic value in itself, 3) I read both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara as offering such a negative evaluation of existence, and 4) my interest lies in ethical actions, not eschatology. For a critical eschatological analysis of this debate, see Perrett (1985).
jīvan-mukta, advancing instead a doctrine of videha-mukti (post-body liberation). The teacher thus seems to be one waiting for final liberation. This shows that when Śaṅkara shifts domains, from “ascetic” discourse to metaphysics, the latter sublates the former. The teacher he is left with is thus a partially-liberated one (e.g. P.U.Bh., intro), who we may imagine to be alternating between dualistic and non-dualistic modes of consciousness.

Thus, we have an example of how Advaita tends to “switch back and forth” between ultimate and relative perspectives of the jīvan-mukta’s behaviour (Potter, 1981: 34). Moreover, in order to save his fundamental Advaita doctrine of non-difference, Śaṅkara is willing to give up the pramāṇa of testimonial authority (śabda), even that of the Vedic scripture (śruti), which he is supposedly defending. In fact, he is even willing to claim that the “Vedas contain contradictory statements” (virūddhā śruti vākyā) (Br.U.Bh. III.ix.28.7). Like renunciation, scripture is merely a means to liberation, not liberation itself. In the final analysis, even scripture needs to be transcended, and ultimately speaking, it is but another aspect of conventional reality. This may have been a lesson he learnt early on. Hence:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{yaḥ padārthaḥ śāstrādir vidyate, sa kalpita saṃvṛtyā | kalpitā ca sā paramārtha pratipatty upāyatvena saṃvṛtiś ca sā tayā yo 'sti paramārthena, nāsty asau na vidyate |}
\end{align*}
\]

The existence of such objects as scripture, etc. is but a conceptual convention. And this conventional reality is imagined as a means of attaining the ultimate reality; but anything that so exists has no real existence from the side of ultimate truth (G.K.Bh. 4.73).

What we see then, in Śaṅkara’s work, is not so much contradiction, but retraction. Some of these retractions are due to the shift from conventional to ultimate truth, and might be more rightly called sublation. But others are due to an over-willingness to explain everything in absolute terms. Thus, all action is to be given up, rather than
just ritual action, and all karma is burnt up by knowledge, rather than just some of it.\textsuperscript{68} The brahma-vid is over-painted, as it were, to match the perfect image of brahman. But when Śaṅkara looks back at the world, he sees that he needs karma in order to have a body at all. He sees that the antics of the Upaniṣadic brahman-knowers fail to live up to the perfection of the absolute. Yet, the tradition’s need for a teacher’s liberating guidance, rather than the Lord’s grace, forces Śaṅkara into a situation where an embodied knower is necessary.

Śaṅkara-the-exegete is also trapped by conflicting statements, such as the Bhagavad Gītā’s “The fire of knowledge reduces all karma to ashes” (jñāna-agniḥ sarva karmāṇi bhasmasāt kurūte) (4.37)\textsuperscript{69} and “the knowers, those who see true reality, will impart that knowledge” (upadeksyanti te jñānaṁ jñānīnaṁ tattva darśinah) (4.34). And so Śaṅkara is left having to explain how the knower survives at all in order to teach.\textsuperscript{70} He does this by shifting to the Chāndogya Upaniṣad (VI.xiv.2), which speaks of a “delay” (ciram) before final liberation, and the Brahma Sūtra (IV.i.15 & 19), which, on Śaṅkara’s reading, explains this delay in terms of types of karma, some being destroyed, some not. And from here, Śaṅkara develops his thesis of latent tendencies (saṃskarā/vāsanā) and residual (prārabdha) karma (see Chapter 6). He must either give up the knower-cum-teacher, or he must give up jīvan-mukti. Yet he appears to opt for a middle ground, a teacher who flickers between absorption into thusness (tattva) and conventional modes of being. This also amounts to a retraction of the view that action (karma) and knowledge (jñāna) are contradictory, for the teacher must act (see Chapter 6.2). And so, by observing these major retractions, we

\textsuperscript{68} For an examination of “weak” versus “strong” subordination in Śaṅkara, see Ram-Prasad (2007).

\textsuperscript{69} The Muṇḍaka Upaniṣad (II.ii.8) similarly reads: “One’s karma dissolves” (kṣīyante cāsyā karmāṇi).

\textsuperscript{70} See V.C. (462-463)
can gain an insight into that which Śaṅkara will let go of, that which he will fight for, and finally, his overall both/and position.

The only way of doing this is through cross-textual analysis. For example, in the *B.S.Bh*, just prior to admitting that ignorance continues even after knowledge, Śaṅkara uses the *Chāndogya* (VI.xiv.2) to prove that true and final liberation only comes after death (*B.S.Bh.* IV.i.15). Oddly enough, in the *Ch.U.Bh* itself (VI.xiv.2), while drawing on the distinction between the two types of karma, Śaṅkara makes no such denial of jīvan-mukti, but speaks of prārabdha-karma being destroyed by experience. It thus seems that in the *B.S.Bh* he is more concerned with saving the concept of mukti than jīvan-mukti specifically, even though he takes the *Brahma Sūtra* itself to be speaking of jīvan-mukti, when he interprets the phrase “even of this world” (*āpi aihika*) as referring to living-liberation (*B.S.Bh* III.iv.51).

Another example is offered by the question of celibacy. Even though Śaṅkara is elsewhere insistent on celibacy as essential to liberation, when the text itself is found to be speaking of finding a wife and having children (e.g. *T.U.* I.xi.1), Śaṅkara accepts it. Furthermore, while claiming that a brahma-vid has no desire for women and sons, he accepts Uddālaka of the *Chāndogya Upaniṣad* and Yājñavalkya71, the hero of the *Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad* as ideal teachers, even though the former teaches the truth of brahman to his own son, while the latter has not one, but two wives. To reiterate, while Śaṅkara’s ideal teacher is a celibate monk, most of his Upaniṣadic role models are in fact householders, but he is willing to accept this in order to promote the Upaniṣads and his non-dual interpretation.

---

71 Yājñavalkya has been called the “first exponent of Advaita Vedānta” (Roodurmun, 2002: 10).
However, as noted in Chapter 2, flickering consciousness, or temporary lapses, is one means of interpreting Śaṅkara’s way of allowing for the behaviour of the enlightened householders. Seen in this light, it need not contradict Yājñavalkya’s own claim that a knower of Self gives up the desire for sons, wealth and other worlds, and thus takes up the life of a mendicant (Br.U. III.v.1). Certainly, it is as a realised mendicant that Śaṅkara salutes him (B.S.Bh. III.iv.9). The question would then be one of delay (cf. Ch.U. VI.xiv.1) and may fit either the life-stages or the life-choices model. Marcaurelle (2000) suggests that Śaṅkara believed that the householder, once enlightened, would abandon his life-style “spontaneously” (p138). Nevertheless, there is no reason why Śaṅkara’s usage of the phrase “arthasiddham” (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1), which Marcaurelle (2000: 139) translates as “follows naturally”, could not also imply a certain delay. As Marcaurelle himself points out, Śaṅkara’s student, Sureśvara (9th C) suggests that Yājñavalkya only became fully liberated “after taking up the monastic mode of living” (p174).72

The notion that an enlightened householder must spontaneously renounce is also found in Theravāda Buddhism in the form of the claim that a lay person who attains arhatship is obliged to ordain that very day, or else he will die (Mīl. 264-266). And perhaps Śaṅkara would accept that the “lofty nature of this state cannot be expressed in a lay context” (Harvey, 2000: 92). Whether liberation is possible with or without physical renunciation, a subject on which both Śaṅkara and (his pupil) Sureśvara were truly ambiguous (Marcaurelle, 2000: 174), the bottom line is that they both would

72 Vidyāraṇya, in his Jīvanmuktī Viveka (73), made a distinction between a brahma-vid and a jīvan-mukta, seeing Yājñavalkya (see Br.U.) as qualified for the first but not the second category, because he was morally flawed. Only after becoming a renouncer did he became a jīvan-mukta (see Fort, 1998: 107). For Śaṅkara’s views on Yājñavalkya, see Br.U.Bh. (III.i.2 & III.ix.26).
have liked the scriptures to have unanimously and categorically stated that physical renunciation was a prerequisite of liberating knowledge.73

None of this need affect Śaṅkara’s main social claim that a knower of brahman is to give up ritual action, this being the principal use of the term “samnyāsa” (Olivelle, 1992: 59). And Marcaurelle (2000) is surely correct in his emphasis on the “inner” renunciation of doership as the key to understanding Śaṅkara’s metaphysical take on renunciation. He also seems correct in indicating two types of renunciation, one for the enlightened and one for the seeker (p185). Perhaps, then, when Śaṅkara talks of “renunciation of all actions prior to steadfastness in knowledge” (sarva karma saṃnyāsa pūrvikā jñāna-niṣṭa) (Bh.G.Bh. 18.66), he is talking about a potential deepening of the knowledge of Self (see Chapter 4.3).

Let us turn to the Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad (IV.iv.22) and see how Śaṅkara deals with its famous statement on renunciation. The text says, “Desiring the world [of the self] alone, those renouncers renounce” (etam eva pravrājino lokam icchantaḥ pravrājanti). This seems rather circular, a problem which has haunted many translators.74 However, Śaṅkara does not take this as a description, but as a prescription. He thus claims that, “this [sentence] is an injunction” (eṣa vidhiḥ) (Br.U.Bh. IV.iv.22). Śaṅkara takes the meaning to be, “Therefore, desiring the world of the self, those who are disposed to renunciation [should] renounce” (tasmād

73 Sarvajñātman, adopted the notion of “unseen” (apūrva) potency, contending that if someone gained liberating knowledge in this life before they had physically renounced (e.g. Janaka), then they must have renounced in a past life (Marcaurelle, 2000: 176-177). Śaṅkara also uses this argument with regard to Śūdras (see note 211 on p328), for whom knowledge may dawn in this life as a result of “tendencies acquired in a past life” (pūrva kṛta sanskāra) (B.S.Bh. I.iii.38) (see Chapter 7).

ātmānaṃ lokam icchantah pravrajanti pravrajeyukh).

This rids the text of its circularity. Taber (1983) therefore reads Śaṅkara as applying the passage to those who have “already, to a certain degree, achieved self-knowledge” (p15). In other words, Śaṅkara is admitting the existence of partial knowers, those who appear qualified to take the next leap into external renunciation. Taber thus reads this back into the original passage, translating it as, “Aspiring to that world [of the self] alone, those who are disposed to renunciation renounce” (ibid.). Again, this rids the original passage of its circularity. Comparing Śaṅkara’s historical situation with Śāntideva’s, we see the latter (in BCA Chapter 8) attempting to establish or deepen inner renunciation in those who (in the majority) had already formally renounced. Śaṅkara, however, despite the fact that the notion of an ascetic life had been “gaining ground” in the Vedic literature (Lipner, 2010: 54), was more focused on establishing formal renunciation in Vedānta.

Thus, Śaṅkara’s claim for a life of celibacy remains more controversial than his stance on renunciation, for he is turning it into an injunction. Olivelle (1992: 72) saw it as a “key element in renunciation”, and Śaṅkara certainly took it to be an aid to knowledge (T.U.Bh. I.xi.2-4). If the “life-style of the renouncer enables us to see a tension between the cultural values of celibacy and procreation” (Olson, 1997: 62), then Śaṅkara’s insistence on celibacy adds a further tension between Advaita Vedānta and the Upaniṣads they claim to represent, just as Śāntideva’s insistence on celibacy puts him at tension with much of the Mahāyāna movement. Yet the ambiguity in the Upaniṣads allows Olivelle (1992) to insist that the “householder is replaced by the celibate ascetic as the new religious ideal” (p43), while giving room for scholars like

Mādhavānanda (trans., p527) therefore seems correct in adding “i.e. should renounce” to the Bhāṣya.
Coward (2008) to claim that “only when the responsibilities and joys of the student and householder stages have been fully enjoyed” does one “seek to be freed from a worldly and sensuous life” (pp128-129). Lipner (2010: 208) has noted the tension in these conflicting depictions, a tension Doniger (2010: 194) memorably describes as one of violent extremes of addiction versus abstinence. As for Śaṅkara’s commentaries, they clearly tend to side with Olivelle rather than Coward, with abstinence over addiction.

With respect to the system of stages, Śaṅkara (selectively) quotes the Jābāla Upaniṣad’s suggestion that a man “may even renounce directly from the stage of studentship” (brahmaṇcaryād eva pravrajat) (Jā.U. 4; B.S.Bh. III.iv.17). However, having selected only this possibility out of a whole list of alternatives, Śaṅkara essentially turns the “may” into a “should”, calling this renunciation an injunction (vidhānaṃ) (B.S.Bh. III.iv.18). Nevertheless, Śaṅkara does go on to quote the passage in full (III.iv.20), where he uses the text to prove the authenticity of the life of the celibate (urdhvaretaḥ). The text now loses its imperative tone and Śaṅkara appears more cautious, which shows how Śaṅkara still felt that he needed to ‘sell’ celibacy as an alternative lifestyle to the Brahmīn orthodoxy. And yet, with respect to the status of life’s joys and sorrows, Ingalls (1954) notes how, by the time of Śaṅkara, “the Vedānta had left its early joyous acceptance of the whole of life” (p306), with the pessimism of Buddhism having seeped into Vedānta, which now saw the world as a “sorry place” to be (ibid.). Thus it is that Śaṅkara presents a rather extreme world-renouncing view of Vedānta.

76 Olivelle could turn to the Dharma-Sūtras, or to the Jābāla Upaniṣad (4), while Coward could turn to the equally authoritative, Manu-Smṛti, or the Kathāśruti Upaniṣad (II.3).

77 Hence compare Gambhirānanda’s translation of the B.S.Bh. quote (pp770 & 772) with Olivelle’s (1992: 143) translation of the original Jābāla Upaniṣad.
Yet there remained a tangible tension in Śaṅkara’s work, an exegetic tension which comes from trying to apologise for the worldly actions of the protagonists of the Upaniṣads whilst putting forward his personal ascetic ideal. Unlike Śāntideva (Ś.S. 167), Śaṅkara would not call on the theory of skilful-means (upāya-kauśalya) to explain these actions. Rather, he had to retract the notion of complete enlightenment, replacing it with the notion of residual (prārabdha) karma (B.S.Bh. III.iii.32) (see Chapter 6). Śaṅkara could find no external excuse for one who falls from celibacy (III.iv.43). For Śaṅkara, unlike Śāntideva (Ś.S. 168), it is the protagonist who acts wrongly, not we who see him wrongly. He here shows himself to be more realistic than Śāntideva, which maps onto the “realistic thrust” (Black, 2008: 21) of the Upaniṣads.

Turning to Śaṅkara’s argument for renunciation of ritual action, we see that it relies on the notion of non-difference (abheda) of self (jīvātman) and Self (brahman). Ritual assumes that one is a Brahmin, that is, a member of a caste. This assumes difference in nature from other castes. But one who is desirous of liberation (mumukṣu) should not associate one’s self with caste (U.S. Prose, 1.10-15). How could there be castes when all is the nature of the single Self (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1)? Moreover, ritual assumes that you are down here and the gods are up there; but “you are that” (Ch.U. VI.viii.7ff), and are thus, non-different (a-bheda). The subject-object dichotomy,  

78 Śāntideva here relies on the authority of the Upāyakauśalya Sūtra.

79 The V.C. alternates between these possibilities. For example, contrast verses 442 and 548. The former tells us that a knower who is “outward looking” (bahir mukhaḥ) may still get caught by the “sense world” (samsrī). The latter tells us that “ignorant people see [the knower’s] body-likeness” (paśyanti deha-van mūḍha) even though he is actually wholly free of it (deha vimuktam). His body is “mere appearance” (abhāsa). Cf. 413, where abhāsa = chāya (shadow). Also compare the Upāyakauśalya Sūtra and the Vimalakīrti-Nirdeśa Sūtra on the bodhisattva’s apparent lifestyle.

necessary for ritual, premised as it is on the distinction between the act and the actor, thus falls apart. Furthermore, ritual has as one of its goals the going from here to a divine realm in the after-life. But if you (as pure consciousness) are of the same nature as brahman right now, right here, then where would one need or wish to go? In the final analysis, it is knowledge of reality that leads to liberation, not correct ritual action. The concept of going to heavenly realms must be replaced by the concept of attaining knowledge of brahman. Thus, “liberation is not a movement or activity” (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 213), and brahman (as absolute consciousness) is to be reached epistemically (see Chapter 5.1). So a knower cannot sincerely take part in ritual, he cannot be a Brahmin householder with ritual duties (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1). Others may, however, continue to indulge in ritual, for they still see difference (see Chapter 4.3).

Therefore, we see how the Two Truths may act as a hermeneutical key to Śaṅkara’s philosophy. There is the ultimate goal of liberation and there are the conventional social playing grounds. Goals related to a personal God, or to heavens, whilst being beyond mundane goals such as wealth and progeny, are still to be included in the conventional (vyāvahārika) category. Knowledge is the only means to true liberation (see Chapter 5.1) and the ultimate statements of the Upaniṣads are the only means to such “saving” (Deutsch, 1973: 47) knowledge. Thus Śaṅkara states that “brahman is known from scripture alone” (brahmaṇaḥ śāstra pramāṇakatvam) (B.S.Bh. I.i.4). An ultimate Upaniṣadic statement is thus taken to be one that points to the non-duality of the self and brahman. Therefore, any statement which seems to demand the need for ritual action or meditation on a symbol, and thus assumes a duality of subject and object, is taken to be a conventional statement. Vedic listeners are thus divided into: 1) those Brahmins who are ready for ultimate statements, 2) those who are merely ready for meditation, and 3) those who are simply at the stage of ritual action. The
question of doing one’s own duty (sva-dharma) will be analysed in Chapter 4.3, with reference to the Gītā Bhāṣya. For now, let us simply highlight how this gradualist method might work. Thus, for example, Śaṅkara, accepting (and extending) Mīmāṃsā hermeneutical criteria, writes:

\[
sati ca vidhi paratve yathā svargādī kāmasyāgnihirotrādī sādhanam
vidhiyata, evam amṛtatva kāmasya brahma-jñānaṃ vidhiyata iti
yuktam |
\]

Having granted that the Vedic sentences are intended as injunctions, it stands to reason that, just as such means as the ‘agnihotra’ sacrifice are enjoined for one desiring heavens, so the knowledge of brahman is enjoined for one who longs for immortality (B.S.Bh. I.i.4).

In dealing with the quite lengthy Chāndogya Upaniṣad, Śaṅkara takes it as presenting a gradualist approach to truth, which means that non-dual (advaita) revelations take precedence over dualistic (dvaita) revelations (e.g. see Ch.U.Bh., intro & III.xiv.4). In the middle are those meditations on symbols, recitations, etc. And as we noted in Chapter 2, these may give one a “flash” (avabhāsaka) of reality, but they do not present total absorption in brahman. This technique allows Śaṅkara to interpret the text on the lines of ultimate and non-ultimate teachings. He returns to this gradualism at the end of Chapter VI, where he states that it is not instinctive to see oneself as a soul (jīva) apart from the body (like non-Advaita Brahmanical Schools), never mind to see oneself as pure consciousness (ātman) (as the Advaitins do). That is, to think that “I am an individuated soul, separate [from the body and mind]” (ahaṃ jīvaḥ kartā) is not a “naturally held view of beings” (sva-bhāvataḥ prāṇinaṃ vijñānā
darśanā) (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xvi.3). And so, people need to be led to the truth of selfhood in stages, from the self as body doctrine (deha atma vāda) to self as soul (i.e. Dvaita) to self as brahman (i.e. Advaita) (ibid.).

Śaṅkara, therefore, seems to have set

\[81\] Cf. the V.C. (160).
himself the task of systematizing the Upaniṣads, and the Two Truths and the notion of gradual enlightenment are fundamental to his methodology.

However, just as with the so-called “Sudden Schools” of Buddhism, Śaṅkara distinguishes those who need to be led gradually to the truth from those (rare) sharp pupils (nipuṇamatīnāṃ), who can grasp it at once. Of the former, he says:

\[\text{yeśāmētāu padārthau ajñāna samśaya viparyaya pratibaddhau, teśām “tat tvam asi” ity etad vākyam svārthe pramām notpādayitum śaknoti, padārtha jñāna pūrvakatvādvyākārthasya, ity etāh tānpratyeṣṭavyaḥ padārtha viveka prayojanah śāstra yukty abhyāsaḥ ... tatra kramavati pratipattib }\]

The phrase “you are that” cannot produce a sudden realisation of its true meaning in those people to whom [self and brahman] remain obstructed by ignorance, doubt and confusion (for the meaning of a phrase is dependent upon the meaning of the words). For such people, it is necessary to resort repeatedly to the study of scripture. ... In this sense, gradualism is admitted (B.S.Bh. IV.i.2).

Of the latter (even against the opponent’s objection that it is impossible to overcome the “world’s misery” (duḥkhatva) so quickly), he writes:

\[\text{yeśāṃ punar nipuṇamatīnāṃ nājñāna samśaya viparyaya lakṣanah padārtha viṣayah pratibāṃdho 'sti, te śaknuvanti sakṛd uktam eva “tat tvam asi” vākyārtham anuvitum iti tānpratī avṛty ānarthhayāṃśatma eva | sakṛd utpānnaiva hy ātma pratipattir avidyāṃ nivartayatīti, nātra kaścid api krama 'bhupagamyate}\]

For those of sharp intellect, however, who have no obstructions like ignorance, doubt and confusion, with regard to subject matter, they can realise the meaning of “you are that” from the very first utterance. So a repetition in their case is pointless. For the ascertainment of the

82 See Ruegg (1989b), Gregory (1987) and van Schaik (2004) for discussions of sudden/gradual enlightenment in Indian, Chinese and Tibetan Buddhism respectively.

83 Again, given that, for Śaṅkara, this sudden grasping of truth is not necessarily a function of the intellect, we should not assume that the “nipuṇamatīnāṃ” map onto, say, Berkeley’s “those of quick apprehension” (Principles, 1.34).
Self is capable of removing ignorance in one single instant, and no stages need be admitted in this case (ibid.).

Hence, Śaṅkara, like Śāntideva, accepts that the task of removing ignorance, doubt and confusion is, for most people, a gradual step-by-step assent. And again, as with the Madhyamaka, much of the ignorance and confusion, etc. is taken up by the notion of māyā, which is usually translated as “illusion”. Now, given that we have already traced both Śaṅkara’s use of the Two-Truths doctrine and the notion of māyā to Gauḍapāda’s Māṇḍūkya kārikā, and given the consensus that Gauḍapāda took this from the Madhyamaka School, we might reasonably trace much of Śaṅkara’s language on māyā to Nāgārjuna’s Mūlamadhyamakakārikā. Here, the phrase “as an illusion, a dream” (yathā māyā yathā svapna) is used to describe the concepts of arising, enduring and ceasing (MMK. 7.34). Again, the phrase “like a mirage or a dream” (marīci-svapna saṃnībhāḥ) occurs with regard to afflictions, actions, bodies, agents and karmic fruits (17.33), along with the five senses and all existents (23.8). We might also trace these similes back to the “Diamond” Sūtra’s list of nine, which includes a dream (svapnaḥ), a bubble (budbudam), an eye defect (timiraṃ), magical illusions (māyā), etc (Vajracchedikā, 32). In fact, we might go even further back and trace the notion to the Pāli Canon (S.N.III.140-142), where the list of similes also includes foam (pheṇa), and the plantain tree (kadali). We will see that Śaṅkara adopts these very same similes throughout his works.

84 Vidyāraṇya, in his Jīvanmuktī Viveka (73) adopts the view that enlightenment which arises from “merely hearing” (aśravaṇa mātreṇa) scripture, is due to virtues accumulated in the past (purva puṇya puṇija paripakeṇa). On this, Śāntideva would agree. Of course, Śaṅkara’s argument with regard to Śūdras (see note 73 on p114) amounts to the same thing. In other words, “sudden” enlightenment in Advaita and Madhyamaka could be the result of a million lifetimes of hard work. Cf. the V.C. (2) and the Gītā (7.19). On the split between the Vivaraṇa School and the Bhāmatī School on the means to liberation, see Ram-Prasad (2001a: 197ff) and Roodurmun (2002: 209ff).

85 For a critique of this translation, see O’Neil (1980: 1ff).
Turning to the Vedic literature, the term ‘māyā’ (pre-Śaṅkara) had been used in a variety of ways, the enquiry into which would be a major study in itself.\textsuperscript{86} Dasgupta (1975) thus states that Śaṅkara “never tries to prove that the world is māyā, but accepts it as indisputable” (Vol.I: 435). Yet we can distinguish two strands of māyā-talk in Śaṅkara’s work, one cosmological and the other epistemological. Now Hamilton (2001: 130) has oddly claimed that Śaṅkara never used the term ‘māyā’, preferring the term ‘avidyā’. Here, she seems to want to dismiss the cosmological, whilst covering all the epistemological ground through the term ‘avidyā’. Not only is this false, but Hacker actually selected ‘māyā’ (along with ‘avidyā’, ‘nāmarūpa’ & ‘īśvara’) as one of the tell-tale signs that a text was authentically ascribable to Śaṅkara (in Halbfass, 1995: 57-100).

By defining Śaṅkara as the author of the \textit{B.S.Bh}, Hacker’s method was to take this text, the “main pillar of Advaita Vedānta” (Roodurmun, 2002: 9), as the standard text against which all others should be checked. Now, in one passage of this commentary, Śaṅkara claims that absolute consciousness (\textit{vijñāna dhātu}) may appear diversely due to either \textit{avidyā} or \textit{māyā} (B.S.Bh. I.iii.19). In another, Śaṅkara states that, just like a magician (\textit{māyāvin}) who does not believe his own illusions to be real, so \textit{brahman} is unaffected by this “cyclic world of māyā” (\textit{samsāra māyayā}) (B.S.Bh. II.i.9). He then quotes the following verse from Gauḍapāda’s \textit{Kārika} (1.16):

\begin{quote}
\textit{anādi māyayā supto yadā jīvaḥ prabudhyate | ajam anidram asvapnam advaitaṃ budhyate tadā}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
When an individual sleeping under the influence of beginningless \textit{māyā} is awakened, he then realizes the birthless, sleepless, dreamless non-dual [i.e. \textit{turīya}]\textsuperscript{87} (B.S.Bh. II.i.9).
\end{quote}

\textsuperscript{86} Again, see O’Neil (1980).
\textsuperscript{87} See note 63 on p106.
Moreover, Śaṅkara states that “the teacher [i.e. Gauḍapāda] was well-versed in the traditional view of Vedānta” (*vedāntarthasampradāyahācāryaiḥ*) (ibid.), leaving us in no doubt about his loyalty. So not only did Śaṅkara adopt the word ‘māyā’, he claims the doctrine to be traditional (*sampradāya*). Indeed, the theory played a pivotal role in Śaṅkara’s system.

Our task then is to explain what Śaṅkara meant by ‘māyā’. The problem, as just noted, is that there seem to be two distinct meanings of ‘māyā’ in his work. One type of māyā-talk is that found particularly in the *Gītā Bhāṣya*. It refers to a kind of creative power which emanates from Kṛṣṇa-as-Viṣṇu (Bh.G.Bh. 7.13). It is made up of the three attributes (*tribhir-guṇa*) of being, and is sometimes used synonymously with ‘prakṛti’. When conceived negatively, mankind are said to be deluded (*mohita māya*) by māyā (Bh.G.Bh. 7.13-15). Kṛṣṇa is said to “move” (*bhrāmayan*) beings “through māyā” (*māyayā*) (Bh.G. 18.61), to which Śaṅkara adds, “through concealment” (*chadmanā*) (Bh.G.Bh. 18.61). For the purposes of this comparative thesis, I propose to bracket this cosmological notion of māyā, focussing on the epistemological māyā (*=avidyā*), the version most adopted in his major works.

Now, some scholars (Otto 1957: 93; Torwesten, 1991: 123) claim that, through the notion of māyā, Śaṅkara tried to explain the world away. However, Śaṅkara actually

---

88 In stark contrast to Śaṅkara, Gauḍapāda (c.7th century) never uses the term ‘avidyā’, yet the term ‘māyā’ appears in his *Kārikā* in over a dozen verses. Roodurmun (2002: 11) traces Śaṅkara’s use of the concealing nature of avidyā to the *Kaṭha Upaniṣad* (2.5).

89 This take on māyā is more typical of Rāmānuja and Madhva than of Śaṅkara (see Chari, 2005: 81).

90 The *Gītā* is a text least amenable to Śaṅkara’s usual Advaitin metaphysics. Thus, Otto (1957: 104) claimed that Śaṅkara “rather forces the text” into an Advaitin interpretation. And Suthren Hirst (2005) stated that Śaṅkara had to “add a layer of interpretation not present in the text” (p134).
uses the concept of māyā in an attempt to explain the world in a way that would cohere with Advaita metaphysics. The notion that the world is dream-like or illusion-like is not to suggest that it is not real, it is to highlight that what we take to be real is in fact just a “faint reflection of what is truly real” (Taber, 1983: 1). We see the world as if through a mirror. Yet, like Śāntideva, Śaṅkara is not saying that such reflections are totally non-existent. Thus, Śaṅkara writes that “An illusory image cannot exist without a substratum” (mithyā vikalpasya nirnimittatvānupapatteḥ) (Mā.U.Bh. 7). That substratum is brahman.

The individuated self (jīva) is said to be a mere reflection of the true Self (brahman).

This notion of “reflection” (chāyā) is brought out by a number of analogies, including the reflection of one’s face in a mirror (U.S. Metric, 12.6), the reflection of the sun in water (Ch.U.Bh. VI.iii.2), as well as the moon in water (B.S.Bh. III.ii.19). However, Śaṅkara’s three favourite analogies, which crop up throughout his works, are all to be found in the following verse:

\[
yathā svayaṃ prasāritayā māyayā māyāvī triṣvapi kālepu na sāṁsprśyate, avastutvāt, evaṃ paramātmāpi sāṁsāra māyayā na sāṁsprśyata iti | yathā ca svapnadvṛkṣaḥ evaṃ sukha sāṁsāra māyayā na sāṁsprśyate |
prabodhasampadaḥ āyāmanvāgataḥ |
evam avasthā trayaḥ sāksy ēkoh vyabhicārya vasthā trayaḥ
vyabhicārinā sāṁsprśyate | māyā-mātraṃ hy etat yat
paramātmanto ‘vasthā tṛayaḥ māyā-vibhāṣanaṃ rajjvā iva sarpādi bhāvenātī |
\]

As a magician is not himself affected at any time [past, present or future] by the magic he conjures up, it being unreal, so also the supreme Self is not affected by this cyclic world of māyā. As one who dreams is not affected by the illusion of dreaming, because that illusion does not persist in him during clear wakefulness, so also the one, unchanging witness of the three states is untouched by the three varying states. This appearance of the supreme Self in identity with the three states is mere māyā, as in the case of the rope appearing as a snake (B.S.Bh. II.i.9).
Thus, we have: 1) the illusion (māyā) created by the magician (māyāvin), 2) the dream (svapna) world, and 3) seeing a rope (rajju) as a snake (sarpa). What does Śaṅkara want us to understand from these examples? He wants us to see that although the world may seem manifold, everything is in fact grounded in brahman, their “inner-being” (antar-bhāvaḥ). This universe is ultimately reducible to “mere conscious being” (sac cin mātram) (U.S. Metric, 17.13). Now, when a magician creates an illusion, he knows it to be an illusion. Equally, when brahman-knowledge is gained, the manifold world of apparently individuated selves will be seen to be but one singular, non-dual (advaita) consciousness. The brahman-knower is not fooled by the appearance of the world. Its illusory manifestations simply “vanish away like apparitions in a dream” (svapna prapañca vat pravilīyate) (B.S.Bh. III.ii.21).

When one is dreaming, one may imagine beings and objects to be in certain odd spatial relationships to each other. However, when one awakens, these visions are sublated (bādha) by the awakened mind which knows the dream content to be false (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1). In one sense, we might say that, “dreams are false and illusory whereas waking experience is veridical, having an external cause” (King, 1995: 171). But we should not forget that this fact is “not grasped by one while dreaming” (Ram-Prasad, 2002: 81). Also, for Advaita, cognitions are “considered innocent until proven guilty” (Deutsch, 1973: 87), i.e. they are prima facie justified.91 Dreams are real to the dreamer, and that experience, though illusory, is valid until later contradicted.

Therefore, Śaṅkara draws on this dream analogy to make the point that, just as a man who awakens from a dream knows it to be illusory, so a man who awakens to brahman-knowledge knows this world of multiplicity to be illusory. True, if dreams

---

91 Cf. Lehrer’s (2000: 71ff) comments on the “fallible foundationalism” of Thomas Reid.
are ultimately false, then so is normal waking experience, but dreams are not “false”, as such, to the dreamer. The world is *deceptive*, but not false. After seeing through this deception, the old relationships he had with people, gods, rituals, desirable objects, etc. no longer apply to the brahman-knower. In other words, Śaṅkara is not trying to deny the external reality of the world, but wants us to see the potential for its transcendence.

Third, we come to the famous Indian ‘snake/rope’ analogy. A person sees a coiled object in the corner of a dark room and imagines it to be a snake. As they get closer, they realise it is only a rope. Thus, perception can be sublated by a second perception. Just so, when a man realises brahman-consciousness, his old view of the world is removed. Of course, his old perception was not entirely false, for there was in fact a rope there giving rise to the mistaken cognition of a snake. As such, the views of those yet to know brahman are provisionally true, merely awaiting sublation. In this sense, Śaṅkara’s epistemology is ‘realistic’ in that it “posits that every cognition points to an objective referent” (Grimes, 1991: 292). This epistemic ‘realism’ is particularly brought out in his attack on the Mahāyāna Buddhists, and especially the Yogācāra (see Chapter 4.1). Up until the ultimate Self is realised, objects are objects, and individuals are individuals. That, along with *karma*, is what makes rebirth and social interaction possible. That is why traditional ethics must remain in place (see Chapter 4.3). Śaṅkara wants to posit a transcendence of ritual, not a rejection of it. He writes:

\[ \text{anupamardita bheda pratyayavat purūsa viṣaye prāmāṇyopapateḥ svapnādi pratyaya iva prāk prabodhāt} \]

It is reasonable that their validity will continue with regard to a person who has not gotten rid of the conviction of separation; as in the case of dream experiences, etc. (which remain valid) before one awakens (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1).
Not only is it reasonable, it is necessary, because negative *karma* accrues to those who do not do their duty:

\[
\text{bheda pratayayavān anupamardita bheda buddhir vidyayā yaḥ, sa karmany adhikṛta}
\]

The obligation remains for those whose conviction of separation has not been destroyed by knowledge (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1).

Thus, Śaṅkara’s goal is to “assimilate ... ritual into his grand metaphysical project” (Ram-Prasad, 2007: 116). In this grand scheme, God may shape and maintain the world, and even guide those of inferior wisdom, but he has very little to offer those sharp-minded ones who can grasp the true (Advaitic) meaning of the Vedas. In terms of Śaṅkara’s central project of gnoseological liberation, God plays no real part. Nor can he play any part; for Īśvara is defined by Śaṅkara as *brahman* limited by *avidyā* (B.S.Bh. II.i.14). Bondage is said to be a result of the play (*līlā*) of Īśvara (B.S. II.i.33) in combination with our own lack of insight. While ritual action requires Īśvara’s presence, liberation, for Śaṅkara, is a gnoseological project in which there is no room for subject-object duality. That is why Śaṅkara adopts the term ‘*avidyā*’ much more frequently than ‘*māyā*’. Working ‘*māyā*’ into his preferred terms of name and form (*nāma-rūpa*) and nescience (*avidyā*), Śaṅkara states that God’s *māyā* is the cause of the “non-determinable” (*anirvacanīya*) reality or non-reality of name and form, and thus “God conforms to the limiting adjuncts of name and form created by nescience” (*evam avidyā kṛta nāma-rūpa upādhy anurodhīśvaro bhavati*) (B.S.Bh. II.i.14). There is little room here for a theistic soteriology. It would be yet another case of the blind leading the blind. Only an enlightened teacher can remove the “blindfold” (*abhinahanam*) (Ch.U. VI.xiv.1) from one’s eyes and help one grasp the truth (cf. Ka.U. 2.5-9).
Given that the world is illusion-like, and given that Īśvara is its primal cause, we may ask how the māyā-thesis affects Śaṅkara’s ethics. Matilal (2004) has claimed that the “pervasive view” amongst Western Scholars is to see Advaita as positing that “reality is only an illusion” (p34). He thus adds that it is the “general belief” that Advaita would use this māyā argument to solve the problem of evil (p41). However, Śaṅkara does not use it. Nor does he hold Īśvara at fault. Rather, in his passing remarks on the potential problem of Īśvara’s injustice (vaiṣamya) and cruelty (nairghṛṇya) (B.S. II.i.34), framed, by an opponent, as the problem of unequal distribution of suffering amongst beings (B.S.Bh. II.i.34), Śaṅkara blames the beings who have generated their own karma in past lives, and indeed in past world cycles, for “the transmigratory state has no beginning” (anāditvāt saṃsārasya) (B.S.Bh. II.i.35). Elsewhere, Śaṅkara suggests the wise student should reflect on rebirth thus:

sa yadi brūyāt - anyo 'ham śarīrāt | śarīrām tu jāyate mriyate, vayobhir adyate, śastraṅgnyādibhiṣ ca vināśyate, vṛddhyādibhiṣ ca prarūpyaṃ | tasmin ahaṃ svakṛta dharmādharma vaśāt pakṣī niḍam iva praviṣṭāḥ punaḥ puṇaḥ śarīravināśe dharmādharma vaśāt śarīrāntaraṃ yāsyāmi, pūrvanirūpavāśe pakṣiva niḍāntaram | evam evāham anādau saṃsāre devamanuṣbigasyaḥ nirayasthānenaḥ svakarmavasād upāttām upāttāṃ śarīram tyajan, navam navam cāṇyad upādādāno, ājanam maranā prabandha cakre ghaṭīvantravat svakarmāḥ bhṛmbhṛmāḥ kramenedam śarīram āśādyā samāśāra cakra bhramanāḥ asmān nirviṇṇo bhagavantam upasanno 'śmi samāśāra cakra bhramāna praśamāya | tasmān nitya evāhaṃ śarīrād anyah | śarīrany āgacchanta apagacchanti ca vāsāṃsīva puruṣasyetti || ... ācāryo brūyāt – sādhvavādīḥ, samyak paśyasi | kathāṃ mṛṣāvādīḥ, brāhmaṇa putro ’donvayo brahmačāry āsam, grhastha vā idānīm asmi paramahamsa-parivrād iti ||

If he says “I am different from the body. The body is born and dies, is eaten by birds, destroyed by weapons and fire, etc., subject to disease, etc. I have entered into this [body], like a bird its nest, on account of the merit and demerit of my own actions. Again and again as a result of merit and demerit, when the body is destroyed, I shall enter into different bodies, like a bird entering a different nest when the previous one is destroyed. Thus am I in this beginningless transmigratory existence, giving up old bodies and assuming new ones, in the realms of gods, men, animals and hells. On account of my own actions, I am
forced to rotate in the endless cycle of birth and death as if on a water-wheel. In the course of time I have obtained this body. I am sick of this cycle of transmigration and have come to you, Sir, in order to put an end to this cycle of transmigration. Therefore, I am eternal and other than the body. Bodies come and go, like the clothes of a person”… [Then] the teacher should say “You have spoken well, you see correctly. [So] why did you wrongly say ‘I am the son of a Brahmin, of such and such a family, I was a student (or householder) and now I am a wandering highest ascetic’.” (U.S. Prose, 1.12-13).

This student here accepts that he has been to blame for his own suffering due to his clinging to the body. And so, while Īśvara sees to it that all beings get the fruits they deserve, he did not create those beings ex nihilo and is thus not to blame.92 If this is so, then he is equally powerless in preventing their exit from the field of play. Those who overcome their karma (through knowledge) have no need to turn up for the next round of games (see Chapter 5.1).

Śaṅkara, the exegete, must continue to ground his thesis in the Upaniṣads themselves, but then the interpretation he gives is often under challenge from other schools of thought. It is therefore noticeable that Śaṅkara often marks a controversial interpretation with the insertion of an opponent’s doubts (pūrva pakṣa), which he then replies to. These exchanges are of great interest, for they not only highlight the integrity of the author, but also offer the reader the opportunity to enter into the midst of an ancient debate. At the other extreme are those passages for which he offers merely a philological repetition of terms. These “pseudo-silences” may also throw some light on his thoughts towards the scriptures. It will also be interesting to see how Śaṅkara deals with those aspects of the texts and his Hindu tradition which do not fit comfortably with his non-dual metaphysics and with his preferred ascetic mode of religious life.

92 Incidentally, Śaṅkara does say that a Creator God who did create the world ex nihilo would be to blame (B.S.Bh. II.i.35).
Yet, my intention is not to judge him, but to see what for him is an ultimate truth, to see how he argues for a hierarchical categorization of non-dual over dual, to see why he put so much emphasis on renunciation, and to see what he takes to be the correct behaviour of a brahma-vid.
3.2 Approaching Śāntideva

As with Śaṅkara, I prefer not to see Śāntideva as an innovator in the usual sense of the word. For one thing, he never saw himself as one. Though perhaps written as a typical counter to pride (Pelden, 2007: 36), Śāntideva introduces the BCA (1.2a) with the modest claim that he has “nothing novel whatsoever to say here” (na hi kimcid apūrvam atra vācyam). He begins the Compendium (Ś.S. 1.22) in a similar manner. Sweet (1977) thus concluded that Śāntideva was “essentially a transmitter and not an original philosophical thinker” (p15). Nevertheless, I wish to claim that there remains something quite unique about his work, especially the BCA. What I find most interesting in Śāntideva, just as we find in Śaṅkara, are the dramatic extremities of his expression, and the tension that this creates.

The tension arises through the equal need Śāntideva’s Mahāyāna tradition has placed on him for the two necessary virtues of wisdom and compassion. The tension between the cognitive and the affective is found throughout his work. It is as if he stands on a metaphysical tight-rope between two worlds, one of transcendent wisdom, the other of active compassion in a provisional world. By wisdom (prajñā), the Mahāyāna, and especially the Madhyamaka School, can be taken to mean the insight into emptiness (śūnyatā). This includes the emptiness of all personhood (pudgala śunyatā) and the emptiness of all experiential elements (sarva dharma śunyatā), both claimed by Śāntideva to be essential to perfect wisdom (Ś.S. 242). Wisdom (prajñā) has been defined by Prajñākaramati as: “The discriminative understanding of the reality of dependently-arisen phenomena just as they are” (yathāvasthitā pratītyasamutpanna vastutattva pravicaya) (BCA. Pañjikā, 344). This wisdom can be seen as a response to the so-called heretical view of permanent objects (satkāya drṣṭi)
which Śāntideva condemns (Ś.S. 242). Compassion (karuṇā, daya, kṛpā) can be taken to mean the will to lead all beings to liberation from suffering. As with Mill’s conception of the breadth of human sympathy (Util. V.20), the Mahāyāna Buddhist sees this as extending to all sentient beings.

Dayal (1970: 42-45) has made the claim that Śāntideva, in his stress on compassion, seems to ignore wisdom altogether. He says that the “later” period of the Mahāyāna sees a shift in emphasis from wisdom to compassion, pointing to a parallel shift from the cult of Mañjuśrī to that of Avalokiteśvara. Kinnard confirms that, in India, Avalokiteśvara became more “popular” than Mañjuśrī (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 82). Nevertheless, there are two difficulties with Dayal’s thesis. First, Śāntideva took Mañjuśrī as his patron deity (BCA. 10.51-58 & Ś.S. 365). Second, Dayal has placed too much weight on the word prajñā, whilst ignoring the fact that emptiness (śūnyatā) and no-self (anātman) are particular cases of the wisdom aspect. In fact, Paul Williams (1998a) has argued that Śāntideva takes the doctrine of non-substantiality (niḥsvabhāvatā) to such a limit that he might have destroyed the bodhisattva path. That, in my eyes, he does not destroy the path is due to the extraordinary emphasis he places on compassion, which allows him to compromise wisdom (see Chapter 6.1).

Here Dayal is quite correct in noting the heightened status that Śāntideva grants to compassion, but he is wrong to place too much faith in a single passage of the Compendium (Dayal, 1970: 42), where Śāntideva seems to advocate the notion that compassion includes all the other perfections (Ś.S. 286). For, in the same Compendium, we also find the statement, “All things, my Lord, are wisdom” (sarva dharmā bhagavan bodhi) (Ś.S. 257). And in the BCA, it is said that “It is for the sake of wisdom that the Buddha taught this entire collection” (imam parikaram sarvam 93

93 These are the two Great Bodhisattvas of Wisdom and Compassion, respectively.
prajñartham hi munir jagau) (BCA. 9.1a). The Compendium, in fact, sees wisdom and compassion as complementary. Thus, it says, “From action whose essence is emptiness and compassion, there is the purification of karmic fruit” (śūnyatā karunā garbhaceṣṭitāt punya śodhanam) (Ś.S. 270, Kārikā 21b). The Buddha is praised as “the possessor of unequalled wisdom” and the “most compassionate” (Ś.S. 319). Overall, Śāntideva places equal emphasis on compassionate activity and wisdom. Nevertheless, they are often found to be in dynamic tension.

A comment is due on two further aspects of Śāntideva’s heritage: 1) tantra, and 2) the three-body (tri-kāya) thesis. Now we can agree with Vaidya (1961) when he talks of Śāntideva representing an “advanced stage of Mahāyāna Buddhism” (p.viii), yet is there really a “slight tinge of Tāntrism” (ibid.) in his work? Sharma (1990) claims that Śāntideva studied both “sutra and tantra” (p. x). This is important to the present thesis for a tantric slant would most certainly affect Śāntideva’s views on asceticism and women. Now it would be to the advantage of Tibetans if they could claim Śāntideva as a Tantrika, and in fact they do (Gyatso, 1994: 368). However, even while claiming that the attribution of a number of Tantric texts to him is “credible”, the Padmakara Translation Group (1999: 179) state that “there is no hint of tantric teachings” in either the BCA or the Compendium. For this reason, Western scholars have been reluctant to grant tantric status to Śāntideva (Clayton, 2006: 33). In fact, it could be argued that his rhetoric on bodies (BCA. Chapter 8), especially women’s (see my Chapter 7) is particularly non-tantric. Indeed, Tribe even uses Śāntideva’s BCA as the example of a non-tantric attitude (in Williams, 2000a: 199 & 240). So even
though, in the 8th century, tantric approaches “dominated Buddhist practice in India” (Tribe, in Williams, 2000a: 194), Śāntideva was immune to it. 94

As for the three-body (tri-kāya) thesis, we should consider Mrozik’s (2007: 7) conclusion that there is “not a single reference” to this doctrine in the entire Compendium. It is certainly true that there is no thorough discussion of the doctrine, and nowhere are the three bodies spoken of together, but there are hints of its inclusion (Ś.S. 24 & 159). 95 If we turn to the BCA, there is again no explicit reference to this doctrine. However, there is one possible linguistic pun on the nirmāṇa-kāya (BCA. 5.57), highlighted by Crosby and Skilton (1995: 159, n.5.57). Furthermore, Śāntideva opens the text (BCA. 1.1a) with a verse of praise to the “Dharma-bodies of the Buddhas and their children” (sugatān sa sutān sa dharma-kāyān). So perhaps the three-body thesis is assumed, as Matics (1971: 125) suggests. On the other hand, whilst showing some minor influence from “buddha-nature” (tathāgata-garbha) thought in the Compendium (Ś.S. 172) 96, there is no mention of it in the BCA. Also,

94 Śaṅkara has also been linked with a number of tantric texts by the Advaita tradition, but none of these texts are taken to be authentic by the academic circle. However, some writers (e.g. Cenkner, 1983: xiv) do draw on them. I will not. In fact, Cenkner notes that while Tantric teachers are said to have “mysterious power” (p27), in Śaṅkara’s description of a teacher, these powers are “absent” (p43).

95 I agree with Mrozik’s (2007: 42-44) interpretation of the one reference to “Dharma-kāya” (Ś.S. 159) as most probably being a reference to a purified physical body, for the text speaks of the possibility of physically touching it. However, the reference to a “Dharma-śarīra” (Ś.S. 24) is a little more problematic, for it appears as a result of right knowledge (jña) and is said to remain intact after the donation of body parts.

96 Śāntideva quotes the Tathāgatatoṣa Sūtra here, including the notion that “All things are originally pure” (ādi suddhān sarva dharmān) (Ś.S. 172). Śāntideva uses it to show that any sin can be purified through right view. That is, having buddha-nature need only imply that “all sentient beings have minds which can change and become Buddha’s minds” (Williams, 2009: 113). Whether or not Śāntideva should be seen as an “anti-essentialist” (Harris, 2011: 116, n.23) is an open question. The BCA also claims that “beings are pleasant by nature” (sattvāḥ prakṛti pēsalāḥ) (6.40). But this also seems to be another skilful teaching, here aiming at tolerance. Simply contrast this with other verses in the BCA (e.g. 8.22-24), where the aim at hand is renunciation.
while including a quote from the Śrī-mālā Sūtra in the Compendium (Ś.S. 42), he does not draw on its famous passage on the tathāgata-garbha and the dharma-kāya. So we may conclude that the tri-kāya doctrine and the tathāgata-garbha doctrine did not play a major role in his system.\(^{97}\)

Nevertheless, rather than say outright that there is \textit{no} three-body doctrine in Śāntideva, it is preferable to say that Śāntideva’s soteriology is “upward” looking, not descending (avatāraṇa), and that his resolve to return to this world is a mundane one based on \textit{karma} and what I have called a “voluntary delusion”. It is not the result of the manifestation of physical (nirmāṇa) and mental experience (sambhoga) form bodies (rūpa-kāyā), as is the case in Tibetan tantra, and indeed in Candrakīrti (MMA XI.14 ff). Hence, we must assume the ‘avatāra’ in Bodhi-caryā-avatāra to mean “undertaking” (Crosby & Skilton, 1995: xxx) or “entering” (Brassard, 2000: 12) the path, rather than, the more literal “descending”.

Thus, Śāntideva’s \textit{bodhisattva} should not be compared with either Kṛṣṇa or the Hindu \textit{avatāra} ideal. Likewise, the \textit{yogi} of the Gītā has not attained his position from the “top-down” (Malinar, 2007: 117), and Kṛṣṇa as \textit{avatāra} (Bh.G. 4.6-8) is thus “unique” (p135).\(^{98}\) It is therefore my contention that Śaṅkara has a right to take Kṛṣṇa’s wilful manifestation as being unique to the Lord (\textit{Bhagavan}). Nelson (1996) has examined the similarities between the idea of the \textit{jīvan-mukta} and Kṛṣṇa, and feels that these

---

\(^{97}\) We might say that Śāntideva, like Nāgārjuna, sits closer to the ‘self-empty’ side of the Tibetan ‘self-empty’/‘other-empty’ (Tib: rang stong/gzhan stong) debate (see Williams, 2009: 112-115). It is thus interesting to note that Hookham (1991: 153) associates the self-empty view epistemically with an emphasis on analysis, and ethically with an emphasis on purity and monastic discipline; which seems to fit Śāntideva quite well. However, Hookhams’ definition of self-emptiness as the “empty nature of illusory phenomena that are not actually there” (p149) is a little dubious.

\(^{98}\) For example, Theodor (2010: 49) discusses Kṛṣṇa under the title, “The Supreme Person’s Descent”.

135
concepts are “very close” (p41), yet he also admits that Kṛṣṇa may be a “special case” (p42). Along with Brodbeck, I believe Kṛṣṇa is better seen as a “cosmic archetype” (in Mascaró, 2003: xxiii). So it would be unwise to over-draw the parallels between Kṛṣṇa and Śaṅkara’s brahman-knower. In fact, the Gītā states that a knower of the Self is never born again (Bh.G. 5.17, 8.15 & 13.23). Even the very verses in which Kṛṣṇa’s cyclic re-creation through māyā is explained (4.6-8) are followed by stating that one who knows this is never reborn (4.9). A knower, then, even in the Gītā, is not obliged to come back for the benefit of mankind, though Kṛṣṇa himself takes on that burden. So while later Advaitin devotees would worship Śaṅkara as an avatāra (see Cenkner, 1983: 153), there is nothing in his writings to suggest he was such a figure or that he held any such aspiration to be one.

The exact dates of Śāntideva are as yet unknown. Clayton’s (2006) is perhaps the most recent detailed attempt at placing a date on him. The dates she settles on are “somewhere between the last half of the sixth and the first half of the seventh centuries CE” (p31). However, Paul Williams (2009: 66) seems to ignore this interpretation, and the second edition of his Mahāyāna Buddhism maintains the dates of 695-743. If we compare the dates Clayton (2006) gives for Śāntideva with those Williams (2009: 66) and Ruegg (1981: 71) give for Candrakīrti, 600-50, then Clayton would put Śāntideva before Candrakīrti. This she admits would “contradict all traditional chronologies” (Clayton, 2006: 31). The Padmakara Translation Group (2004: 356, n.4) offers the dates for Candrakīrti as the “first part of the seventh” century. For Śāntideva, they offer the traditional dates of somewhere between 685 and 763 (trans. Padmakara, 1999: 178), the dates first offered by Bhattacharya (in Clayton, 2006: 32), and the ones found in Crosby and Skilton (1995: viii). This early limit then, based on the non-mention of Śāntideva by the Chinese pilgrims I-tsing and
Hsüan-tsang\textsuperscript{99} (who visited India in 671-695 and 630-645 respectively), and the later limit, based on the fact that Śāntarakṣita (d. circa. 790) quotes from the \textit{BCA}, do seem quite convincing. Clayton (2006: 32) accepts the latter limit but not the former, but I see nothing in Clayton’s argument to make me want to shift Śāntideva back a century. It is probable that Śāntideva and Candrakīrti were more or less contemporaries. They both aim their attacks at their rival Mahāyāna school, the Yogācāra, and they both adopt a similar line of argument, the \textit{reductio ad absurdum} (prāsaṅgika). I think we may continue to assume that Śāntideva lived in the first part of the eighth century.\textsuperscript{100} That is enough for us to assert that Śaṅkara and Śāntideva appear to have lived more or less at the same time. We may also assume, until further studies prove otherwise, that they remained unaware of one another.\textsuperscript{101}

Unfortunately, if we do question the link between Candrakīrti and Śāntideva, and even worse, if we place him pre-Candrakīrti (as Clayton does), we lose the right to assume that Śāntideva accepts the systematic structures of Candrakīrti, namely, the ten-stage (\textit{daśa-bhūmi}) \textit{bodhisattva} path, explicitly adopted by Candrakīrti in his \textit{Madhyamakāvatāra}.\textsuperscript{102} This is problematic, for the stages allow the Mahāyāna to claim that, above a certain level, one can break the monastic rules through the doctrine of “skilful-means” (\textit{upāya-kauśalya}). This doctrine became a “guiding principle in the ethics” of \textit{Mahāsattvas} (i.e. high level \textit{bodhisattvas}) (Tatz, 1994: 2).

\textsuperscript{99} Also known (in Pinyin) as Yi-jing and Xuan-zang respectively.

\textsuperscript{100} For a complete attempt at the chronology of the Madhyamaka School, see Ruegg (2010: 13-36).

\textsuperscript{101} The earliest mention of the \textit{Advaita-darśana} in a Buddhist treatise is in the 8\textsuperscript{th} century \textit{Pañjikā} (328) by Kamalaśīla (Ruegg, 2010: 31).

\textsuperscript{102} I thank Roy Perrett for pointing this out (personal communication).
Before we examine this problem, we also need to question whether Śāntideva even accepts the complete path of the six perfections (ṣad pāramitā). This is important in its own right, for it would establish Śāntideva as a Mahāyāna gradualist. Moreover, it was the apparent use of this thematic structure which, according to Ruegg (1981: 82), constituted his “significant contribution” to the Madhyamaka School. Now, Chapters 6 to 9 of the BCA do in fact follow the perfections of “patience” (kṣānti), “effort” (vīrya), “meditation” (dhyāna) and “wisdom” (prajñā). This leaves out the first two perfections, “generosity” (dāna) and “morality” (śīla), which is no minor omission. Even so, these are not neglected, as such, and it may be said that, in the BCA, “Instruction has been given in all six perfections” (Crosby & Skilton, 1995: 133). Tibetan commentators have struggled with this possible omission, proposing that generosity is dealt with in Chapter 10, or that morality is covered by Chapter 5 (e.g. Gyatso, 1994: 6). Nevertheless, if we take seriously the challenge that this may not be the case, we might turn to the Compendium for support. We will also find proof there that Śāntideva did in fact accept the ten stages.

First, with regard to the six perfections, Śāntideva lists them all (Ś.S. 16), discusses their correct practice (61, 89-90, 187 & 219), and argues against the concept of a “wisdom-only” stance, stressing the necessity of all six perfection (97). In fact, the Compendium defines the Mahāyāna as “Those who course in the perfections, it is they that embrace the Mahāyāna” (ye sad pāramitāsu carantī te pratipanna ihe mahayāne) (Ś.S. 4). Hence, we can safely suppose that he accepts the traditional gradualist Mahāyāna path, and that he has rightly been taken as a “source of inspiration” for that gradualist path in Tibet (Wetlesen, 2002: 80).
Second, the *Compendium* quotes extensively from the *Daśabhūmika Sūtra*, which is not only the “locus classicus” (Huntington, 1989: 19) of the ten *bodhisattva* stages; its very title means “The Sūtra of Ten Stages”. Śāntideva also refers to at least three of the stages: the first, the stage (*bhūmi*) of joy (*pramuditā*) (Ś.S. 10), the seventh, the stage (*pada*) of skilful-means (*upāya-kauśalya*) (167), and the eighth stage of immoveable (*acala*) resolve (Ś.S. 103). Finally, the *Compendium* distinguishes between those who have entered the stages (*bhūmi praviṣṭam*) and ordinary people (*prthag jana*) (140).

There are also signs that Śāntideva draws a distinction between those who have attained to stages and those who have not. So, reflecting on the *Upāyakauśalya Sūtra*, Śāntideva seemingly equates those who follow the six perfections with those who have not attained (*alabdhā*) the stages. And while he claims to personally follow the six perfections, he feels he has no right to comment on the behaviour of those who have attained to the stages (Ś.S. 168). This is no doubt because the *Upāyakauśalya Sūtra* (112) itself states that skill in means is the *outcome* of the perfection of wisdom (the sixth perfection). Thus, pace Clayton (2006: 95 & 105), we can assume that he places some importance on the ten *bodhisattva* stages. From this analysis, we know that Śāntideva accepts the traditional Mahāyāna doctrine that after a certain level, *mahā-sattvas* can break the monastic code without reproach, assuming their actions are performed altruistically.

We can now place the following verses in their full context:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{uttarottarataḥ śreṣṭhā dāna pāramitādayaḥ} & | \\
\text{netarārthe tyajecchreṣṭhāmanyatrācāra setu taḥ} & || \\
\text{evaṃ buddhā parārtheṣu bhavet satatam utthitaḥ} & | \\
\text{niṣiddham apy anujñātaṃ kṛpālor artha darśinaḥ} & ||
\end{align*}
\]
Each of the perfections, beginning with generosity, is superior to its predecessor. One should not neglect a higher one for a lower one, unless because of an established rule of conduct. Realising this, one should always be striving to benefit others. Even that which is normally prohibited is permitted for the compassionate who can foresee a benefit (BCA. 5.83-84).

Yet it may well be that, in many cases, it is only the mahā-sattvas who can foresee the benefit, and for the vast majority, rules of conduct dominate. This is the essence of Mahāyāna ethics.

Now many scholars have claimed that the Mahāyāna movement in India was not a sect (Gombrich, 1988: 112; Williams, 2009: 3), and that those monks who saw themselves as Mahāyāna would have adhered to the same vinaya or prātimokṣa (monastic code) as the other monks. It is claimed that no Mahāyāna Vinaya was produced in India (Gombrich, 1988: 112; Williams, 2009: 4). Chinese pilgrim, Fa-hsien, in the 5th century, while noting one town that had separate colleges for the Mahāyāna, did not distinguish an exclusive Mahāyāna sect (Cousins, 1997: 386). Hsüan-tsang (Pinyin: Xuan-zang), writing in the mid 7th century, noted that Mahāyāna and Śrāvaka monks lived together at Nālanda University (Gombrich, 1991: 82a). Half a century later, I-tsing (Pinyin: Yi-jing), noted a similar situation, with the monks sharing a common Vinaya (I-tsing, 2009: 14; Williams, 2009: 5).

Nevertheless, there are indications in the Compendium that things may have changed somewhat by Śāntideva’s time. For one thing, Śāntideva distinguishes between the Śrāvaka-Vinaya (Ś.S. 135 & 168) and his own Compendium, which he calls a Bodhisattva-Vinaya (Ś.S. 366). In the middle of the Compendium (190) he asks, “What form of learning is praised in the Bodhisattva-Vinaya?” (kim ākāraṃ śrutaṃ bodhisattva-vinaye praśastam). Now it hardly seems logical that this could be
referring to his own text, so he could either be talking about another Vinaya text, or he is talking about the *Bodhisattva Code* in general terms. But then he also quotes extensively from a so-called *Bodhisattva-Prātimokṣa* (Ś.S. 11, 17, 19, 20, 34, 36-7, 55, 125, 144 & 188), a text which has never been located. Yet its reference here is enough for us to question the notion that the Mahāyāna never thought of themselves as a sect. The *Compendium* (11-12) also talks of taking the Vow of Discipline (*saṃvara*) in the presence of a “guru” who follows the *Bodhisattva* precepts (*bodhisattva śikṣapada*). So the aspiring Mahāyāna novice (*śrāmaṇeraka*) would be unable to take his vows with a non-Mahāyāna teacher. Also, as Mitomo (1991: 17) points out, Śāntideva takes refuge in the “assembly of bodhisattvas” (*bodhisattva gaṇaṃ*) rather than the traditional *saṅgha* (BCA. 2.26). Despite these specifically Mahāyāna rituals, Śāntideva states (Ś.S. 61) that the third root transgression (*ṛtīyā mūlāpattiḥ*) of a *bodhisattva* is to claim that he need not keep to the monastic ethical rules (*pratimokṣa-vinaya śila*). But the actual rules he has in mind are not obvious. Clearly, further historical research, which is outside the purview of this present thesis, is called for.\(^{103}\) What we can conclude is that Śāntideva was following more than one standardised mode of conduct.

Now, Prajñākaramati claims that Śāntideva was a member of the Madhyamaka School (in Vaidya, 1960: XI) and all scholars accept this. The Madhyamaka School, as it became known, derives its name from the Sanskrit for “middle way” (*madhyama pratipada*), which here denotes a conceptual method, which vows never to fall into either of the extreme views of eternity (*śāśvata*) or annihilation (*ucccheda*). The

---

\(^{103}\) One might start with a study of the *Akāśa-garbha Sūtra*, on which Śāntideva drew many of his *Bodhisattva* Rules (Ś.S. 59ff). Further, one may study Asaṅga’s *Bodhisattva-Bhūmi*, which Harvey (2000: 133) sees as the “locus classicus for instruction of new Bodhisattvas until the eighth century, when it was partly superseded by the system of Śāntideva”. Also see Tatz (1986) and Chappell (1996).
founding text of the tradition, from which the school’s name can be gleaned, is the *Mūla-madhyamaka kārikā* by Nāgārjuna. Nāgārjuna is thus considered the “source or originator” of the Madhyamaka School (Ruegg, 1981: 4). Most scholars agree that Nāgārjuna can either be dated to the first or second century (Garfield, 1995: 87 & 97) or the second or third (Williams, 2009: 24). Ruegg (2010: 16) decided on 150-200. Westerhoff (2009: 5), citing recent research by Walser, also accepts the late second century. Inada’s (1993: 29) dates of c.150-250 may therefore be taken as the consensus. The central claims of the *Mūla-madhyamaka kārikā* (hereon MMK) are that all ‘things’ (*dharmā*) are empty of inherent existence (*svabhāva*); that is, no thing has own-being (*sva-bhāva*). It is suggested that to understand the Buddha’s law of dependent-origination (*pratītyasamutpāda*) is to understand what the Madhyamaka means by emptiness (*śūnyatā*). There is no doubt that Śāntideva’s main text, the *BCA*, accords with the basic tenets and methodology of the *MMK*, and can therefore be called a “mainstream” Madhyamaka text (Ruegg, 1981: 83).

However, Mrozik (2007) claims that Śāntideva’s *Compendium*, while clearly Mahāyāna, “should not be read as an exemplar of Madhyamaka thought” (p16). To some extent this is true. While there are clear Madhyamaka ideas to be found in the text, perhaps they are not quite as extensive as some suggest (e.g. Sweet, 1977: 3). As neither scholar backs up their view, we might note a number of classic Madhyamaka themes: the denial of individuality (242), the denial of an ultimate agent (253), the emptiness of the aggregates (238) and of all experiential elements (117 & 242), the non-reflexive nature of consciousness (235), the nirvanic state of all elements (251),

---

104 For a more detailed study of ‘svabhāva’ in Nāgārjuna, see Westerhoff (2009: 19-52).
and the two domains of discourse (244 & 250). But more importantly perhaps, I can find nothing in the *Compendium* that the Madhyamaka would outright reject.

Dayal (1970: 45) claims that the “later Mahāyāna reverts to the old ideal of celibacy and forest-life”.  Now there is indeed internal evidence in the *BCA* that Śāntideva favours the forest-life. For example, he writes:

> caturbhiḥ puruṣair yāvat sa na nirdhāryate tataḥ  
> āśocyaṃāno lokena tāvad eva vanaṃ vrajet

In the meantime, before he is carried away by four [pall-bearers] with the worldly lamenting, he should depart for the forest (BCA. 8.35).

And again:

> evam udvijya kāmebhyo viveke janayed ratim  
> kalahāyāsa śūnyāsu śāntāsu vanabhūmiṣu
> dhanyaiḥ saśāṅka kara candana śīlāteṣu ramyesu harmyavipuleṣu  
> śilāteṣu  | niḥśabda saumya vana māruta viṣyamānaḥ caṅkramyate
> parahitāya vicintyate ca  ||
> vihṛtya yatva kva cid ista kālam śūnyālaye vrkṣa tale guhāsu  
> parigrha rakṣaṇa kheda muktaḥ caraty apekṣāvirato yatheṣṭam  ||
> svacchanda cārya nilayāḥ pratibaddho na kasya cit  |  
> yat saṁtoṣa sukham bhūikte tad indrasyāpi durlabhāṃ

Thus, one should recoil from the passions and generate delight in solitude, in tranquil forests, empty of strife and trouble. On delightful rock surfaces, cooled by the sandal-balm of the moon’s rays, stretching as wide as palaces, fanned by the silent, gentle, forest breezes, the fortunate ones walk, contemplating the welfare of others. Passing one’s time anywhere, in empty dwellings, caves, at the foot of a tree, free from the bother of protecting one’s property; one lives as one pleases, free from concern. One’s conduct and dwelling are one’s choice. Tied to no one, one has a level of happiness and contentment which is difficult to obtain, even for gods (BCA. 8.85-88).

Furthermore, Chapter XI of the *Compendium* is actually entitled “In Praise of the Forest” (*aranya saṃvarṇanam*). There is also some evidence in the *Compendium* (Ś.S. 64 & 114) that Śāntideva favours the meditating monk over what Sponberg has

---

105 For some early Buddhist views on forest-life, see Cooper & James (2005: 120). On the “revaluation of the wilderness” in the Upaniṣads, see Olivelle (1992: 44-46).
called the “monastery-bound textual redactors” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 89). The *Compendium* even talks of the *bodhisattva* never making the monastery (*vihāra*) into a home (Ś.S. 137). Nevertheless, the *Compendium* continually glorifies the study of religious texts, even claiming that a *bodhisattva* should be “diligent in reading and reciting” (*pāṭha svādhyaśābhyuktā*) (Ś.S. 16). Needless to say, Śāntideva was himself a great scholar who clearly had a huge library at his fingertips. He certainly did not write the *Compendium* in a forest. As with celibacy, the forest-life was part of Śāntideva’s “ascetic” discourse, meant for the commencing-*bodhisattva*, but not meant for the more active *bodhisattva*, and certainly not to be taken as indicative of his complete ethical system. This is consistent with the Buddha, who “recommended forests and lonely places only as ideal sites for training in meditation, but never for living” (Darmasiri, 1989: 14).

Like Śaṅkara, Śāntideva was against pure book-learning, but he saw it as a necessary qualification to higher knowledge (see Chapter 5). And, as Śāntideva’s *BCA* and Śaṅkara’s *U.S.* demonstrate, a written text can be put at the service of both meditation and compassionate activity. And again, like Śaṅkara, Śāntideva takes renunciation of social duties as essential for the path of seeing. Nevertheless, both the *bodhisattva* and the *brahma-vid* return to social conventions in order to pass on their realisation (see Chapter 6). Hence, for both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, we need to think in terms of ethical domains.

With particular reference to ethics, Goodman (2009) has recently gone as far as to divide the Mahāyāna into pre-Śāntideva and post-Śāntideva. His logic seems to be based on the idea that Buddhism has tended to move from being a rule-consequentialism to an act-consequentialism, with Śāntideva being pivotal in this
shift. If nothing else, it goes to prove just how relevant the study of Śāntideva is to Buddhist ethics. Goodman (2009) sees him as “the greatest of all Buddhist ethicists”, and as the one who “comes closest to a worked-out ethical theory” in the Western sense (p89), rightly describing Śāntideva’s ethics as “radical altruism” (p90). Nevertheless, most of what Śāntideva wrote was based on earlier sūtras, so to divide Buddhism into pre- and post-Śāntideva is always going to beg the question.

With reference to metaphysics, like Śaṅkara, Śāntideva stresses the illusory nature of existence. He therefore holds a very similar māyā-thesis, though one without the “curious double meaning” (Otto, 1957: 87) found in the Vedānta. Given that Śaṅkara borrowed from Gauḍapāda, who borrowed from Nāgārjuna, it is no surprise that Śāntideva should describe the illusory-like world in similar terms:

\[
māyopamaṃ jagad idam bhavatā naṭaraṅga svapna sadṛśāṃ viditam
nātmā na sattva na ca jīvagati dharmā marīci-daka-candra-samāḥ
\]

This world is like an illusion, to be understood as like a theatre, a dream. There is no self, no being, no life; all “things” are like a mirage, like the moon’s reflection in water (Ś.S. 319).

Similarly, in the *BCA*:

\[
ḍṛṣyate sprśyate cāpi svapna-māyopam ātmanā
cittena saha jāta tvād vedanā tena nekṣyate
\]

There is seeing and touching by a ‘self’, which is like a dream or illusion. Sensation is not ‘perceived’ by consciousness, for they are born together (BCA. 9.99).

And again,

\[
svapnopamāstu gatayo vicāre kadali-samāḥ
nirvṛtānirvṛtānāṃ ca višeṣo nāsti vastu taḥ
\]

When analysed, the state of existence is dream-like, [insubstantial] like a plantain tree. Thus, there is no substantial difference between the liberated and the non-liberated (BCA. 9.150).
The similarities with Śāṅkara are (by now) obvious. When we dream, we see certain “objects” and believe them to be real. On awakening, we realise that they were in fact a mental projection. Likewise, when we realise emptiness, we will see that our lives up until now have been a mental projection. Nothing is as solid as we believed; everything is but a reflection of what is truly real. As with Śāṅkara, this does not imply that there is no external reality whatsoever and that things merely appear to the mind. That is, Śāntideva does not proclaim that ordinary experience *really* is illusory. Rather, he advises us to take a sceptical approach to what we take to be truly existent. Things may or may not be out there, but they are never how we believe them to be. All we see are distortions of that reality. Thus, King (1995: 25) states that “given the importance of the two-truths doctrine in both the Mahāyāna and Advaita, it is never the case that the world is *simply* unreal”. This will hopefully become clearer when we analyse Śāntideva’s and Śāṅkara’s arguments against the Yogācāra (Chapter 4.1) who they both take to be actually denying external reality, using the dream not so much as an analogy, but as a way of claiming that we might always be dreaming and there might never be a need for externality to explain our internal reality.

It is important to understand, then, that for Śāntideva, things are not literally *created* by the mind; they are rather *warped* by the mind. It is in *this* sense that one’s world could be said to be ‘mind-only’. Burton (2001) therefore seems wrong in claiming that, for the Madhyamaka School, “dependent origination of all entities means that all entities originate in dependence upon the mind” (p101). For a critique of Burton’s “idealist reading”, see Arnold, (2005: 170-171).
produced everything” (naikasya sarva sāmarthyaṃ pratayasyāsti kutra cit) (BCA. 9.13a), a thesis he accuses the Yogācāra School of holding.

So, while an object’s existence is linked with the “interrelations between conceptual thought and perception” (Huntington, 1989: 50), this is not a mind-only thesis. Thus, Śāntideva contends that, “Conception and the conceived are mutually dependent” (kalpanā kalpitam ceti dvayam anyonyaniśritaṃ) (BCA. 9.108a). That is, “all phenomena exist in a manner of appearing as varieties of dependent-arisings” (Gyatso, 1975: 60). Śāntideva clearly denounces the notion of citta-mātra (BCA. 9.29) and the idea that illusory objects are mind-created (see Chapter 4.1). He asks the Yogācāra, “If illusion is really mind itself, what is seen by what?” (cittam eva yadā māyā tadā kim kena drṣyate) (BCA. 9.17a). When Śāntideva claims that the lust for an illusory woman may still arise in the magician who created her (BCA. 9.30-31), he clearly believes that there are women more real than this illusory type. Likewise, Candrakīrti argues against a mind-only, literal, interpretation of scripture (MMA. 6.84-88), and equally questions the notion of a mind creating its own dream world (6.47-48), and further argues that mental constructs are dependently arisen (6.88). The basic metaphysical point of the Madhymaka School (described in MMA, MMK and BCA), is that all is dependently arisen, and so “the unreality of the external object ... is not a tenet of the pure Madhymaka schools” (Ruegg, 2010: 31).

Śāntideva writes:

\[
\text{atha jñeya vaśaj jñānam jñeyāstitve tu kā gatiḥ} \mid \\
\text{athānyonya vaśat sattvam abhāvah syād dvayor api} \mid \\
\]

\text{107 The intention of Candrakīrti, in these verses, is to say that “the Buddha was not laying the foundations for an idealistic philosophy” (Padmakara Translation, 2004: 370, n165). Brassard (2000: 137) thus seems to have misunderstood this passage.}

\text{108 Ruegg is here distinguishing “pure” Madhyamaka from the later Yogācāra-Madhymaka synthesis.}
If consciousness is established on the strength of the cognized object, how does one arrive at the existence of the cognized object? If they depend on each other for existence, then neither [ultimately] exists (BCA. 9.112).

We can understand this better through the common notion of mutual relationships. To take Śāntideva’s classic example:

\[
\text{pitā cen na vinā putrāt kutāh putrasya sambhavaḥ}\quad | \\
\text{putrābhāve pitā nāsti tathā sattvam tayor dvayoḥ} \quad ||
\]

If there is no father without a son, how can there be an [independent] son? With no son, there is no father. Therefore, neither of them [consciousness or the object] exists [ultimately] (BCA. 9.113).

The same argument can be found in Nāgārjuna’s works (see Westerhoff, 2009: 27-28). But clearly, the Madhyamaka are not saying that there are no fathers and no sons in the world, they are merely pointing to a “symmetric dependence relation” (p28). And whilst denying the greatest Father of them all, God (Īśvara), Śāntideva actually accepts the elements (earth, water, fire & air) that make up the world. The dependence relationship here is one of their co-arising with their cognition.

Thus, Śāntideva asks the Brahmins:

\[
\text{īśvaro jagato hetuḥ vada kastāvad īśvarah} \quad | \\
\text{bhūtāni ced bhavatv evaṃ nāma mātre ‘pi kim śramah} \quad || \\
\text{api tv a nek e ‘nityāś ca nīśceśṭā na ca devatāḥ} \quad | \\
\text{laṅghyās cāśucayaś caiva kṣmādayo na sa īśvaraḥ} \quad || \\
\text{nākāśam īśo ‘ceṣṭa tvāt nātmā pūrva niṣedha tāḥ} \quad | \\
\text{acintyasya ca kartṛtvam apy acintyam kim ucyate} \quad || \\
\text{tena kim sraṣṭrām iṣṭam ca ātmā cet nanv asau dhruvāḥ} \quad | \\
\text{kṣmādi sva-bhāva īśaś ca jñānam jñeyād anādi ca} \quad ||
\]

If you say “God is the cause of the world”, please explain what God is. If it’s the elements, so be it, but why all this fuss over a mere name? Moreover, earth, etc [i.e. water, fire and air], are not one; they are impermanent, inert and in no way divine. One can step on them, and thus they are impure. These are not God. Space cannot be God as it is inert. Nor can the ‘self’ [be God] for it was refuted earlier. And if creation belongs to that beyond conception, then what can be said of the
inconceivable? What is it that he [God] wishes to create? If [you say] a “self”, then surely this [on your account] is eternal, as are earth, the other elements, and God [himself]. [As for] consciousness, it arises from the cognised object and is beginningless (BCA. 9.118-121).

In other words, awareness is always awareness of “something” which is itself interdependent on other “things”, and so on, ad infinitum. The Buddhist thus describes the world in terms of “dense networks of relationality and interdependence” (MacKenzie, 2011: 255). We can thus conclude that Šāntideva is not denying the conventional reality of the physical world. Rather, he adopts a sceptical position towards what we intuitively take to be real.109

When Williams (2000a) characterises the Madhyamaka as supporting the thesis that “Everything is foam which dissolves into nothing” (p150), we should not forget that foam is in fact not ‘nothing’. So things are not “merely appearances” that “have no existence beyond this”, as Burton (2004: 81) claims, for even mirages and dreams are actual phenomena, which actually appear and have actual consequences. Objects and actions then are “real empirical phenomena, but are empty of anything more than empirical existence” (Garfield, 1995: 244). Šāntideva makes this explicit:

\[
yathā nirātmānaś ca sarva dharmāḥ, karma phala sambandhā virodhaś ca nihsvabhāvatā ca, yathā drṣṭa sarva dharmā virodhaś ca
\]

All experiential elements are selfless. On the other hand, they are connected with the fruit of action. All experiential elements lack own-being. On the other hand, there is an empirical world (Ś.S. 244).110

109 As Matilal (2004: 62) notes, there is a difference between adopting a “sceptical method” and actually being a “sceptic”. Šāntideva is first and foremost a Mahāyāna Buddhist, and his scepticism does not contradict his faith. Yet he does question, not only the theses of his opponents, but also his own prima facie views. One must remember that there are yogis of even higher wisdom to oneself (BCA. 9.4). Likewise, there are ethical actions that you are currently incapable of understanding (Ś.S. 168). Hence, Šāntideva shares what Dreyfus and Garfield (2011) call the “deep tensions in Madhyamaka” (p117). The debate about Buddhism and its connection with Scepticism can be followed in Burton (2001), Ganeri (2001), Garfield (2002), Matilal (2004), Dreyfus (2011b), and Dreyfus & Garfield (2011).

110 This is reminiscent of the thesis being denied by Nāgārjuna’s opponent (Vv., 2).
At the ultimate level, there are no elementary ‘things’, and karma is fundamentally empty. But at the conventional level, things function as things, and karma functions as a cause of action. Hence, empirical phenomena are to be accepted “solely on the basis of their causal efficacy” (Huntington, 1989: 23). Thus, a person is undeniably established as a being capable of performing functions. As we noted above, even the Buddha is not excluded from this law (BCA. 9.9a). The apparent contradiction between function and being is due to our own lack of insight into emptiness. The worldly equate functional capacity with own-being (sva-bhāva), but the yogis see into the non-substantiality and other-derived nature (para-bhāva) of those functioning objects. That is the basis of their dispute (BCA. 9.5).

If there is anything like a true innovation to be found in Śāntideva it must be found at the breaking point of this tension of how to reconcile the ultimate truth of insubstantiality with the conventional truth of suffering beings. As indicated above, I believe the key to understanding his thesis is located in verses 9.75-76 of the BCA, where he answers the doubt as to whom compassion ought to be shown if there are no ultimately existing beings. His response is critical:

\[
\text{kāryārtham abhyupetena yo mohena prakalpitaḥ }||
\]

For anyone who [our voluntary] delusion projects for the sake of what must be done (9.75b).\textsuperscript{111}

\textsuperscript{111} Since preparing this translation of the BCA, I have discovered that Sweet (1977), in an unpublished Ph.D., introduces the term “[voluntary] ignorance” in his translation (p97). However, he introduces it at verse 9.52. This seems incorrect, for the more obvious reading of this verse is to see the delusion as belonging to suffering beings, not to the bodhisattva. So this verse should read: “Being able to remain in cyclic existence, free from attachment and fear, for the benefit of those suffering through their delusion - such is the fruit of emptiness” (BCA. 9.52). Also, if you introduce the bodhisattva’s voluntary delusion here, then the next verse’s statement that “As such, there is no valid objection to the emptiness doctrine” (BCA. 9.53) would be put in jeopardy, for a deluded being may well be accused of holding deluded doctrines. Introducing the voluntary delusion at 9.75 agrees with the delusional nature of the bodhisattva’s work in 9.76 and further highlights the constructively altruistic intent.
When the only delusion left in the bodhisattva is of this voluntary nature, it is also what keeps him in saṃsāra. It is thus worth noting that the Oliners see the “voluntary” nature of an action as one of the four defining features of true altruism (Oliner & Oliner, 1992: 6). Just as Śaṅkara claims that the brahma-vid is beyond injunctions, so the bodhisattva is under no coercion other than his own vow.

And as to the question of the rationale of such an altruistic self-imposed duty, given the supposed ultimate lack of individuation, Śāntideva’s response is equally critical:

\[
\text{duḥkha vyupaśamārthaṃ tu kārya moho na vāryate} \quad ||
\]

In order to bring about the end of suffering, the delusion which conceives the task is not restrained (BCA. 9.76b).

As in the case of Śaṅkara, Śāntideva is willing to play the game of individuation so long as it benefits the other. Here Dayal’s compassion-theory trumps Williams’ insistence on reason and logic, and Avalokita trumps Mañjuśrī. We see that Śāntideva’s verses are often primarily persuasive, “emotional rather than argumentative” (Dayal, 1970: 45), “pragmatic, rather than systematic and philosophical” (Matics, 1971: 26). We may glean that this is not enough for Williams (1998a), who, whilst admitting the apparent “triumph of rhetoric over reason” (p107), still insists on a rational ontology.\(^{112}\) All Śāntideva can offer is the Two Truths, the flickering between self and no-self. Whether this is “rational” or not, I leave for the reader to decide. However, I will continue to give him a sympathetic reading.

Santina (1986) writes that the “Madhyamaka’s contention is not with the pragmatic interpretation of phenomena commonly accepted in the world” (p99). That is, the

\(^{112}\) Williams (2002) later wrote, autobiographically, that he would be the “first to separate coherent rational argument from preaching or emotional or psychological description” (p13).
contention is not with the common-sense view of external objects, but with their ultimate status. In fact, Śāntideva ends his BCA with a rhetorical question that clearly acknowledges the central role of the conventional:

\[
\text{kadopalambara drṣṭibhyo deśayisyāmi śūnyatām} \\
\text{saṃvṛty ānupalambhena punya sambhāram ādarāt} \quad ||
\]

When, with this merit accumulated, will I respectfully teach this emptiness, through conventions, without projection, to those whose views are characterized by projection? (BCA. 9.167)

By “without projection”, he means the ability to teach without believing there to be a teacher and without becoming attached to the hearer or the conventional words one uses. Only when one can give without a sense of a giver can one be a true bodhisattva (Ś.S. 275). Also, to believe in an individuated self is to be bound to its longings, “If one does not let go of self, one cannot free oneself from suffering” (ātmānam aparityajya duḥkhaṃ tyaktum na śakyate) (BCA. 8.135a). So how could one free another? But remember that Śāntideva has allowed a certain amount of “voluntary delusion” about other beings, thus reconstructing a receiver of the giving. But if this compassionate outpouring begins to seep back into one’s own sense of selfhood, and one forgets how this self is constructed, then one must resort to its antidote, to “meditate on not-self” (nairātmya bhāvanā) (BCA. 9.77b).

So while compassionate acts must be performed, they must be performed without a sense of one’s own self. Better to sit in solitude and drop the sense of self than to act with the sense of self. This partially justifies Arnold’s (2005) claim that “selflessness ... is arguably what all Buddhist philosophy concerns in the end” (p118). Yet one cannot act for others without a sense of their self. This is at the very heart of the “tension” and “flickering” models I have proposed. If the bodhisattva has the ability to flicker between relative and ultimate domains, then he is free to act as he likes; but
as soon as he starts to believe that he has a self, in the sense of a fixed owner of his actions, those very actions will be tainted.

Śāntideva’s version of compatibilism suggests that we are free to act on our choices, but we are only truly free to choose when we have a consciousness which flickers between seeing emptiness and being caught by false illusions, and by clearly seeing the possibility that the latter can be negated. The bodhisattva thus makes a deliberate choice regarding the notion of self. It is not so much the case that the maintenance of the no-self position is more essential than compassion, but that “true” compassion cannot be maintained without the no-self position. But as we have seen, neither can it be maintained without the notion of self. Hence, we have a tension within awareness itself, as Brassard (2000: 133-134) has rightly suggested.

When we compare Śāntideva with Śaṅkara, it is vital that we do not get confused here with the notion of “I” that needs to be denounced in order for true compassion to arise. It is not the ultimate ātman of Advaita that needs denouncing; it is egoism (ahaṃkāra). And this denouncement is as applicable to Śaṅkara as to Śāntideva. Olson (1997), in his discussion of Śaṅkara, writes that “the renouncer tries to destroy all traces of the ego, the false notion of self” (p169). Ram-Prasad (2001a) has spoken of ahaṃkāra as the “sense of self which is ego” (p168), and that it is jīva that has this ‘I’-sense (ahaṃkāra), not ātman (p166). More recently, he further confirmed that “many brahmanical thinkers” speak out against this “fraudulent (sopadhā) sense of selfhood” (Ram-Prasad, 2011: 228). Śaṅkara associates ahaṃkāra with ignorance (avidyā) (Bh.G.Bh. 7.4). In the Viveka Cūḍāmaṇi, it is called “one’s enemy” (sva śātruṃ) (307). In the Gītā, Kṛṣṇa continually teaches Arjuna the means to be “free of false ego” (Tripurari, 2002: 210). The “absence of egoism” (anahaṃkāra) is praised
along with “non-attachment” (asaktiḥ) and a list of other virtues (Bh.G. 13.8). Thus, the ‘I’, according to the Gītā, “denotes no metaphysical entity” (Brodbeck, in Mascaró, 2003: xx). The ego, as “false centre” is therefore to be eliminated (Zaehner, 1973: 21). Ego’s absence is deemed possible, as ahamkāra is but the “defining mode of awareness of the individuated, unliberated self (jīva)” (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 169); and as such, cannot survive liberating knowledge.

The V.C. states that, “Even though completely uprooted, this gross egoism, if attended to by the mind for even a moment, returns to life” (samūlakṛtte ‘pi mahānāhamaṃ punar vyullekhitaḥ syādyadi cetasa ḵṣaṇam samaṃjīvya) (309). The V.C. then hammers home the need to return to absorption (samādhi) (310-355). Thus, in the V.C. there is an explicit acknowledgement of oscillating between states of egoistic and non-egoistic modes of consciousness. Nevertheless, the V.C. also defines a jīvan-mukta as “one who never has the idea of ‘I’” (aham bhāva na) (438).

Even though we have decided not to take the V.C. as Śaṅkara’s own work, it is worth repeating what Śaṅkara wrote on the difference between self and egoism:

svayamvedya tva paryāyah svapramāṇaka isyatām |
nivṛttāvahamaḥ siddhāḥ svātmano ‘nubhavaṁ ca naḥ ||

It must be accepted that [the self] is ‘self-evident’, which is synonymous with ‘self-knowable’. And the experience of one’s [true] self is established along with the cessation of the [false] notion of ‘I’ (U.S. Metric, 18.200/203).113

At this universal level, ātman comes to signify “almost the exact opposite” of ego (Torwesten, 1991: 50). It is thus the false notion of self as a separate, independent

113 See note 47 on p85.
being that is being attacked in both Advaita and Madhyamaka. Nevertheless, Śāntideva does go further, when he writes:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{duḥkhā hetur ahaṃkāra ātma mohāt tu vardhate} & | \\
tato 'pi na nivartyaś cet varam nairātmya bhāvanā & ||
\end{align*}
\]

However, egoism, which is the cause of suffering, increases from the delusion that there is a self. If this [particular delusion] cannot be avoided, better to meditate on not-self (BCA. 9.77).

This is where the anātman doctrine has its force. It is indeed egoism (ahāṃkāra) that causes suffering (duḥkha), but the belief that one has a permanent centre, a true self (ātman), according to the Buddhist, increases the delusion, which itself causes egoism. Here Śāntideva would agree with Metzinger (2010: 208) that “there is no essence within us that stays the same across time”. So we need always to distinguish between the denouncement of the ego (ahāṃkāra) with the absolute denial of the self (ātman).

This is why Harvey has recently made the point that anātman should not be rendered “egoless” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 572). All Indian schools argue the case for being egoless. Moreover, it could be further argued that the ātman Śāntideva has in mind here is of the individuated kind, what Śaṅkara calls jīva or jīvātman. As such, they might still agree with each other. As just mentioned, the false notion of jīva falls away when one realises brahman-consciousness, thus jīva is not an irreducible entity. To re-iterate Śaṅkara’s position on liberation, the false self must be dropped in order to gain the true Self.

But then, when we come to the notion of a “true” Self, there is no way of reconciling this position with the Buddhist. The following attack by Śāntideva seems capable of applying to all senses of ātman:
nityo hy acetanaś cātmā vyoma-vat sphaṭam akriyāḥ  
pratayāṇiṣṭa sange 'pi nirvikārasya kā kriyāḥ  ||

If the Self is eternal and without thought, then it is evidently inactive, 
like space. Even in contact with other conditioning factors, what 
activity could there be of something which is unchanging? (BCA. 6.29)

Again:

athāvikṛta evātmā caitanyenaśya kiṃ kṛtaṃ  
añjasya niśkriyasyatvam ākāśasyātmata matā  ||

If the self is in fact unchanged, what is achieved by it having 
consciousness? We might say that selfhood is like space, unconscious 
and inert (BCA. 9.69).

Rather than seeing this immutable self as an obstacle to compassion, Śāntideva merely 
sees it as an unnecessary postulate. Naturally, there is still much we could say here 
about modes of consciousness. If consciousness is indeed local, or an occurrence 
within a local complex, as the Buddhist accepts (see Ram-Prasad, 2002: 6), then there 
is indeed no need, philosophically, for this ātman. However, if, ultimately, there is no 
other conscious being apart from this pure consciousness, as Śaṅkara claims 
(Bh.G.Bh. 9.10); then its purpose is indispensable. Now some (e.g. Ram-Prasad, 
2007: 125) may feel that this is an “astonishing” claim. And given Śāntideva’s 
response to the Sāṃkhya School on the notion of an ultimate reality, it would seem he 
would agree. Śāntideva writes:

anyad rūpam asatyam cēn nījaṃ tād rūpam ucyatām  
jñānatā cet tataḥ sarva puṁsāmaikyam prasajyate  ||

If the different natures are not its true being, then explain what its own 
nature is. If [you say] it is the nature of consciousness, then it follows 
that all people have the very same singular consciousness! (BCA. 9.66)
While of major interest to the study of Indian epistemology, this argument need not be taken up here. All we need note is that the metaphysical and epistemological impasse between Advaita and Madhyamaka has been met. Nevertheless, despite this impasse, so many commonalities remain. This is the crux of my thesis.

4. Their Common Approach to the World

This section will form the core of the “comparative” aspect of my thesis, for within it I wish to propose that Śāntideva and Śaṅkara, who, though sitting at polar ends of the Self-spectrum, will nevertheless go on to assume almost identical positions with regard to key doctrines. It will be argued that their philosophical means and their gnoseological and ethical goals are so similar that they are able to take on a common opponent, defend a similar model of agency, and finally call for a form of conduct which is equally “provisional”.

This section is thus divided into three parts:

1) Their Common Denial of the Yogācāra Idealistic World-view
2) Their Common Denial of the Ultimacy of the Individuated Self
3) Their Common Response to Tradition-based Conduct
4.1 Their Common Denial of the Yogācāra Idealistic World-view

Indian Mahāyāna is typically divided by scholars into two philosophical schools, the Madhyamaka and the Yogācāra. As such, Huntington (1989) has referred to the Madhyamaka as the Yogācāra’s “most vehement opponent” (p62). However, perhaps we will find, at least in his “major” works, that Śaṅkara was even more vehemently against the Yogācāra than either Śāntideva or Candrakīrti. Before we look at Śaṅkara’s and Śāntideva’s critique of the so-called ‘Idealistic’ views of the Yogācāra/Vijñānavāda School, it is worth heeding Huntington’s warning that we should not judge the Yogācāra solely on the basis of those accounts given by their opponents (ibid.)

So let me start by saying that they may well not have been “Idealistic” in the Western sense of reducing all phenomena to mere ideas, to mental constructs. First of all, it is clearly possible to coherently talk of our private mental representation of the world as merely-mind. All we need mean by this is that we can never know the world directly, and must always rely on the mind for interpretation of perceptual data. This is not idealism, but phenomenalism. Yet the Yogācāra has often been labelled as the ‘Mind-Only’ School. Most importantly, for this thesis, Śāntideva (BCA. 9.29b) refers to their doctrine as “mind-only” (citta-mātra), and Śaṅkara (B.S.Bh. II.i.18) labels them the “ Followers of the theory that Only-Consciousness-Exists” (Vijñānāsti-mātra vādinaḥ). What such commentators have in mind here is that the Yogācāra are

115 While it may be true that “Western notions of “idealism” and “realism” have no Sanskrit equivalents” (Larson, 1997: 249), the Indian translators of Śaṅkara’s texts, Gambhirānanda (B.S.Bh), Madhavānanda (Br.U.Bh) and Jagadānanda (U.S.) all refer to the Yogācāra as ‘Idealists’. And it is evident that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva see the Yogācāra as holding a mind-only doctrine that we might reasonably call ‘idealist’.
claiming that all experiential elements are in fact products of the mind, and that the mind is all that ultimately exists, that is, “metaphysical idealism” (Lusthaus, 2002: 5).

Of course, a mind devoid of ideas, a pure emptiness, which seems to constitute the ultimate goal of the Yogācāra, would not have a place in the Western category of idealism (Ram-Prasad, 2002: 39). In fact, one only reaches enlightenment when one destroys the “mind consciousness” ( mano-nāma vijñānaṃ ) (Triṃśika, 5). This ultimate status amounts to the very opposite of a mind-created universe (Lusthaus, 2002: 5). We should not forget that Western Idealism bases itself on “ideas”, not “ideals”, which is why Nuttall (2002: 43) suggested that Berkeley’s idealistic metaphysics might be better labelled ‘Idea-ism’. But a state of mind which contained no such ideas or conceptual constructs would simply stand as pure consciousness, or perhaps flickering moments of cognition sans object. This sounds very much like what Harvey (1995: 223) has called “Nibbānic discernment” in his interpretation of the final state of an arhat; a thesis which he admits is similar to that of the Yogācārin’s (p250). Such an idea-free state cannot coherently be called Idealism.

There is however a second problem. If we analyze the Sanskrit phrase ‘vijñapti-mātra’, a term the Yogācārins used to describe their own thesis, and indeed the opening words of Vasubandhu’s Viṃśikā, we find that it could provide a variety of English translations. For example, ‘vijñapti’ means ‘information’ (Monier-Williams, 2002) or ‘perceptions’ (Grimes, 1996) or ‘representation’ (Keown, 2003). So to hold a theory of ‘vijñapti-mātra’ need not bind one to the thesis that the world itself is mind-only. Furthermore, given that the word ‘mātra’ may be equally translated as “mere”, we might in fact translate ‘vijñapti-mātra’ as ‘mere-representation’, a
rendering suggested by Kochumuttom’s (1989: 257) translation of Vasubandhu’s *Trimśikā*, verse 17.

Arnold (2005: 23) has noted that scholars continue to be split on the question of whether Yogācārins, like Vasubandhu and Dignāga, were presenting an “idealist metaphysics” or a “representationalist epistemology”, citing Hayes as a defender of the latter view. Kochumuttom’s (1989) thesis is that the Yogācāra are really talking about mental construction (*parikalita*), and any claim that this was idealism would be a “gross misunderstanding” (p5). Cook (1999) also denies that Vasubandhu’s work was idealistic, and suggests that the argument is one that claims that “any cognitive experience is distorted as soon as it occurs” (p374). Thus, Lusthaus (2002: 6) states that ‘*vijñapti-mātra*’ should be seen as an “epistemic caution” and not as an “ontological pronouncement”. Anacker (1998) also denies that Vasubandhu was really denying the existence of objects, claiming that what Vasubandhu is really getting at is that external phenomena are “only inferable” (p159). We may compare Hume here, who states that “external objects become known to us only by those perceptions they occasion”, and thus, “we never really advance a step beyond ourselves” (Treatise, I.ii.6), and again, “philosophy informs us, that every thing, which appears to the mind, is nothing but a perception”, and it is only the “vulgar” who “confound perceptions and objects, and attribute a distinct continued existence to the very things they feel or see” (I.iv.2). Such a stance is often labelled ‘scepticism’, not ‘idealism’. On such a reading of the Yogācāra, they would sit very close to Advaita’s “non-realism” (see Ram-Prasad, 2002) in which there is “no way of

---

116 For a thorough discussion of what we might mean by the term “scepticism” and its potential application to the Madhyamaka School, see Arnold (2005, Part III). I personally favour the view (held by Matilal) that both the Yogācārin and the Madhyamika can be thought of as being, what Ram-Prasad (2002) calls, “sceptical in intent” (p71). But Matilal (2004: 62) also suggested that Nāgārjuna was “not a sceptic, but a Buddhist, although he used a sceptical method”. I would venture that this also applies to the Yogācāra.
establishing that the world is external to cognition” (p14), as all phenomenal content is “determined locally” (Metzinger, 2010: 10).

The subsequent difference would then boil down to whether one then looks back from this intuition at the world and assumes its (external) reality, or whether one moves on to transcend it. So framed, it is not an entirely ontological debate, but one framed within a “larger soteriological project” (Ram-Prasad, 2002: 39). If the Madhyamaka cannot be properly understood when extracted from its soteriological aims, then nor can the Yogācāra. They may well be accused of setting up an “idealist epistemology” (Ram-Prasad, 2002: 44), but their rationale may simply be to provide the practitioner with a platform for liberation from the world. If this were the case, their ‘idealism’ parallels the soteriological thesis of both Advaita and Madhyamaka, in that all of them wish to cast doubt on what we commonly take to be the constitution and the limits of reality, thus leaving room for the possibility of transcendence and an ideal (i.e. perfect) form of living liberation, whether this be “romantic folklore” (Metzinger, 2010: 9) or not.

Now that we have given the defenders of Yogācāra a fair hearing, we also need to be fair to Śāntideva and Śaṅkara, who both took the Yogācāra as idealistic. So in their defence, we can cite, for example, the following line from the opening verse of Vasubandhu’s Viṃśikā, “vijñapti-mātram eva idam asad arthāvabhāsanāt”, which may be translated as, “All this is mere representation because of the appearance of non-existent objects” (1a).117 This goes beyond Hume, who, due to the coherence and constancy of appearances, found himself “naturally led to regard the world, as

117 For a more thorough exploration of Vasubandhu’s idealism, see Ram-Prasad (2002: 38-79).
something real and durable” (Treatise, I.iv.2). From here, it is quite easy to see why Śaṅkara might also refer to them the “Followers of the theory that Only-Consciousness-Exists” (Vijñānāsti-mātra vādinaḥ) (B.S.Bh. II.ii.18) and why Śāntideva might label their doctrine “Mind-only” (citta-mātra) (BCA. 9.29b).118 It is also easy to understand why the idealistic label has stuck for so long.

Śaṅkara also referred to the Yogācārins as “Vijñāna-vādī” (Followers of the theory of Consciousness) (B.S.Bh. II.ii.28). Now ‘vijñāna’ had a technical meaning in early Buddhism, that of ‘consciousness’, being one of the five aggregates (skandhā). The early Buddhists also talked of the five sense consciousnesses as types of vijñāna, with intellect acting as a sixth. The Yogācāra School distinguished itself by proposing that there were in fact eight types of consciousness, including a store-house consciousness (ālaya-vijñāna).119 Matilal (1994) suggests that this was the Yogācāra’s “substitute for the self” (p287). Yet, it should be emphasized that the Yogācāra claimed that it was the error of the seventh consciousness, the “tainted mind” (kliṣṭa-manas) to grasp at the ālaya as if it were a self (see Williams, 2009: 97).120

We need to understand what it is that drives such an impassioned denial of their thesis by both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara. It may well have been that the Yogācāra simply constituted a “formidable opponent” (Huntington, 1989: 60) to these schools. They may have had either political or scholastic reasons for attacking one another. Perhaps the Madhyamakas were responding to the claim that the Yogācāra was the third and

---

118 Keown (2003: 341) cites the “influence of Tibetan doxological traditions” as the reason why the Yogācāra may be “incorrectly” labelled ‘citta-mātra’, but it was clearly a product of India.

119 Like the Pāli texts, Śāntideva speaks of only six consciousnesses (BCA. 9.59).

120 Yet, see Dreyfus (2011a: 145).
final turning of the wheel, the Buddha’s definitive (nītārtha) teaching. Ultimately, however, it will be argued here that, while the issue for Candrakīrti may well have been linguistic (Huntington, 1989: 66); the common motivator for Śaṅkara and Śāntideva is ethical conduct, and that neither of them could imagine how ethics could function within a mind-only paradigm.

Nevertheless, our starting point continues on from the question of self. The methodology here is to focus on Śaṅkara’s critique, whilst noting how similar Śāntideva’s critique is to it. The reason for this is that Śaṅkara allotted significantly more space to the Yogācāra than did Śāntideva.

Before we analyse Śaṅkara’s critique of the Yogācāra, it is worth noting a point made by Alston (2004), that Śaṅkara was “more concerned with protecting the students of Advaita from the seductions of a non-Vedic path than with an objective statement of what the opponents actually said” (Vol 4: 281). Indeed, we may note two passages in the commentaries that do seem to point to this conclusion. In one, Śaṅkara states that any teaching that opposes the Vedas was surely contradictory (B.S.Bh. II.ii.18). In another Bhāṣya, he states that any theory that denies a self (ātman) over and above the body and intellect contradicts the Vedic path (Br.U.Bh. IV.iii.7). However, such dogmatic claims aside, it seems to me that Śaṅkara did in fact offer a fairly reasonable depiction of certain strands of the Yogācāra.

It is difficult to know exactly which strand Śaṅkara had in mind, but Alston (2004) suggests it was the doctrine “propagated by Dharmakīrti” (Vol.4: 282), as does Ingalls.

---

Indeed, elsewhere, in his *Upadeśa Sāhasrī* (Metric, 18.142), Śaṅkara quotes an entire verse from Dharmakīrti (see Mayeda, 1992: 200, n100). Mayeda (p201, n.104) also traces some of the views attacked by Śaṅkara to Dignāga. Ram-Prasad (1993: 430) has also traced a verse of the *Brahma-Sūtra Bhāṣya* (II.ii.28) to Dignāga; though more generally he states that, “The Vijñānavādin that Śaṅkara has in mind looks very much like Vasubandhu” (Ram-Prasad, 2002: 40). We can therefore state with some certainty that Śaṅkara knew the work of Dharmakīrti, as well as the work of Dignāga, and most probably that of Vasubandhu. I would venture then that Śaṅkara had more than one strand of Yogācāra in mind, and we might add to the evidence the fact that he offers two competing views of their thesis on the final state of pure consciousness (Br.U.Bh. IV.iii.7).

Whichever strand he had in mind, it matters little to my main thesis. My intention here is not to ascertain how justified Śaṅkara was in his critique, or to establish whether it was historically accurate. I am more concerned here with what Śaṅkara actually said against the Vijñānavādin thesis and even more concerned with why he felt pressed to say it. The same applies to the case of Śāntideva.

While it is true that any system that denies the Vedas is a system to be denounced by an Advaitin, it is my contention that there are deeper reasons for the sheer volume of attention that Śaṅkara gave to the Vijñānavādins. One reason, of course, is that he was well aware of just how close his own cognitive theory sat to theirs. For example, Śaṅkara admits that their theory of the self-luminosity (*sva-prakāśa*) of cognitions, at least on the surface, looks very similar to his theory that the Self-as-witness is self-

---

122 Ingalls (1954: 299) also suggests that verses II.ii.28-32 of the *Brahma Sūtra* are later insertions. I will not follow up this historical point here.
established, self-reflexive, and that it thus illumines cognitions (B.S.Bh. II.i.28). Šaṅkara points out though, that if there is no Self behind the cognitions, throwing light on them, then what you have is tantamount to a fire burning itself (ibid.).

Śāntideva uses two such metaphors to make exactly the same point in his criticism of the Yogācāra. He states that “Just as a blade cannot cut itself, so it is with mind” (nac chinātti yathātmānam asidhārā tathā manah) (BCA. 9.18a). He goes on to state that a “lamp is not so illumined [by itself]” (naiva prakāśyate dīpa) (9.19a). He later goes on to say that whether the mind is luminous (prakāśā) or not (aprakāśā), it “cannot be seen” (drṣṭā na), so its discussion is “futile” (mudhā) (9.22). But for Śaṅkara, it is far from futile, for the luminous brahman is established by the Vedas, and is thus known on authority. He will therefore argue for its existence on the basis of an analogy with a lamp, which, though illuminating other objects, still needs an external agent to perceive it, as does consciousness (Br.U.Bh. IV.iii.7).

There is much that could be said here regarding the nature of cognition; however, it would lead us away from the central theme of the thesis. All I wish to show here is that Śāntideva and Šaṅkara have already found themselves a common opponent in the Yogācāra. So far they have argued against them on sectarian grounds. For Śāntideva, there is no ultimate mind lying behind the momentary cognitions. For Śaṅkara, it is not mind or personal consciousness, but brahman-consciousness that lies behind those

123 A similar argument appears in the Vigrahavyāvartanī (34), where Nāgārjuna states that “Fire does not illuminate itself” (na hy ātmānam prakāśayaty agnih). For further discussion of the fire analogy in Nāgārjuna, see Westerhoff (2009: 168-172). Matilal (2004: 60) traces the related “light analogy” back to the Nyāya Śūtra II.i.9.

124 For those who do not see it as futile, see Williams (1998b) and Siderits (2011).
cognitions.\textsuperscript{125} At this point then, the two philosophers remain divided essentially along \textit{ātman/anātman} lines. But this is all about to change as they come to share the same ethical concerns.

The next stage of the debate is the question of subjects and objects, and their relationship to each other. We need to bear in mind here that while a pot or a snake is merely an object; a person is potentially both a subject and an object. What is meant by ‘person’ here has nothing to do with the question of \textit{ātman}. The ‘person’, in the Indian context, is that who is stood before me, a man with a name and a family and a caste, born in such-and-such a village, holding such-and-such a trade. There is nothing metaphysical about this. Neither Śāntideva nor Śaṅkara wish to deny the person as an object. Neither of them wishes to say that ‘you’ are not \textit{physically} there. Neither of them wishes to say that your family never \textit{physically} existed, that your birth was not a physical occurrence within space and time (see Chapter 4.2).

Now it may well be that the Yogācārins never wished to be taken this way either. Perhaps all they wished to suggest was that a world out there could never be verified without recourse to consciousness. Perhaps we should not see them as proposing a world of cognition-only, but of representation-only. Be that as it may, historically they \textit{were} taken to be denying an external world both by Śāntideva and Śaṅkara. Indeed they continue to be taken this way by the Tibetan Mādhyaṃkikas\textsuperscript{126}, and there is

\textsuperscript{125} That the “I” (\textit{ahāṃ}) is momentary (\textit{kṣaṇikatva}) is also stated in the \textit{V.C.} (293), where it is contrasted with the “witness” (\textit{sakṣa}) which is “constant” (\textit{nityāṃ}) (294).

\textsuperscript{126} For example, the Dalai Lama (2002) states, “although the Mind-only School rejects the reality of a self and rejects the reality of an external, objective material reality, it nonetheless maintains that subjective experience – that is to say, the mind – does have substantial reality” (p102). The late Chogye Trichen (2003) also states that, “according to the Mind Only school … all appearances are mind. Nothing exists outside of the mind’s sphere of experience. Mind is the substratum that creates and projects all phenomena” (p156). Also see Hopkins (1996: 365ff).
certainly enough in the writings of the likes of Vasubandhu which would allow for this interpretation. Again, whatever the historical or textual fact of the matter is, the work we need to do here is to understand why both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara would want to argue against such idealism. For our purposes, we can ignore the name Yogācāra and focus only on the construction of their project as described to us by Śāntideva and Śaṅkara. The key question to ask is: In what way does this project oppose what they wish to say about the world and our place in it?

Beginning with Śaṅkara again, we need to realise just how close his ontology looks, on the surface, to that of the Yogācāra. And this is so even in his post-Gauḍapāda period. Let us take for example the famous Indian ‘snake/rope’ analogy. First, let us examine it from a psychological perspective. A person, through fear or whatever, imagines they see a snake. As they get closer, they realise it is only a rope. What are we to take from this? All that is being pointed out here is that what we take to be the world (through perception) might not be the actual world. The world that we see passes through mental filters which distort its reality. In other words, the world is different from the way we perceive it. Up to here, the Brahmins and the Buddhists would agree. If we take this analogy of the ‘snake/rope’ one step further, what Śaṅkara is accusing the Vijñānavādin of doing is reducing the object to an ‘idea’, to cognition:

\[
vijñānādarthāntaraṃ vastu na ced abhyupagamyate, vijñānaṃ
ghaṭaḥ paṭa ityevamādināṃ sabdānāṃ ekārthatve
paryāyaśabdatvam prāpnoti  \\
\]

If no object distinct from consciousness were admitted, then the words ‘cognition’, ‘pot’, ‘cloth’, etc., having the same meaning, would all be synonymous (Bṛ.U.Bh. IV.iii.7).
On this account, a pot, or a cloth, or a snake would all be equal in being mere ideas within a subject’s consciousness. He goes on to state that we could not function in society if we did not assume that other beings were external to consciousness. For example, to have a debate with an opponent, but to assume that this was all taking place at the level of cognition-only, would “put an end to all human interaction” (sarva saṃvyavahāra lopa prasaṅgaḥ) (ibid.). This is an explicit reference to human conduct, i.e. to social ethics. Human interaction, as we know it, simply could not take place if I assumed that ‘others’ were merely a figment of my imagination, an aspect of my own consciousness. What would it mean to be ethical if I did not feel that I was interacting with other distinct beings? Moreover, Śaṅkara points out that the teachings of the Buddhist path itself, which presuppose a distinction between means and the result, would be rendered useless. In full:

\[ tathā sādhanānāṃ phalasya ca ekatve, sādhyasādhana bhedopadeśa śāstrānarthakya prasaṅgaḥ, tat kartuḥ ajñāna prasaṅgo vā \]

Likewise, [if] the means [were taken as] being identical with the result, your scriptures, which assume a difference between them, would be useless, and the author [i.e. the Buddha] might well be charged with ignorance (Br. U.Bh. IV.iii.7).

The conclusion could not be any clearer: where there is no posited world of beings, there is no place for ethics. No matter how much we seek to reduce existence to pure consciousness, in the final analysis, the “way to liberation lies in and goes through unliberated life” (Ram-Prasad, 2000: 184). Furthermore, and this is vital, the Yogācāra are being accused of putting the Buddha’s ethical teachings at risk!

---

127 The positive side of this doctrine, of course, is that one could never be scared by a snake, or be seduced by an object if one saw it as mind-created. This potential benefit of the Yogācāra view has in fact been pointed out by the current Dalai Lama (2002: 102).
Naturally, it could be argued that Śaṅkara’s own theory of brahman-consciousness as ground of all being, with ‘things’ being mere shapes of this Being (sat), is open to the same attack. Ingalls (1954), even while limiting himself to the two “major” and “mature” works of Śaṅkara (p291), admits that, “If we are to adopt a metaphysical and static view of philosophy, there is little difference between Śaṅkara and Vijñānavāda Buddhism” (p304). Even though Śaṅkara may have left idealism behind, he still continues to claim that everything is a manifestation of the one ground; Being itself. For example, “All things named ... are Being-only” (sad-eva ... sarvam abhidhānam) (Ch.U.Bh. VI.ii.1-3). Snakes, pots, whatever: “all these are but different shapes of Being” (sat saṃstāna mātram idam sarvam). There is no snake (sarpa), only “rope”, not as “raju”, but as “Sat”, Being itself. Further on in the text (VI.iii.2), forms are said to be ultimately non-existent (anṛta). Thus, Śaṅkara pushes the ‘snake/rope’ analogy beyond psychology into epistemology, and arguably into ontology. It is no longer due to fear that one sees a ‘snake’, it is (more directly) due to ignorance:

\[
\text{abraham pratyayaḥ sarvo 'vidyā mātro rajjvāmiva sarpa pratyayaḥ |}
\text{brahmaivaikam paramārtha-satyam}
\]

All concepts of non-brahman are mere ignorance, like the notion of a snake superimposed upon a rope. Brahman alone is the ultimate truth (Mu.U.Bh. II.ii.11).

But then this is all that the Yogācāra (as painted by Śaṅkara) are saying; ‘things’ are verily non-other than ground (ālaya). So what is new in Śaṅkara is not that there are snakes or people out there, but that we must pretend that the snakes and people are real, that is real in the provisional sense of taking them seriously. There are snakes and people, as it were, but, to the enlightened, they are really just modifications of the one true Being, never to be grasped at. Nevertheless, for the sake of the majority, in everyday life, we must go along with the delusion that these ‘things’ are in fact real, and persons do in fact own their own lives and property. So while “illusion cannot
last when the truth is known” (Dasgupta, 1975, Vol.I: 441), the illusory game can still be played. In other words, when discussing ethics, we must accept the provisional playing field, for that is where most people sport.

In the Upadeśa Sāhasrī, Śaṅkara also points out that before one realised that the ‘snake’ was in fact a ‘rope’, the ‘snake’ did in fact have an underlying existence, namely, the rope (Metric, 18.46). Thus, there is a real basis even for illusory existence. So even if all phenomena were taken to be illusory, there would still be an underlying reality, brahman. It might help to recall the analogy of the waves falling back into the sea (B.S.Bh. II.i.13). The waves are transitory, but the sea still underlies them, just as the earth underlies a temporary pot. Elsewhere, Śaṅkara offers the similar analogy of foam and bubbles on top of pure water; the elements of the body and the so-called individual self are like foam and bubbles of water (salīla phena-budbudādi-vat) which upon realisation disappear into pure brahman (Bṛ.Ū.Bh. II.iv.12).  

The trick he plays with the reader then is to attack the Yogācāra’s (ultimate) soteriological discourse with a (provisional) ethical argument. The Yogācāra are in fact right to see things as illusory, as dream-like, but they are wrong in not taking this provisional world seriously. And the world, according to Advaita, is to be “taken seriously” (Ram-Prasad, 2002: 4). Dreams prove only that cognitions may be sublated and thus point to the possibility that the world of name-and-form may be transcended, not that the world has no relative existence. As such, Śaṅkara, without proving the

---

128 Cf. S.N. III.140-142

129 Actually, as Ram-Prasad (2002: 45) rightly points out, ordinary experience (especially suffering) is of “the utmost moral seriousness” to the Yogācārin.
externality of the world, merely assumes it. For this “pseudo-realist” move, Bhāskara charges Śaṅkara with hypocrisy, for it appears to contradict his Buddhist-looking māyā-thesis (see Ingalls, 1954: 303-304). But the move is only hypocritical if we maintain an either/or discourse. But Śaṅkara’s discourse, like Śāntideva’s, is both/and. My contention is that Śaṅkara, like Śāntideva, wants us to see the illusion of the cake and eat it. It is this move that will allow him to defend the ethics of the Bhagavad Gītā (see Chapter 4.3). All we need do is assume that the world is out there, and hence Dharma can run its course. True, with regard to such things as caste, gender, renunciation and celibacy, he will place certain boundaries around human interaction, leaving room for a transcendent domain for the few (see below). But there is nothing hypocritical about that. If Śaṅkara can be accused of anything, it is elitism, not hypocrisy.

Naturally, along with elitism comes a certain degree of arrogance. In one single line of the Br. U.Bh, Śaṅkara dismisses the followers of the Madhyamaka School, to whom he refers to as the “Followers of the Empty Doctrine” (Śūnya-vādi pakṣastu) (IV.iii.7), on the grounds that their doctrine “contradicts all means of valid knowledge” (sarva pramāṇa vipratisiddha). Unfortunately, he offers no explanation. He says a little bit more in his B.S.Bh, where he implies that they refuse to accept the provisional reality which he finds essential for human interaction (II.ii.31). Needless to say, I do not believe that this critique can stand up against Śāntideva. For one thing, in the BCA (9.8a), Śāntideva states that there is no fault in the wise adopting conventional views


131 See note 58 on p100.
Furthermore, he later categorically denies that conventional ways of knowing are being denied:

\[
yathā drṣṭam śrutam jñātam naiveha pratiṣidhyate \mid 
\text{satyaṭḥ kalpanā tv atra duḥkha hetur nivāryate} \mid 
\]

The [ordinary] way of seeing, hearing or knowing is not here being refuted. It is the reification of reality that is here refuted, as that is the cause of suffering (BCA. 9.25).

I will return to this subject later (see Chapter 5.1). But for now, allow me to show just how similar Śāntideva’s views are to Śaṅkara’s on this and related subjects. Like Śaṅkara, Śāntideva finds the Yogācāra’s theory of non-externality as unreasonable as their theory of the luminosity of mind:

\[
yadā māyaiva te nāsti tadā kim upalabhyate \mid 
cittasyaiva sa ākāro yady apy anyo ‘sti taitvataḥ \mid 
cittam eva yadā māyā tadā kim kena drṣyate \mid 
uktam ca loka nāthena cittam cittam na paśyati \mid 
\]

[We ask] If, for you, the illusion does not exist [externally], what is there to be perceived? Even if [you say] it is an expression of mind itself, [we object] that in reality it is something other [than mind]. [We ask] If illusion is really mind itself, what is seen by what? Moreover, it was said by the World Protector [Buddha] that mind does not perceive mind (BCA. 9.16-17).

It is quite evident here that Śāntideva wishes to distinguish between the Madhyamaka theory of illusion-like objects and the mind-only theory of the Yogācāra. He wants to say that things (which will naturally include human beings), although they are lacking in permanence and independent existence, do nonetheless stand out there, external to consciousness. He further wants to say that the mind is not to be taken as being self-luminous. And herein follows a lengthy discussion on why this cannot be so. I do not wish to enter into this debate, for it is not of direct interest to my thesis, other than to note that his analogy of a knife not being capable of cutting itself (BCA. 9.18) is parallel to Śaṅkara’s claim that fire does not burn itself (B.S.Bh. II.ii.28). Of course,
the reasons why they wish to deny the luminosity theory of the Yogācāra are totally opposed. Śaṅkara wishes to establish a necessary witness (brahman) behind the workings of mind, whereas Śāntideva wishes to say that all is inter-dependent and that nothing is self-standing. In other words, one attacks the Yogācāra in order to prove there is a self, and the other attacks it to prove there is no self.

Here, as we might well have predicted, they will meet a metaphysical impasse. On one side of the river, Śāntideva stands open to Śaṅkara’s attack that the Śūnyavādin’s doctrine “collapses like a well in sand” (sikatā kupa vad vidīryata) (B.S.Bh. II.ii.32). On the other side, Śaṅkara stands open to Śāntideva’s attack on those who would posit a more solid ground of existence. And here the Yogācāra appear to be standing on the bridge being fired at from both sides.

Śāntideva would no doubt take Śaṅkara’s attack on the chin, for he not only admits that his theory lacks any essential support; he even prays that all mankind adopt a view of things as being like space:

\[
\text{sarvam ākāśa samkāśaṃ parigrhṇantu madvidhāḥ |}
\text{prakupyaṃtī praḥṛṣyanti kalahoṭsavaḥtuḥbhīḥ ||}
\]

Would that all mankind understood that all things are like space. But they delight in festivals and get angry in disputes (BCA. 9.154).

In the following exchange, we again see just how closely the Yogācāra stood metaphysically to the Advaitin, as Śāntideva responds to their attack on his supportless universe:

\[
\text{asaty api yathā māyā drṣyā draṣṭṛ tathā manaḥ |}
\text{vastv āśrayasya cet saṃsāraḥ so ‘nyathākāśa-vad bhavet ||}
\text{vastv āśrayeṇābhāvasya kriyāvataḥ tvaṃ katham bhavet |}
\text{asat sahāyam ekāṃ hi cittam āpadyate tava ||}
\]
Just as the illusion which is perceived lacks [ultimate] existence, so it is with the seer, the mind. If [you think] cyclic existence must be supported by something truly existent, otherwise it would be like space ...

[We reply] For you, the mind has been reduced to isolation, accompanied by non-existents. How could the activity of the unreal [objects] proceed, even if supported by a real existent [i.e. pure mind]? (BCA. 9.27-28)

While it is difficult to see just how this answers the question put forth, we can easily see how the final attack could apply to Śaṅkara. Both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara are admitting that the illusion exists, but only the former is willing to say that there is no ground to which the illusion refers. Indeed, Śāntideva will throw the accusation of a “space-like” ground in the face of the Brahmanical schools, likening ātman (BCA. 6.29 & 9.69) and Īśvaraḥ (9.120) to space (vyoma, ākāśa), and asking how this so-called God would add anything to our inter-dependent universe. Like the Yogācāra’s luminous mind, it appears to Śāntideva as a barren concept. The metaphysical impasse seems to defy common ground, but the ethical consequences of their positions most certainly do not.

Notice here that we have a Buddhist school attacking another Buddhist school along with certain Brahmanical schools for holding to a metaphysical thesis that feels the need to posit an essential ground. At the same time, we have a Buddhist and a Brahmin firing the same accusation at a second Buddhist school, that of denying the provisional ground for ethics. The cross-cutting nature of Indian philosophy has thus been established. Furthermore, the fact that one’s ultimate view on selfhood, though influential, is no give-away sign of one’s ethical project has been proven. Thus, I will call on scholars to reflect further on how they distinguish Buddhism from Hinduism at the provisional level.
Having established these philosophical and disciplinary positions, a deeper investigation into their ethical projects will now follow (Chapter 4.3). This will attempt to establish further historiographical claims as to their focus on traditional ethics and lineage at the price of their ultimate metaphysics. But first we need to briefly sketch out the lack-of-agency thesis that underlies them.
4.2 Their Common Denial of the Ultimacy of the Individuated Self

Of all the topics under discussion, this is the key metaphysical similarity between Madhyamaka and Advaita. Remember, the Madhyamaka School has said that there is no selfhood anywhere to be found. Remember also that the Advaitin has said that all is but the one Self. The former is saying that “you”, under ultimate analysis, are not to be found; the latter is saying that “you” are to be found, but only as “that” (i.e. tat tvam asi). Hence, both are forced into the counter-intuitive position of denying that there is any individual unified self. This further means that both must target the “I-making” mechanism (ahaṃkāra) that leads most people to believe that they do in fact have a permanent centre, a lasting individuated essence. We are never told that this sense of I-ness does not exist; rather, it is claimed to be a mistake, a mistake that blocks liberation.

It is easy to see, in Buddhist terms, that in order to become selfless, one must drop the notion of self. But it is less obvious, but equally crucial, that in Advaitic terms, in order to become Self (i.e. brahman) one must likewise drop the notion of self (jīva). When we grasp this truth, we are faced with the fact that the whole question of self in Western Philosophy has a whole different meaning to that in Indian Philosophy. But equally, when a Buddhist realises that the Advaitin is also denying the individuated self, he is faced with rethinking what it means to distinguish Hinduism and Buddhism on the grounds of self and non-self.

Murti (1980: 17) once noted that nowhere in the Pāli Canon does the Buddha deny brahman (as absolute); in fact, it goes unmentioned. From this, I do not wish to
suggest that the Buddha left open the possibility of a Self, as some have suggested (see Harvey, 1995: 8). Rather, I wish to suggest that the not-self of the Pāli Canon is a psychological thesis, a means of denying the inclination to claim possession of things, of clinging to the categories of “me” and “mine”. In Harvey’s words, it is a “tool to cut off identifying with and clinging to things, including views” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 570). I then wish to show that Śaṅkara uses the denial of self in a very similar psychological fashion.

Indeed, some scholars have hinted at this parallel before, but its implications have never been fully drawn out. For example, Saddhatissa (1997) has noted that the ātman of the Upaniṣads, “signified the nonself rather than the self” (p133). More recently, Ram-Prasad (2011: 230) writes:

If by the use of the word ‘self’ we mean necessarily an individuated locus of consciousness idiosyncratically designated by the ‘I’, then the ātman of the Advaitins is not a self at all.

For similar reasons, Grether (2007: 231) has called on scholars to simply stop translating ātman as “self”. Unfortunately, we have yet to find a more suitable word, but that does not mean we cannot see the problem. Clearly, along with the Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad, both Śaṅkara and the Buddha are saying “not this, not this” (neti neti) or, as Harvey puts it, “this, this, this … is not Self” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 571). The V.C. states that “The body, consisting of arms, legs, etc. cannot be the Self” (pāṇipādādimān deho nātmā) (156). Śāntideva offers a similar meditation (BCA. 9.78-87), beginning with “The body is not the feet, not the calves, not the thighs, and the body is not the hips” (kāyo na pādau na jaṅghā norū kāyāḥ katīr na ca). The only thing these texts disagree on is what is left at the end of the process. Śaṅkara’s Advaita will insist that we are left with brahman, an absolute ground, a
singular Self. The Buddha refused to speculate, and modern scholars are left to debate his silence (see Collins, 1982; Harvey, 1995; and Pérez-Remón, 1980).

On the other hand, Śāntideva categorically denies the ultimate ground of the universe. He therefore denies both the self (writ small) and the Self (writ large). The so-called ultimate Self is dismissed as “imagined” (kalpitam) (BCA. 6.27). And even if it did exist conventionally, it would be dependent on something other (para-vaśaṃ) (6.31), and thus ultimately non-existent. As for the individuated self, he writes:

\[
\text{upadravā ye ca bhavanti loke yāvanti duḥkhāni bhayāni caiva sarvāni tāny ātma parigraheṇa tat kim mamānena parigraheṇa} \]

All the misfortunes in the world, the hardships and the fears, many as there are; they all result from clinging to this ‘self’. So for what is this clinging of mine? (BCA. 8.134)

These are strong words indeed, attacking not so much the Brahmanical Self, but the “more deeply entrenched conception of the self” (MacKenzie, 2011: 241). Nevertheless, Śāntideva insists on acting towards the world as if it were inhabited by multiple selves. This creates problems for a purely psychological interpretation of selfhood. As stated above, there is definitely a certain advantage to be gained in taking Buddhism to be essentially psychologically driven; however, the Mādhyamikas tend to see anātman in philosophical terms. Even if Garfield (1995) is right that the MMK of Nāgārjuna is “aimed primarily against philosophy” (p88), the Mādhyamikas have certainly offered a lot of philosophising in its defence!

In the case of Śāntideva, I will attempt to show that he adopts both a psychological deconstruction and a philosophical deconstruction. This lines up with de Silva’s (2000: 2) claim that the Buddha’s psychological analysis was “interlocked” with the philosophical facets of his doctrine. Thus, in the BCA, we find such psychological
language as: “the body is not the feet” (9.78) and “the equality of self and other” (8.90) and the accepting of another’s body as ‘myself’ (8.112). Here we can agree with Pickering (1997: 160) when he suggests that the Buddhist analysis of self lies somewhere between the “highly personalised” analysis of suffering and the “depersonalised” analysis of impermanence. However, we also find Śāntideva using more philosophical language, such as: this “bundle devoid of self” (nirātmake kalāpa) (9.101), along with his metaphysical critique of the “imagined” (kalpiṇa) and “inactive” (akriyaḥ) ‘Self’ (6.27-30). In this sense, the Mādhyamikas go one step further into the metaphysics of self than does early Buddhism. As suggested by Hayes, post-Nāgārjuna, anatman becomes a “thoroughgoing metaphysical doctrine” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 29); there is literally “no self” to be found.

Thus, anatman may rightly be translated as “not-self” or as “no-self” depending on whether it is a psychological or a philosophical claim. So Harvey’s (1995: 7) argument about whether anatman is to be translated as “no-self” or “not-self”, at least within the Sanskrit context, is largely irrelevant, because neither of these positions is held with any consistency. Furthermore, if Harvey is correct in claiming that the anatman doctrine should not generate the view, “there is no Self” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 570), then perhaps the Madhyamaka (including Śāntideva) are at fault. In no uncertain terms, the Compendium states that, ultimately speaking, there is no individuated self (ātmā/jīva) or essential person (pudgala) or independent being (sattva) (Ś.S. 172). Moreover, the BCA not only claims that ultimately there is no self, but adds “I” (aham) and “body” (kāya) to the list of negations (9.56 & 9.83).132

132 All of which, barring brahman’s “Being”, Śāṅkara would agree to.
On the other hand, Śāntideva would certainly agree with Harvey that this view of no-
self “should not be clung to” (Keown & Prebish, 2007: 570). For, according to the
Madhyamaka, neither of the Two Truths exists ultimately. So while Śāntideva (BCA.
9.53) speaks of the validity of the doctrine of emptiness, he also notes that:

\[ \text{tasmād bhāvo mṛṣā yo hi tasyābhāvah sphuṭam mṛṣā} \]

For, if the being of an entity is deceptive, clearly its non-being
[i.e. emptiness] is equally deceptive (BCA. 9.139b).

So we learn that, in line with Nāgārjuna’s “emptiness is the relinquishing of all views”
(\(\text{śūnyatā sarva drṣṭīnāṃ ... nihsaranam} \)) (MMK. 13.8), Śāntideva teaches that even
‘emptiness’ is empty of existence. He sums up his understanding of the Madhyamaka
position thus:

\[ \text{śūnyatā vāsanādhānādd hīyate bhāva vāsanā} \quad | \quad \text{kimcit nāstīti cābhyaśatsāpi paścāt prahīyate} \quad || \]

The influence of phenomena is removed by employing the influence
of emptiness. And even that emptiness is later eradicated by bringing
to mind that “nothing [truly] exists” (BCA. 9.32). 133

Nevertheless, when Śāntideva reinstates the world as inhabited by multiple selves, he
does it from a volitional, rather than a metaphysical, standpoint. To be sure, his
metaphysics could not logically maintain such a reconstruction, either ontologically or
motivationally, for he even denies that \(\text{duḥkha} \) ultimately exists (BCA. 9.88ff). In
other words, in the Madhyamaka context, we need to approach selfhood from a
different direction depending on whether it is being philosophically/psychologically
deconstructed or voluntarily/affectively reconstructed.

---

133 Emptiness is like the soapy water we use to wash the dirt off our hands. But we must still wipe off
the soapy water! (Tsoknyi Rinpoche, personal communication).
Summarising Metzinger’s work (in the Western contemporary philosophy of self); Ram-Prasad (2011: 224) notes that, it may well be impossible to both preserve a sense of “real self” and become convinced that intuitively there is “no such self”. However, one can certainly convince oneself into accepting the delusion that others have a real (to them) self, to voluntarily reconstruct the “other” for ethical purposes. Deluded beings continue to live in the conventional, and so the conventional world exists for them. As Śāntideva puts it, “In fact, the conventional does exist from the other’s perspective” (atha sāpy anya samvṛtyā) (BCA. 9.106b). As such, the “self-ascription of experience” (Ram-Prasad, 2011: 224) is from the point of view of the other, and the agent need not fully ascribe to it. Therefore, ethics are more fundamental to Śāntideva than teachings about emptiness.

Naturally, one might assume that it takes an act of a ‘concrete’ self to reconstruct the social world. However, we can imagine the impetus of this reconstruction deriving its force from the Bodhisattva Vow. By that I mean that the Vow is taken by one cluster of mental processes, while another cluster of mental processes (deeply affected by that Vow) is now causing the current reconstruction. In Śāntideva’s terminology (BCA. 9.117), it is due to the power of the preceding causes (pūrva hetu prabhāvataḥ). The repeated reviewing of the Vow by a given continuum (saṃtāna) creates a certain mind set, a mind-of-compassion (dayā-cittā) or concern (rākṣā-cittā) (BCA. 8.110), which constantly seeks the opportunity to act for the benefit of others. So while Garfield (2002) may have a point in claiming that “We act compassionately … precisely when we act not from duty” (p192), my contention here is that the bodhisattva takes it as a ‘duty’ to become and thus be compassionate. That is, the duty is surely of a different order than that which Garfield has in mind. It is this
compassion-as-duty which imposes the reconstruction of the world and the will to embodied activity:

\[
evam bhāvita saṃtānāḥ para duḥkha sama priyāḥ  
\text{avīcim avagāhante haṃsāḥ padma vanaṃ yathā} \ | \ |
\]

Those whose continuum is so developed, for whom the suffering of others is as dear to them [as their own], plunge into hell like swans into a lotus lake (BCA. 8.107).

What I wish to highlight here is the use of the phrase “bhāvita saṃtāna” (developed continuum/stream), which demonstrates how Śāntideva wishes to avoid the notion of a bodhisattva as a substantial self. This may be contrasted with the Pāli phrase “bhāvit atto” found in the Itivuttaka (Khuddaka Nikāya), which Harvey translates as “one of developed self” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 574). In his choice of words, Śāntideva thus seems more anxious to show that there is no substantial self or person who gets developed; there is just development. Even in the face of the notion of rebirth, he will ask, “Why should it be that a being counts as ultimately existing simply on account of its long-lasting continuum?” (dīrgha saṃtāna mātreṇa katham sattvo ‘sti satyataḥ) (BCA. 9.10b). Long-lasting is still impermanent, and an impermanent ‘thing’ cannot be an ultimate existent.

It is also interesting how Śāntideva uses the term haṃsāḥ (swans) to describe the actions of the bodhisattva, with Śaṅkara calling his monks “parama-haṃsāḥ” (U.S. Prose, 1.2), literally “supreme-swans”. Of much greater interest, at least metaphysically, the person having developed such a citta is referred to in the Pāli Canon as a “mahāttā”, literally “great self” (A.N. i.249). Harvey has distinguished

\[\text{134} \quad \text{For the origin and prevalence of the term haṃsa, see Olson (1997: 19-22). For the classification of renouncers in the Śamnyāsa Upaniṣads, see Olivelle (1992: 98-100). For example, the Āśrama Upaniṣad (4th century) places the parama-haṃsa at the top of a list of four types of renouncer.}\]

\[\text{135} \quad \text{Cf. the Bhagavad Gītā’s use of ‘mahātmā’ (8.15).}\]
this mahāttā from the illusory “permanent” or “substantial” self, calling it a strengthened form of “empirical self” (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 573). In fact, Śāntideva also urges the bodhisattva to develop the “great-self of a Buddha” (buddha māhātmyaṃ) (Ś.S. 145) and to preach it (330). Similarly, inner peace is spoken of as the “tranquillity of the great-self” (śama māhātmyaṃ) (119). Śāntideva defines this in gnoseological terms, stating that it is “The capacity to produce the knowledge of reality as-it-is” (yathā bhūmata jñāna jñānaśaktiḥ) (ibid.). But it would also seem to indicate a state of virtue with a predisposition to compassion. Śāntideva (ibid.) writes that, “the bodhisattva who thus sees reality as-it-is feels a profound compassion for all beings” (yathā bhūmata darśino bodhisattasya sattveṣu mahā-karuṇā pravartate). Likewise, such bodhisattvas are later described as “great men” (mahā puruṣaṇām) who “with the Buddha’s virtues, they work for the good of the world” (buddha guṇebhi karonti jagārtham) (330). As such, in denying their small self, both the Pāli Canon’s arhats and the Mahāyāna’s bodhisattvas are said to become great or immeasurable, selfless selves. Nevertheless, in the BCA, Śāntideva makes a conscious effort to remain true to the metaphysics of person-as-continuum, “great” though that continuum may be.

For Śaṅkara, there is only one Supreme Self (paramātman), and that is brahman. It is unique, “only one without a second” (ekam evādvitiyam) (Ch.U.Bh. VI.i.1). Thus, Kasulis’ (2005: 298) translation of ānatman as “no-I” hardly helps in distinguishing Buddhism from Hinduism, for Śaṅkara also denies the ultimacy of the “I” (aham). But what is it, then, for Śaṅkara, that transmigrates? Who is it that acts?

Considered as a finite conscious being, the soul, for Śaṅkara, belongs to the realm of appearance. In its true nature, it is the infinite non-dual Consciousness that is the sole reality underlying all appearance.

This line of thought is to be found throughout Śaṅkara’s work and we could quote endless passages on this central subject of non-duality. Let us focus then on his central work, the Brahma-Sūtra Bhāṣya and on how this position feeds into his ethical project. First of all, Śaṅkara (B.S.Bh. II.iii.18) tells us that brahman, merely “appears to exist as an individuated self due to its association with limiting adjuncts” (upādhi samparkāj jīva bhāvenāvatiṣṭate). In other words, it is purely due to our physical and mental make-up that we imagine there to be individuation of the Self (see Chapter 1). Consciousness is mistakenly taken to be local by the mind (manas), or intellect (buddhi), and thus one’s own fluctuating desires, joys and sorrows (which are mind-created) are mistakenly associated with consciousness, when in fact consciousness is immutable (avikṛta). It is this error that causes transmigration. Śaṅkara (II.iii.29) tells us that “without these modes of intellect, there can be no transmigration of the pure Self” (nahi buddher guṇair vinā kevalasyātmanaḥ saṃsāritvam asti). Here then lies the key to liberation: stop functioning through the limited intellect. And we might recall that Śāntideva (BCA. 9.2b) also proclaimed that the intellect (buddhi) is incapable of understanding reality, for it is grounded in the conventional.

Of greater interest here is that it must now follow that the apparent locus of individual agency and experience must be an illusion caused by this intellect. Śaṅkara continues:

\[
\text{buddy upādhi dharmādyāsa nimittaṁ hi kartṛtya bhokṛtvādi}
\]
\[
laksyaṇam saṃsāritvaṁ akartur abhoktuś cāsaṃsāriṇo nitya muktasya satāmanah
\]

Though the Self is not an agent or an experiencer, and though it never itself transmigrates and is eternally free; it takes on the state of being
an agent and an experiencer due to the superimposed nature of the intellect as adjunct (B.S.Bh. II.iii.29).

This gives Śaṅkara the platform he requires in order to make a number of important claims. He can claim that (provisionally) there is an agent, and as such, whilst in and of this world, one has a responsibility to act in accordance with traditional Law (Dharma). From here, it can also be claimed that (ultimately) there is no such agent, and thus one can transcend this world of transmigration. Using this Two-Truths strategy, Śaṅkara therefore concludes that:

\[
\text{paramārthatas tu na jīvo nāma buddhy upādhi saṃbāṃdha parikalpita} \\
\text{sva-rūpa vyatirekenāsti}
\]

Ultimately speaking, there is no such distinctive thing as an individuated self apart from that imaginary appearance created under the influence of the intellect acting as limiting adjunct (B.S.Bh. II.iii.30).

And turning briefly to a more ‘minor’ text, Śaṅkara writes:

\[
\text{na tatra kartṛtvāṃ bhokṛtvāṃ vā kriyā kāraka phalāṃ vāsti,} \\
\text{advaitatvā t sarva bhāvānām}
\]

There can be no agentship, no enjoyership, nor any ritual action, means, or result, where all is reduced to non-duality (P.U.Bh. 6.3).

This truth opens up the possibility of a person who has been taught and understood the fallacy of the intellect and the truth of brahman (see Chapter 5.1), a person who can act outside the normal restrictions of agent-based morality. This is the world of the brahma-vid or jīvan-mukta, to be examined in Chapter 6. For now, let us concentrate on how and why Śaṅkara and Śāntideva both defend a traditional ethics. While so focused, let us not lose sight of the fact, emphasised by Ricoeur (1994: 18), and recently echoed by Zahavi, that the “identity of the self is only fully revealed the moment we include the ethical dimension” (Zahavi, 2008: 113).
4.3 Their Common Response to Tradition-based Conduct

The person before you is not an ultimate being. Their apparent status as an individuated self is an illusion. Their personal sense of self is based on a cognitive error. Your view of them as a role-playing individual within a given social structure is based upon a socially-constructed delusion. Society is a mere designation, an aggregation of persons who have no ultimacy. Thus far, Śaṅkara and Śāntideva appear to be in full agreement. Hence, tradition-based conduct, which takes social categories as given, would seemingly be swept away by an insight into the ultimate nature of being. There can be no class, no caste system, no nation and no rightful kingships. There can be no monks, no laity, no men and no women. And yet, given all of this, which flows so naturally from their revisionary metaphysics; both will make a space for their traditions. Not only that. Both will insist on their traditions. This insistence on tradition has three major impacts on this thesis:

1) It gives us a window through which we can see into their usage of the Two-Truths doctrine. That is, it highlights how both philosophers stand on a doctrinal tight-rope, pointing upwards, away from the world, whilst looking downwards at the world, condoning their respective tradition’s values.

2) It emphasizes the point that ethics are central to both schools of thought, and that the idea of a world without ethics is repugnant to both. Even in vowing to renounce the world, they cannot forget the world. If the renouncer was “dead to the world” (Thapar, 1988: 287), the world was certainly not dead to these renouncers. Renunciation, then “does
not involve ceasing to have any actual relationship with its members” (Dumont, 1980: 185). Rather, it points to a reorientation of that relationship. It is this reorientation we must examine.

3) It sets limits on my thesis. Whilst it would suit my purposes to imply that by denying the ultimacy of the individuated self, the Madhyamaka and the Advaita schools are thus in general agreement, and therefore any distinction between them collapses, the fact that their traditions still remain intact proves the contrary. Also, Śāntideva’s rejection of the Vedas (BCA. 9.42) is reason enough for him to be classed by Hindus as non-orthodox (nāstika). In other words, even though their metaphysics on individual agency should lead to the collapse of the distinctions between their forms of Buddhism and Hinduism, in fact they do not, because both insist on maintaining that distinction at the provisional level. The most we can say, then, is that once we accept that the individuated self is being denied on both sides, we need to re-assess how we distinguish the two religions, not whether we should distinguish them.

There is no doubt that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will say that the person needs to be transcended for the sake of liberation. This agent comes to the respective tradition as a socially constructed being; made up of class, caste, family and duty. They have an expected mode of conduct. Both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will say that this expectation is provisional. It may generally be claimed that, in India, “proper conduct has counted for more than ideological purity” (Olivelle, 1992: 12), but would a revisionary philosopher agree with this? What is “proper conduct” for one who has seen through
our social realities? Also, given that the Mahāyāna had introduced the notion of skilful means, and given that Śaṅkara was intent on creating a Brahmanical monastic order, what are the implications for the notion that, in India, “orthodoxy is less important than orthopraxy” (Gombrich, 1988: 112)?

In reading their response to traditional texts, the question is perhaps this: how much of a role does knowledge play in deciding on the right way to act? In other words, who do the traditional rules apply to? But there is also the more nagging question: why do these philosophers of non-individuation even care about the ethics of illusory individuals? What is the place of provisional ethics?

- Case 1: Śaṅkara

As a champion of renunciation, Śaṅkara is faced in the Upaniṣads with the householder’s claim to knowledge. Likewise, he had to answer for their desire for women. I have argued that Śaṅkara can allow for this “lapse” in character by admitting that a knower may flicker between brahman-consciousness and habitual consciousness. His thesis is thus a practical one, based on the concept of latent tendencies (samskarā).

Even though Śaṅkara speaks of the knower’s actions as non-actions; the notion that the knower was having sex without really having sex, or the notion that he was having sex purely for the sake of the other, did not occur to Śaṅkara. Or if it did, he rejected it. Unlike Śāntideva, Śaṅkara has no skill-in-means thesis to offer. His ethical evaluation of the Upaniṣads is thus based on levels of knowledge and the lingering strength of past tendencies. Just as Śāntideva was faced with late tradition texts and
re-evaluations of renunciation, so was Śaṅkara. Written some centuries after the first Upaniṣads, the Bhagavad Gītā’s emphasis on a life of selfless action (i.e. karma-yoga) arguably confronts Śaṅkara-the-exegete with his greatest challenge. How Śaṅkara reacts to this text is of supreme interest.

Śaṅkara saw himself as a renouncer. However, if we take this as our starting point, assuming that renunciation is the only option in Advaita, we run the risk of misunderstanding his position on conduct, i.e. Dharma. So rather than start with Śaṅkara-the-renouncer, we might start with a hypothetical ideal type which Śaṅkara would have respected. That is, we are searching to privilege the male, Brahmin, who lives a celibate life with his mind fixed on attaining the highest good, brahman-knowledge. This hypothetical ideal will help us to unravel the apparent contradictions in his works. We need not take Śaṅkara himself as being a brahman-knower, merely as one advocating its attainment. But we should also keep in mind that the attainment of knowledge is a gradual affair, and so other provisional options remain.

With regard to literary methodology, we need to take account of all of Śaṅkara’s authentic works. Nevertheless, it will bear fruit if we focus here on his commentary on the classic text on Hindu Dharma, the Bhagavad Gītā. The reason for this choice is five-fold: 1) it is here where Śaṅkara faces his strongest exegetical challenge, 2) it is steeped in ethical language, 3) it presents an ethics within what many Indians see as “the illusory human drama” (Tripurari, 2002: 207), 4) it is open to multiple interpretations\textsuperscript{136}, some of which challenge Śaṅkara’s own project, and 5) the story is a familiar one.

\textsuperscript{136} For how the three main Vedāntin commentaries differ, see Chari (2005).
Theodor (2010: 21-22) has also suggested that Vedānta would be “impoverished” without the Gītā. At the provisional level of discourse, this is certainly true. And it may also be true to say that our understanding of Śaṅkara would likewise be impoverished if we ignored his views on the ethics of the Gītā.

The scene we have in mind finds the great warrior, Arjuna, overcome by compassion (kṛpayā), caught between his caste-bound duty to fight (kṣatriya-dharma), his duty to his family (kula-dharma) and the desire to flee the war and renounce. What follows this moral dilemma is an “ethical and metaphysical answer to the question of renunciation” (Marcaurelle, 2000: 4). We all know the story. I request that, in addition to the usual battle scene, simply imagine Śaṅkara, the champion of renunciation, there alongside Kṛṣṇa. Arjuna is begging them for counsel. Now what would be the expected advice? We all know Kṛṣṇa advises Arjuna to fight:

\[
tasmād asaktāḥ satatam kāryaṁ karma samācara  
askto hy ācaran karma param āpnoti pūruṣaḥ
\]

Therefore, without attachment, always perform the obligatory duty, for by performing one’s duty without attachment, a person attains the Highest (Bh.G. 3.19).

Renunciation then, for Kṛṣṇa, is not about giving up action and going off to find God in the forest. Rather, Kṛṣṇa “redefines renunciation” (Davis, 2005: 171). Kṛṣṇa reserves his highest praise, not for the renouncer who withdraws and abstains from worldly action, the type of renouncer we typically associate with Śaṅkara’s Advaita, but for the new type of “renouncer” who continues to fulfil his traditional role in society. Renunciation, then, is karma yoga itself, which involves, not the renunciation of all action, but only the renunciation of the fruit of action. Kṛṣṇa becomes the “only place for renunciation and attachment” (Malinar, 2007: 189). Renunciation is thus
“rendered compatible with activism” (Perrett, 1998: 16), making it compatible with being a householder.

This would all appear to come as a major challenge to Śaṅkara. His ideal type, the ascetic (yatīḥ), is indeed one that gives up all ritual action, and is thus contrasted with the “man of action” (karmī) (Bh.G.Bh. 14.26). According to Śaṅkara, only the former is worthy of the “highest” (paramām). Thus Śaṅkara needs to find a way of interpreting the text that will allow him to maintain that the “highest” is the sole right of the ascetic renouncer, and that Arjuna-as-warrior is not qualified for it.

One might assume that Śaṅkara would object to the life of the warrior as being “antithetical to the renunciatory ideal of nonviolence” (Johnson, 2004: xiii), and that he might beg Arjuna to renounce war. Along with Gandhi (2009), we might expect Śaṅkara to claim that, “perfect renunciation is impossible without perfect observation of ahimsa” (p. xxiv). But this is not the route he takes. If this “existential tension is the axial core of the Gītā” (Schweig, in Rosen, 2002: viii), it bypasses Śaṅkara. One might also expect a rejection of social norms and values, but there is no such rejection. Rather than making overtly moral or social judgements of the situation, Śaṅkara makes a gnoseological one.

Before we consider Śaṅkara’s response, let us zoom in on the language of the above verse (Bh.G. 3.19). It is most significant that this verse begins with the word ‘tasmād’ (Therefore). If we look back at the previous verse(s), we might expect to

137 For a discussion of violence (hiṃsā) and non-violence (ahimsā) in the Gītā, see Rosen (2002) and Kuznetsova (2007: 43ff).
find a reason why Arjuna should not renounce his kṣatriya-dharma. However, it is not (explicitly) there. The text states:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{yas tvātma ratir eva syād ātma truptaḥ ca mānavaḥ} & \quad | \\
\text{ātmany eva ca samtuṣṭas tasya kāryaṃ na vidyate} & \quad || \\
\text{naiva tasya kṛtenārtho nākṛtieneha kaścana} & \quad | \\
\text{na cāsyā sarva bhūteṣu kaścid artha vyapāśrayaḥ} & \quad ||
\end{align*}
\]

But for a man who rejoices in the Self, is satisfied with the Self, and is content only in the Self, there is no duty to perform. For him, there is no concern with performance or non-performance of action in this world, and he has no kind of dependence at all on any objectives of beings (Bh.G. 3.17-18).

In fact, not only do these verses not explicitly supply the reason we were expecting, but they seem to be saying the complete opposite! These two verses interrupt the argument somewhat, highlighting the tension between Dharma and mokṣa. Zaehner (1973) even suggests that we might regard these two verses as a “later interpolation” (p169), but surely one needs to make such claims with care. Perhaps Davis (2005) could be accused of ignoring these verses when he stated that “Renunciation of worldly actions”, according to Krṣṇa, was “not a legitimate option” (p174). However, the issue may come down to how we interpret the “Therefore” of the verse 3.19. What Krṣṇa might be saying is this: “You, Arjuna, have now been told, not whether to fight or not fight, but how to fight. That is, fight, not with a goal in mind, not with a personal concept of the fruit, not even with a notion of the objectives of your family, but fight selflessly”. And to fight “selflessly” is to fight with no concept of individuality (ahaṁkāra), but with a concept of one “Self”, who is verily the Lord Krṣṇa. On this interpretation, Davis appears correct.

However, Śaṅkara does not see it this way. For him, the “Therefore” has a totally different meaning. Arjuna is not being told how to renounce, but not to renounce. He is being told that he is not ready for total renunciation. To make this point, Śaṅkara
needs to insert the explicit reason which he feels Kṛṣṇa made implicitly. So just before verse 3.19, Śaṅkara (Bh.G.Bh. 3.18) inserts: “You [Arjuna] are not established in this perfect realisation” (na tvam etasmin ... samyag darśane vartase).\(^{138}\) In other words, the interpretation he gives of Kṛṣṇa’s advice is something like: “If you, Arjuna, were established in the Self, then renunciation would indeed be the most reasonable option open to you, but you are not so established. Therefore, go and fight”. That is, Śaṅkara wants to say that renunciation is for those who have already renounced internally and are tired of cyclic existence (Bh.G.Bh. 15, intro). Arjuna has not renounced in his heart; he is “not trying to bring about the end of the sequence of lives” (Brodbeck, in Mascaró, 2003: xv). Nor has he seen through the delusion of his own agency. This interpretation seems consistent with the Gītā (18.59), where Kṛṣṇa accuses Arjuna of acting out of egoism (ahamkāra). That is, “Arjuna measures the legitimacy of action according to what it means to him” (Malinar, 2007: 72). As we have already discussed in Chapter 3.2, this is seen as a vice by Kṛṣṇa, one which gets in the way of right knowledge.

As also noted earlier, Śaṅkara links ahamkāra to basic ignorance (Bh.G.Bh. 7.4). As such, one with ahamkāra could not be established in brahman. Śaṅkara had already hinted at such a conclusion in an earlier verse:

```
“kuru karmaiva tasmāt tvam” iti ca jīnāna niṣṭhāsambhavam
arjunasya avadāraṇena darśayissati
```

[By his statement] “Therefore\(^{139}\), undertake action”, [the Lord] will show how Arjuna is to be excluded from steadfastness in knowledge (Bh.G.Bh. 3, intro).

\(^{138}\) There is no explicit statement in the Gītā that Arjuna is enlightened (Theodor, 2010: 45), yet the Dvaitin, Madhva, contra Śaṅkara and Rāmānuja, interpreted it that way (Chari, 2005: 4). Yet it seems clear that Arjuna was “under the delusion that the body itself is the self” (p20).

\(^{139}\) Gambhīrānanda (trans., p131) rightly notes that this verse comes from the Gītā 4.15, but the logic of “tasmād” (Therefore) could equally apply to verse 3.19.
And again:

\[ \text{prak \textit{ātma}-jñāna niṣṭhā yogyatā prāptēḥ tādarthyena karma-
yogānuṣṭānam adhikṛtena anātmajñēṇa kartavyam} \]

Before one has acquired eligibility for steadfastness in the knowledge of the Self, it is the duty of one who does not know the Self, to undertake karma-yoga for that purpose (Bh.G.Bh.3.16).

In other words, Śaṅkara seems to be saying that Arjuna would need to be enlightened \textit{before} he could externally renounce. In fact, he later states that an unenlightened person is incapable of totally renouncing (Bh.G.Bh. 18.48). This agrees with the thesis that “Jñāna … goes hand in hand with Samnyāsa” (Tiwari, 1977: 10), and disagrees with the thesis that, “For the ideal kṣatriya, the sacrifice of battle becomes a form of total renunciation” (Rosen, 2002: 20). For Śaṅkara, worldly action is always going to involve nescience, and the only true renunciation is the total renunciation of caste-based Dharma. And for that, one needs to renounce one’s sense of “I”. Action is said to be something “superimposed on the Self through ignorance” (ātmani avidyādhyāropitam) (Bh.G.Bh. 18.48), and so the call to duty is meant only for the “ignorant” (avidvāṃsaḥ) (18.66 & 3.25) and they should never relinquish it (18.48).

Thus, Śaṅkara does not demand renunciation for everyone, but is selective, and prefers that those who are less than ready for renouncing the world continue to act in accordance with their Dharma.

Now, while Arjuna may have been going through a “genuine dilemma” (Matilal, 2007: 93), he also appears to be wavering between the larger Dharmic concern (loka-
samgraha) and egoistic concerns (Bh.G. 18.59). Johnson’s (2004: 80) translation - “If, falling into such egoism ...” (yad ahaṃkāram āśritya) - truly brings this out. In the \textit{Br.U.Bh}, Śaṅkara makes a number of concessions to the need for means other than knowledge (I.iv.7), and there speaks of the need to “mature one’s knowledge of the
Self’ (ātma-jñāna paripāka) (IV.iv.7). As knowledge of the Self must be continually re-established, outer renunciation is the most favourable lifestyle (III.v.1). Therefore, in Arjuna’s case, one might expect Śaṅkara to recommend total renunciation.

However, there is something else going on in Śaṅkara’s ethics. The renouncer in the Br. U. is also a Brahmin, whereas Arjuna is a Kṣatriya (warrior prince). Within the context of the Gītā’s ethics, it is therefore Arjuna’s duty to fight (Bh.G. 2.31), even if that duty is faulty (18.48). In fact, it is part of his “own nature” (sva-bhāva) to fight (18.43), and it is futile to resist your “nature” (prakṛtiḥ) (18.59). But the notion of a caste-defining sva-bhāva seems to be in conflict with Śaṅkara’s non-dualism. In fact, Śaṅkara immediately follows his acceptance of the Gītā’s caste theory (Bh.G.Bh. 2.11) with the remark that there is no multiplicity of selves (Bh.G.Bh. 2.12).

Śaṅkara thus accepts the provisional ethics as presented herein, whist ultimately denying the multiplicity theory that underlies it. But elsewhere, Śaṅkara claims that one’s caste or one’s species is a result of past karma (B.S.Bh. II.i.34), which is beginningless (II.i.35-36), and nothing to do with Īśvara and/or ātman. It is for this

140 It is interesting to note that both the Buddha and Śāntideva were of this class. Nevertheless, whereas the renunciation of the ‘way of the warrior’ is usually attributed to Asoka, the stories of the Buddha and Śāntideva tend to focus on their renunciation of royal power, pleasure and privilege.

141 This should not be taken as a call to be “in harmony with nature” (see Malinar, 2007: 91). Hence, Torwesten (1991) suggests that we read the Gītā as somewhere between the “Prussian adherence to duty” and the “Taoist wu-wei” (p98). For a comparison with the ethics of Kant, see Mohanty (2007) and Matilal (2007).

142 Note that the notion that one has an inherent duty to act in a certain way is a much stronger form of sva-bhāva than the one mentioned in Chapter 2, where Śaṅkara spoke of a person who “naturally has the notion of being an agent and an enjoyer” (kartṛ bhoktṛ sva-bhāva vijñānavatāḥ) (Ch.U.Bh. Intro). On the notions of sva-dharma and sva-bhāva, see Olivelle (in Rosen, 2002: 99-116).

143 See Zaehner (1973: 125).

144 The Viśiṣṭādvaitin, Rāmānuja and the Dvaitin, Madhva both deny that the individuated jīva is one with paramātman; both seeing them as distinct real ontological entities (Chari, 2005: xxii).
reason also that Śāntideva (and Buddhism in general), whilst denying the ultimacy of Gods and selves, can maintain a karmic discourse which includes caste notions.

We can summarise Śaṅkara’s position as: 1) Arjuna is not established in brahman-consciousness, 2) Arjuna has not realised inner renunciation, 3) Arjuna is a warrior by caste, and 4) Arjuna must act as a warrior so long as he has failed to internally renounce his sense of “I”.

Śaṅkara thus distinguishes two types of renunciation. First, there is the (Gītā’s) renunciation of the karma-yogī, which incorporates “dedication to the Lord without hope of results [for oneself]” (iśvara samarpita rūpeṇa phala nirapekṣeṇa) (Bh.G.Bh. 5.6). For Śaṅkara, this is renunciation in a “secondary” (guṇavṛtti) or “figurative” (gauṇa) sense (Bh.G.Bh. 6.1). Then, there is the “ultimate renunciation” (saṃnyāsa pāramārthikah) for those “steadfast in the knowledge of the Supreme Self” (paramātma jñāna niṣṭhā) (Bh.G.Bh. 5.6). According to Śaṅkara, Arjuna is qualified for the former, but not for the latter.

The extension of this is that: 1) traditional ethics have their place for those who have not realised brahman as self, 2) the caste system supports such provisional ethics, and 3) this system cannot be violated by any individual unless that so-called individual has realised that he has no ultimate individuality.

And we can further judge that such an individual would be quite exceptional. This is the gist of Śaṅkara’s insistence on provisional ethics. In the Br.U.Bh, he writes:

\[
na ca nāma-rūpa vyavahāra kāle tu avivekināṃ kriyā kāraka phalādi
saṃvyavahāre nāstīti pratiṣidhyate
\]
Nor do we deny the validity, for those without discriminating knowledge, of actions with their factors and results while the relative world of name and form exists (III.v.1)

Again, in his *B.S.Bh*:

\[ \text{nayyāyam sarva pramāṇa prasiddhe loka vyavahāre anyat tattvam anādhi gamya śakyate \ 'pahrotum apavādābhāve utsarga prasiddheḥ} \]

For worldly behaviour, conforming as it does to all right means of valid knowledge, can only be denied when a different eternal order of reality is attained, such an exception aside, tradition should prevail (II.ii.31).

Individual doubt about self and ethical conduct is thus to be resolved through the denial of one’s individuality and the realisation of a higher truth. In one interpretation of the *Gītā*, this amounts to selflessly acting for the sake of God, becoming his “instrument”. Where Olivelle (1992) sees the Upaniṣads as considering individuals as “complete in themselves” (p42); in the *Gītā*, these so-called individuals are given a mere role in this new socio-cosmic theology. Their completeness ultimately lies in their true nature as ātman, but conventionally speaking, their completeness lies in their fulfilment of their duty to the Lord. That is, “Kṛṣṇa proposes to eliminate the phenomenal person by making ... his goal impersonal” (Kuznetsova, 2007: 111). Arjuna is merely granted a “brief indulgence in individualism” (Olivelle, 2002: 115) before returning to his warrior nature.

In Śaṅkara’s interpretation, the *Gītā* is consistent with the Upaniṣads in calling for the person to see the delusion of individuality (*ahamkāra*) and hence renounce society. In this sense, we might say that one “still has a fair amount of free will” (Theodor, 2010: 11). Yet, those who do not see through this delusion are provisionally advised to continue to act as if they were an agent within a *Dharmic* social structure. They are in fact compelled to act. For Śaṅkara, this is how it ought to be. That is, Śaṅkara
wanted the “vedic presumptions of varṇa and āśrama to be the foundation of lay life” (Tambiah, 1988: 318). Ultimately speaking, Kṛṣṇa is the personification of brahman, announcing his awareness of his own non-dual consciousness, and as such, for Śaṅkara, he is the great teacher of Advaita metaphysics. Provisionally, Kṛṣṇa stands as a personal God, to whom one devotes one’s actions, thus rendering them dependent on his Being. At this provisional level, Śaṅkara might accept that Kṛṣṇa is in relationship with embodied selves. This exclusive devotion is thought to weaken one’s attachment to selfish concerns. It is an act of purification. However, for Śaṅkara, such devotion could only serve as a step towards seeing the non-dual nature of brahman-consciousness and realising that worldly action is merely instrumental:

\[
kaśāya \ pattiḥ \ karmāni \ jñānaṁ \ tu \ paramā \ gatiḥ \ \mid \ kaśāye \ karme\ bhiḥ \\
pakve \ tato \ jñānaṁ \ pravartate \ ||
\]

Impurities are removed by dutiful actions, while knowledge is the supreme movement. When actions have burnt up impurities, knowledge emerges (B.S.Bh. III.iv.26).

Provisional reality is therefore a necessary ‘playing ground’ for the vast majority of beings and ideally acts as a stepping stone to the realisation of the ultimate. Within this provisional reality, Śaṅkara simply assumes the validity of the Hindu caste system. Although such social categories have no meaning in ultimate terms, Arjuna is unquestionably treated as a Kṣatriya. Beyond the gnoseological response he gives in the Gītā, Śaṅkara is unwilling to allow for a non-Brahmin to (externally) renounce, for only the male Brahmin is to be released from duty. This is clearly stated in the Br.U.Bh (IV.v.15) where both warriors and merchants are excluded from the path of the wandering mendicant. Thus, being a Kṣatriya, “Arjuna is not qualified for steadfastness in Knowledge through monasticism in the primary sense” (Gambhirānanda, 1984: 739).  

199
Again, in his non-commentarial work, Śaṅkara’s exclusions are made clear, where the pupil is defined as a pure Brahmin. Śaṅkara writes:

\[
tad idaṃ mokṣa sādhanam jñānam sādhana sādhyād anityāt sarvasmād viraktāya tyakta putra vitta lokaiṣaṇāya pratipanna paramahamsa pārivarjīyāya śamadama dayādi yuktaṇā sāstra prasiddha śīṣya guṇa sampannaṇāya śucaye brahmanāya vidhivad upasannāya śīṣyāya jāti karma vṛta vidyābhijanaṁ parikṣitāya brūyāt punah punah yāvad grahanam dṛḍhābhavati  ||
\]

The means to liberation is knowledge. It should be repeatedly explained to the pupil until firmly grasped, to one who is indifferent to everything transitory, achievable through means, and who has no desire for sons, wealth, this world or the next, who has adopted the way of the highest ascetics, who is endowed with tranquillity, self-control, compassion, etc., possessed of the qualities of a pupil, well-known from the scriptures, if he is a pure Brahmin, who approaches the teacher in the prescribed manner, and if his birth, deeds, conduct, knowledge and family have been examined (U.S. Prose, 1.2).

There is a clear social tension here. For Śaṅkara, the Brahmin male is unique in his (albeit temporary) claim to individuality, and thus only he may follow his own will in renouncing worldly activities which include so-called ritual and reproductive duties. Mohanty’s (1997b) (mis)reading of Dumont that, it is only those who have achieved mokṣa who can be classed as a “true individual” (p299), seems faulty on three accounts: 1) the decision to renounce appears the more likely candidate for the first true act of individual will, 2) when one achieves mokṣa (especially from an Advaitin view-point) one’s so-called ‘individuality’ is seen through, as indeed Mohanty later notes (p301), and 3) Dumont (1980: 274) actually speaks of the renouncer’s discomfort with his newly-discovered individuality, an individuality he tries to transcend (p276).\(^1\) It is thus the samnyāsin that Dumont has in mind. And it is this decision to renounce duty (with non-individuality in mind) that Śaṅkara denies

\(^{1}\) Of course, Dumont’s (1980: 64) distinction between theory and practice is relevant here, but I would argue that even here, the actual decision to renounce is an act of individuality, whereas the mukta becomes involved in the practical duty of passing on the teachings (see Chapter 6.2).
Arjuna. It does not, however, follow from this that Śaṅkara has “restricted enlightenment and even the aspiration to enlightenment to Brahmins”, as Olivelle (1993: 197) claims. For, as we have seen in the case of Arjuna, one can still remain on the path of karma-yoga, with the intention of “purifying the mind” (sattva śuddhi) and “acquiring knowledge” (jñāna prāpti); only later, “renouncing all ritual action” (sarva karma saṃnyāsa), and aspiring towards “steadfastness in knowledge” (jñāna niṣṭhā) (Bh.G.Bh. 5.12).¹⁴⁶

Even where Śaṅkara claims that “knowledge of the Self” (ātma-jñāna) is “exclusively the cause of the highest good” (kevalasya nihśreyasa hetutvam), and that, “steadfastness in knowledge combined with [ritual] action is illogical” (na jñāna niṣṭhā karma sahitā upapadyate) (Bh.G.Bh. 18.66); he goes on to say the Vedic injunctions have relative validity in that they “create the tendency of movement towards the indwelling Self” (pratyag ātmābhimukhyena pravṛtty upādanārthatvāt) (ibid.). That is, “Actions and attitudes contribute in changing the quality of the subject’s epistemic grasp” (Ram-Prasad, 2007: 114). Hence, Śaṅkara shows himself to be one of those renouncers who “does not deny the religion of the man-in-the-world” (Dumont, 1980: 275). The worst we can say of Śaṅkara, then, is that he “presupposes a certain state of purification as a prerequisite” (Taber, 1983: 55) for receiving and achieving brahman-knowledge. Whether this can be achieved in this life is an open question, but it is certainly open to future incarnations (see Chapter 7). So the question of whether Śaṅkara advocated the “liberation of all” (see Mohanty, 1997b: 301) is an open one.

¹⁴⁶ This is confirmed in the V.C. (11).
In what way, then, does Śaṅkara deviate from tradition-based ethics? Action, for Śaṅkara, is not only secondary to knowledge, but can get in its way. He therefore reads Kṛṣṇa’s call to “Abandon all duties” (sarva dharmān parityajya) as a call to total renunciation of all actions (Bh.G.Bh. 18.66). And for sure, if there is one verse in the Gītā that favours such a renunciatory interpretation, it is this one, even though it would “negate the entire preceding teaching” (Kuznetsova, 2007: 146). In the Upadeśa Sāhasrī, this renunciation of all actions (tyakta sarva karma sādhana) is a sign of a brahma-vid (Prose, 1.6). For Śaṅkara, a renouncer is only a renouncer if he focuses all his attention on knowing brahman, if he renounces all sense of doership; that is, if he is the highest form of renouncer, the so-called parama-hamsa. And, according to Śaṅkara, it is only the parama-hamsa who can achieve knowledge of brahman (Ch.U.Bh. VIII.xii.1).

Renunciation, then, is not an end in itself. It is not simply renunciation from, but renunciation to, that matters. Renunciation, for Arjuna, would simply have been a way of refusing to deal with the situation, and Śaṅkara would no doubt agree with Olivelle (1992) that a “renouncer who does not pursue knowledge is a false renouncer” (p79). This is confirmed by Deutsch (1973), who interprets Śaṅkara’s fourth pre-requisite for the search of brahman (B.S.Bh. I.i.1), that of ‘mumukṣutva’, as a “positive longing for freedom and wisdom” (p105). It thus seems reasonable to believe that Śaṅkara senses that Arjuna did not have the pursuit of knowledge as his motivation for renunciation.

147 The four prerequisites are: 1) discrimination between the eternal and the non-eternal, 2) dispassion for the enjoyment of fruits [of work], 3) control of the mind, and 4) a longing for liberation.
Needless to say, Śaṅkara’s principal aim is not to exclude Arjuna from qualification, but to send a louder message, that only total renunciation of this life is sufficient for true liberation. Gambhīrānanda (1984: 739), as a modern Advaitin, thus interprets the Gītā verse 18.66 as generally advocating monasticism, even though Arjuna would himself be excluded by his caste. In other words, the Gītā’s words are not necessarily meant for Arjuna’s ears. But this relies on a translation of ‘saṃnyāsena’ as “through monasticism”, the validity of which is questionable. Again, the sectarian conflict that Gambhīrānanda faces could be overcome by simply allowing the sense of renunciation to have inner meaning. Thus, Arjuna is indeed qualified to renounce all his past notions of duty, giving them up for a new form of non-attached action, grounded in steadfast devotion to Kṛṣṇa. And as Kṛṣṇa warns, only one so devoted to him can so renounce his past duties (Bh.G. 18.67). This is how Madhusūdana (16th century Advaitin), interprets the Gītā; hence, overtly disagreeing with Śaṅkara (see Marcaurelle, 2000: 199).

There is one further factor we need to consider. Marcaurelle (2000: 38) has puzzled over why Śaṅkara, in his non-commentarial work, allows for a student (brahmaṇcārin) to be taught the truth of brahman (U.S. Prose, 2.45), even though he is not a paramahamsa parivrājaka. My contention is, if we focus on the ideal type, rather than on renunciation, we will see that this student is in fact a male, Brahmin, celibate, intent on brahman-knowledge. He is already one “sick of transmigratory existence” (samsārāt nirvinṇa). Compare:

\[
na\ samsāra\ sukhasya\ gandha\ mātra\ asti\ iti\ buddhvā\ viṣaya\ mrgatṛṣṇakāyā\ indriyāṇi\ nivartayet
\]

148 This follows the interpretation of Ānandagiri. For a debate between Śaṅkara’s commentators, Madhusūdana and Ānandagiri on this issue, see Marcaurelle (2000: 198-202).
Realizing that there is not the least trace of happiness in cyclic existence, one should withdraw the organs from the objects which are comparable to a mirage (Bh.G.Bh. 5.22).

It is this total renunciation of worldly existence that Śaṅkara admires. Thus, in allowing room for such a student in his non-commentarial work, Śaṅkara is not showing the same “liberality” as the Upaniṣads (Marcaurelle, 2000: 37; Cenkner, 1983: 49), but is simply admitting that renunciation may be an inner state rather than an outer one. A celibate student with the sole desire for becoming brahman need not necessarily pass through the ritual of abandoning the way of action. He already has renunciation in his heart, especially if he is the “constant” (naiṣṭhikah) type of celibate student (brahmacārin), living in the teacher’s house for his whole life, that Śaṅkara champions (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1). Elsewhere, Śaṅkara states that knowledge can be acquired by one who has been under the vow of brahmacarya for a year (P.U.Bh., intro), and later highlights that celibacy is an especially important factor (1.2). Competent men are thus listed as celibates, forest-dwellers and monks (brahmacāri vānaprastha bhikṣuṣu) (1.16).

In contrast to such competent men, Arjuna possesses neither this inner state nor the ideal outer state of being a celibate Brahmin. To borrow Marcaurelle’s (2000: 91) terms, he fails both from the “end perspective” and the “start perspective”. Without this inner renunciation of the self, actions, even those undertaken after formal

---

149 If Upaniṣadic “liberality” implies “egalitarianism”, then we need to read this against Brian Black’s (2008) assessment that the “Upaniṣadātic self is largely restricted to Brahmins” (p27). As for the illegitimacy of reading modern concerns back into Śaṅkara, Suthren Hirst (2005) rightly states that to “foist feminist and egalitarian concerns upon him would be to misconstrue his social context” (p44). Saha’s (2009) description of Śaṅkara’s views on varṇa as “liberal” (p72) is more coherent in that he notes that one’s caste is not “intrinsic” to the jīva (ibid.), and so everyone is free to progress towards liberation (i.e. in future lives). Saha, however, claims that this attitude of Śaṅkara constituted a “great departure from tradition” (p82). For a critique of the inclusivist and egalitarian claims of Neo-Vedānta, see Halbfass (1983: 85-94) and Fort (1998: 172-185).
renunciation, would still have consequences. A person does not avoid incurring *karma* by (merely) abstaining from action (Bh.G. 3.4). One should therefore never become attached to either results of action or to inaction (2.47). But action is certainly superior to inaction (3.8a). In any case, it is a physical impossibility *not* to act, for even basic bodily sustenance requires action (3.8b). For Kṛṣṇa, what is called for is a devotional response to action in which the self is handed over to Kṛṣṇa (3.30) or *brahman* (5.10). This kind of action is “obligatory action” (*niyataṁ karma*) combining the two traditional paths (3.3 & 3.7) of action (*karma-yoga*) and knowledge (*jñāna-yoga*). Outer renunciation is ruled out as hypocritical (3.6), whilst action is sanctioned in that it originates from *brahman* (3.15). Actions maintain the world (3.20), and the best action, even if done badly, is the one that follows your own inherent duty (*sva-dharma*) (3.35), determined by your class (*varṇa*) (18.41-48), which Kṛṣṇa himself created (4.13).

For Śaṅkara, “true renunciation” is accompanied by enlightenment. More specifically, with world transcendence as its goal, true renunciation implies an ultimate understanding of self as *brahman*. As such, without the doer, caste-based duty is unnecessary, and there is the knowledge that there is no *jīva* to hand over. Outer renunciation and inner renunciation are inter-linked. Kṛṣṇa, in rejecting the Brahmanical way of the renouncer, opens the door to *bhakti* (devotion). In denying the ultimacy of *jīva*, Śaṅkara makes *bhakti* a provisional mode of operation for those unestablished in the Self. The *V.C.* went on to give *bhakti* an Advaitin gloss, by claiming that, “The seeking after one’s own true nature is what is meant by devotion”

---

150 Kṛṣṇa goes on to explain that He is *brahman*.


152 For the Viśiṣṭādvaitin, Rāmānuja, *bhakti-yoga* is the main theme of the *Gītā* (Chari, 2005: xx).
(sva svarūpānusandhānaṃ bhaktir ity abhidhīyate) (31). But Śaṅkara seems to accept the bhakti of the Gītā as a stepping-stone to dropping the false sense of “I”. As such, neither Śaṅkara nor later Advaita were ever in true conflict with India’s most influential ethical text.

What we have shown, by analysing his response to the Gītā, is that, despite all his talk of ultimate truth, Śaṅkara still falls back on the concept of class, of duty, of Dharma. Even so, he never willingly embraces this new type of “renouncer” that Kṛṣṇa so glorifies. Whilst the Gītā claims that the devotee “attains the highest” (paramāpnoti) through unattached action (Bh.G. 3.19); Śaṅkara maintains that “Knowledge of the Self” (ātma jñāna) is “exclusively the cause of the highest good” (kevalasya niḥśreyasa hetvam) (Bh.G.Bh. 18.66), the Advaitin view he holds in his Upaniṣadic commentaries (e.g. T.U.Bh. II.i.1 & II.viii.5).

Nevertheless, the partial alignment of Advaita with the ethics of the Gītā has continued right up until the modern age, with Śaṅkarācārya Jayendra (b. 1934) stating that a Śaṅkarācārya must care for the “welfare of the world”, whilst a ‘mere’ jīvanmukta, like Ramana Maharshi (1879-1950), need not (Fort, 1998: 167). According to Fort (ibid.), Śaṅkarācārya Bharati Tirtha (b.1951) specifically relates his ethical outlook with the Gītā, especially where Kṛṣṇa states that though he has no need for action he still acts for the benefit of the world (Bh.G. 3.22-24). My argument is that Śaṅkara exclusively offers the brahman-knower as a teacher, which is of course the origin of the title, Śaṅkarācārya.

While it is true that Śaṅkara argues that “injunctions of dharma have no force” on the saṃnyāsin (Perrett, 1998: 57) and that he is “beyond the life-stages” (atyāśramin)
(Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1); it is not so obvious, when it comes to the need for a teacher, whether “mokṣa precludes action, and hence dharma”, as Perrett (1998: 56) believes. In my opinion, the passing on of knowledge might well be seen as acting within the framework of Dharma. Thus Olivelle’s (1986) assertion that a jīvan-mukta is “beyond dharma” (p18) may also need re-assessing. I would argue that Śaṅkara, though little concerned with ‘universal responsibility’, was most concerned with the continuation of the lineage of brahman-knowers. As with the Buddha, this passing on of salvific knowledge became his sva-dharma:

\[ \text{dṛḍhagrīhīḥ hi vidyā ātmanah śreyase santatyai ca bhavati |} \\
\text{vidyāśantatiś ca prānyanugrahāya bhavati naur iva nadiṁ tīrṣoḥ |} \\
\]

For when knowledge is firmly grasped it is conducive to one’s own welfare and to continuity. And the continuity of knowledge is helpful to beings, like a boat to one wishing to cross a river (U.S. Prose, 1.3).

As such, just as the Buddhist monk need not become socially isolated, so Śaṅkara was no “isolationist” (Tiwari, 1977: 127). Nevertheless, Śaṅkara’s mission, like the Buddha’s, was soteriological rather than social. He therefore asks that his lineage and teaching mission be continued by a certain type of person. This is in line with the Upaniṣads, where the teachings ought only to be given to the eldest son or to a “worthy disciple” (C.U. III.xi.5). Brian Black (2008) has noticed that in the early Upaniṣads, the “lineages from teacher to student became as important as family pedigrees” (p53). Thus, we might need to qualify Olson’s (1997) assertion that the renouncer is “unconcerned with social lineage” (p65), for it is the renouncer-cum-teacher who verily “sustains and transmits lineage” (Cenkner, 1983: 37-38). But if this is so, might we not question why Cenkner also claims that Śaṅkara has “renounced normal society” (p38). The thing is, the student comes to the teacher from that “normal society” and the teacher is therefore obliged to be involved in social correctness. For, according to Śaṅkara (U.S. Prose, 1.2), among the things that
a teacher must check before giving the teachings to a potential pupil are his birth (jātī), his profession (karma) and his family (janaīh). The student is also assumed to come to the teacher with a keen sense of caste and lineage (jāty anvaya) (1.16). This does not sound like someone who is oblivious to normal social norms. Śaṅkara is well aware of social norms. His additional move then is to shift the teaching away from hereditary concerns, thus making way for a lineage, not just of Advaitin teachers, but of celibate Advaitin teachers. We might note then that in the V.C. the guru tells the pupil that he has revealed the secret of brahman to him “as to one’s own son” (sva-suta vad) (575). The Advaitin teacher essentially usurps the seeker’s real father, and may also rightly be called “father” (pitā). This is so, because “through knowledge, he produces a [new] birth in brahman” (brahma šārīrasya vidyayā janayitṛtvān) (P.U.Bh. 6.8).

Having given up the false sense of individuality; the teacher, in passing on his knowledge to a worthy pupil, truly acts selflessly. This specific form of altruistic action does not go against Śaṅkara’s claim that action does not lead to liberation, for here the liberation in question is not the teacher’s and the action involved is both an ethically selfless and metaphysically self-less one. Proceeding, as it does, from a self-less person, it is therefore a non-activity. As Śaṅkara states:

\[
\text{viduṣā kriyamāṇaṃ karma paramārthato `karmaiva, tasya}
\text{nīskriyātma darśana saṃpanna tvāt |}
\]

Ultimately speaking, actions done by a man of knowledge are in fact non-actions, since he is endowed with the realization of the actionless self (Bh.G.Bh. 4.20).

Thus, Śaṅkara need not be taken as contradicting his own thesis that, “steadfastness in knowledge combined with [ritual] action is illogical” (18.66). However, we can question Śaṅkara’s insistence that, “the renouncer acts merely for survival purposes”
(saṃnyāsī jīvāna mātrārtha ceṣṭāḥ) (4.19), for this takes no account of his other-regarding activities, a necessary facet of the teacher’s life. Thus, Mādhavānanda (trans. 2003: 167) notes two external activities of the brahman-knower: “satisfying the physical needs” and “teaching enquirers”. Majithia (2007) thus predicts that Śaṅkara would not have denied that a brahman-knower “lives, breathes, eats, and even helps others attain enlightenment” (p245). It is my contention that the latter of these activities is a case of what I call “constructive altruism”.

One major reason why the ethics of Śaṅkara have been so neglected by scholars is that he downplays them in order to avoid the accusation of action, so strong was his wish to distance himself from those who followed ritual tradition. That is, Śaṅkara far too often over-states the mutual independence of knowledge and action. Nevertheless, even Śaṅkara, like Śāntideva, could not avoid the notion of a paternal pedagogue, acting solely for the benefit of others. Thus, in the Bh.G.Bh., he follows the claim that the renouncer “does not engage in actions” (karmani na pravartate) with this admission:

\[
\text{saḥ kutaścit nimitṭāt karma parityāgaśasambhave sati karmanī tat phale ca sangaraḥitatayā sva pravojanābhāvāt loka samgrahārthe pūrvavat karmanī pravrītto 'pi naiva kimci karoti, jñānāgni dagdha karmatvāt tadāyaṃ karma akarmaiva sampadyate}
\]

But if, for some reason, it becomes impossible to abandon action, and he, for the sake of preventing people from going astray, and without attachment to the results due to the absence of any personal desire, were to engage in actions as he did before [realisation], he surely does nothing at all. His actions are ‘non-actions’ because of his [past] karma having been burnt up by the fire of wisdom (B.G.Bh. 4.19).

153 Of course, some say that Indian Ethics in general have been neglected by Western academia (Bilimoria & Prabhu, 2007: vii).
To give people spiritual guidance and thus help “prevent people from going astray” (loka samgraha) is Śaṅkara’s way of upholding Kṛṣṇa’s Dharma.\(^{154}\) Thus, Cenkner (1983) is wrong to claim that, “Altruistic and selfless activity is merely a prerequisite for knowledge” (p72). In fact, I would say that, for Śaṅkara, altruistic and selfless activity only truly starts when one has the supreme knowledge. For, while knowledge may “destroy the notion of doership” (kārakāṇy upamṛdnāti) (U.S. Metric, 1.14), it does not and cannot prevent the doing. It is simply that this doing is done by one who has completely seen through the delusion of self-agency. In this sense, knowledge does indeed affect action. Yet, this action of the brahma-vid is hardly done to contribute to the maintenance of cosmic order. Rather, it is aimed at the liberation from that very cosmos.

This selfless person of Śaṅkara’s is more than just “one who sees inaction in action, and action in inaction” (karmay akarma yah paśyet, akarmanī ca karma yah) (Bh.G. 4.18a), he is a type unto himself. He is a type drawn by equating the Gītā’s sthita-prajña (man of steady wisdom) with a saṃnyāsin (Bh.G.Bh. 2.55-56), and the saṃnyāsin with the brahma-vid (2.59), and the brahma-vid with the jīvan-mukta (5.24 & 6.27; B.S.Bh. I.i.4). He is thus one who has attained “identification with brahman” (brahma nirvānam) in the autumn years of this very life (anta kāle) (Bh.G.Bh. 2.72).\(^{155}\) This brahma-vid is a pure Brahmin male, a celibate, parama-hāṃsa ascetic (U.S. Prose, 1.2), and “with the sole aim of helping others” (kevala parānugraha prayojana), “he wishes to makes use of knowledge” (vidyopayogārthīṃ) (1.6). Yet, like the bodhisattva (BCA. 1.35), he does all of this effortlessly, “without attachment

\(^{154}\) ‘Dharma’ derives from the verbal root ‘dhr’, meaning: ‘to preserve’, ‘to maintain’, ‘to fulfil a duty’, ‘to draw the reins tight’, etc. (Monier-Williams, 2002: 519).

\(^{155}\) Both the Bhāmāṭī and the Vivaraṇa Schools agree that the jīvan-mukta is equivalent to the Gītā’s sthita-prajña (Roodurmun (2002: 235)).
to the results” (phale ca saṅgarahitayā) (Bh.G.Bh. 4.19). By passing on the knowledge of brahman to others, and by reconstructing their selfhood for soteriological purposes, his actions may rightly be called “constructive altruism”. Nevertheless, his vision is transcendental rather than social, his sole objective, to bring his disciples to the vision of brahman.

- **Case 2: Śāntideva**

Both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva see themselves as monks. Both come from traditions where renunciation was seen as a viable option. In fact, Buddhism began as the renunciatory religion par excellence. Nevertheless, by the 8th century, the Mahāyāna’s stress on the validity of lay practice would clearly be imposing itself on the tradition. Celibacy would no longer express the “totality” of the monk’s life. Yet, Harvey (2000: 92) has noted that, “while the Bodhisattva-path gives an increased scope for lay practice, the monastic life is still highly regarded”, citing Śāntideva in his defence. But the argument should not be seen as simply one between monks and laity. In response to Lamotte’s theory that the Mahāyāna arose amongst the laity, Williams (2009) has argued that, “Doctrinal innovation in Indian Buddhism was almost entirely the concern of monks” (p26). He also argues that, in India, most religious change was initiated by Brahmins and renouncers (p24).

Unlike Śaṅkara (and Nāgārjuna), Śāntideva was not a Brahmin, but he was a renouncer. Yet he was a renouncer who had taken a vow to benefit all beings, and most beings, humans anyway, were not to be found in the forest. Now, we have
already commented that Śāntideva did not write the *Compendium* in a forest, and have qualified Dayal’s (1970) claim about the later Mahāyāna reverting to the old ideal of celibacy and forest-life (Chapter 3.2). Nevertheless, Śāntideva can at times appear quite radical in his asceticism, which includes not only chastity, but vegetarianism (Ś.S. 131-134).\(^{156}\) He tells us that one must give up the society of householders and make one’s home in the forest (Ś.S. 46 & 106-107). What we need to do now then is to see how Śāntideva, the renouncer, deals with the question of lay ethics. We need to see how he reacts to the Mahāyāna ideal of “maintaining close contact with the masses” (Mitomo, 1991: 15).

Let us begin with the (2\(^{nd}\) century) *Vimalakīrti-Nirdeśa Sūtra*, which Sponberg described as a “proto-Madhyamaka” text (in Keown & Prebish, 2007: 802). This ‘early’ Mahāyāna sūtra prides itself on its radical break with Śrāvaka Buddhism, and is severely critical of monasticism. The hero is provocatively portrayed as a lay practitioner (*upāsaka*) who practices his skilful-means (*upāya-kauśalya*) in bars and brothels. Surprisingly, Śāntideva does not shy away from the *Vimala*, acknowledging that male *bodhisattvas* “practice enjoyment among the sexual” (Ś.S. 325) and female *bodhisattvas* “become a courtesan to draw men” (326). The theory that sex may be used as a skilful means to benefit others is also found in his discussion of the *Upāyakauśalya* (*Skill in Means*) *Sūtra* (Ś.S. 167), where the youthful (*māṇavakah*) seventh-stage *bodhisattva*, Jyoti, (compassionately) allows a woman to ravish him after 42,000 years of celibacy! So Śāntideva appears willing to condone such activities and to accept the authority of such sūtras even though he equally stresses the monastic life. It seems that he would agree with Siderits (2007b) that the wisdom of

\(^{156}\) With regard to Keown’s thesis (see Chapter 2), contrast Aristotle’s position that “all animals must have been made by nature for the sake of men” (Politics, I.8, trans. Barker, p23).
the likes of Vimalakīrti makes “rules of thumb unnecessary” (p294). But it is plainly
the case that such teachings are not for everyone. And here we need also pay attention
to Clayton’s (2006) twist on virtue ethics, whereby she states that it is the “character
of the virtuous person that generates the norm” (p104). This would amount to the
claim that it is because Vimalakīrti is Vimalakīrti that he can do as he pleases.

Nevertheless, we should not conclude from this that desire (rāga) is spoken of as a
“virtue” by Śāntideva, as Keown (2001: 226) claims. In fact, Śāntideva takes rāga to
be a transgression (āpatti), just a lesser one than hatred (dveṣa) (Ś.S. 164). That being
said, ethical ambiguities do abound in the Compendium. For example, while
acknowledging the higher ethics of householders like Vimalakīrti, it also states that
the bodhisattva’s objective is to release the whole world from the “bonds and cravings
of the household life” (grha bandhana trṣṇā) (Ś.S. 330). Such an exemplary one is
described as desireless (niṣkama) and a follower of the “ten ways of [right] conduct”
(daśa carya). It is uncertain whether this refers to the ten novice vows (daśa śīlāni) or
the ten wholesome actions (daśa kuśalāḥ karmapathāḥ). To my knowledge, he only
mentions the former once, referring to them as “daśa śiksāpadāni” (Ś.S. 174) and
comparing followers of these to those who follow either the five precepts (pañca
śiksāpadāni) or the 400 bodhisattva precepts (bodhisattva saṃvaram
caturvaraśiksāpadaśataṃ). In contrast, references to the daśa kuśalāḥ karmapathāḥ
are found throughout the Compendium. Now while he states elsewhere (Ś.S. 13) that
following the ten wholesome actions leads to Buddhahood (daśābhi kuśalaiḥ karma
pathhair buddhatvam), he also describes the benefits of supporting lay disciples
(upāsakānāṃ) who follow this path (Ś.S. 87). So it is clear that one need not
denounce the household life to follow this path. Whichever way we read ‘daśa
carya’, the bodhisattva contradicts it by manifesting as a dancer, a musician, a king,
even a thief (Ś.S. 330-331). For example, theft is second in the list of both the novice vows\textsuperscript{157} and the \textit{daśa-akuśalāḥ karmapathāḥ}, a classic list of ten unwholesome actions.\textsuperscript{158} And in fact, Śāntideva not only cites this latter list (Ś.S. 60, 170 & 173), he explains in explicit detail the dire consequences of each unwholesome act (Ś.S. 69-75) as well as offering a worst case (\textit{agra}) version of the list (Ś.S. 171-172). Furthermore, enjoying music and dance goes against the seventh of the ten precepts of a novice monk. Not to mention that the \textit{Compendium} advises the \textit{bodhisattva} to shun all interaction with kings (Ś.S. 47), with dancers (Ś.S. 48), indeed, with all house-holders (Ś.S. 52). We are putting it mildly then, when we say that Śāntideva maintains an ambiguous position with regard to society and right conduct.

There are two hermeneutical strategies we could adopt to explain this phenomenon. Either he does not agree with all the scriptures he quotes in the \textit{Compendium}, or else, he suits his ethics according to the relative level of the practitioner. Considering that we can also observe such opposing domains of discourse in his \textit{BCA}, we can safely assume he is doing the latter.\textsuperscript{159} So, on the one hand, we have the commencing-\textit{bodhisattva} who requires an ascetic ethic and should live a solitary existence; on the other hand, we have an advanced \textit{bodhisattva} who ought to use his skilful means to their fullest, mingling with all levels of society. It is due to the acceptance of such gradualism that Śāntideva condones the teaching that:

\textsuperscript{157} The ten vows are to refrain from: 1) killing, 2) theft, 3) sexual misconduct, 4) lying, 5) intoxication, 6) eating after midday, 7) singing, dancing, playing music or attending entertainment programs, 8) wearing perfume, cosmetics and decorative accessories, 9) sitting on high chairs and sleeping on luxurious beds, and 10) accepting money.

\textsuperscript{158} The ten unwholesome actions are: 1) killing, 2) theft, 3) sexual misconduct, 4) lying, 5) slander, 6) harsh speech, 7) gossip, 8) covetousness, 9) malevolence, and 10) wrong views (Ś.S. 69-75). For a Pāli reference, see: M.N.iii.45-53 (trans. Nāṇamoli & Bodhi, 2001: 913ff). For a Mahāyāna source, see the \textit{Avatamsaka Sūtra} (trans. Cleary, 1993: 487 & 1264).

\textsuperscript{159} Of course, this does not exclude the possibility that he does disagree with some sections of some of the scriptures he quotes. However, as a working premise, I have assumed that Śāntideva’s two texts do in fact represent his ideals.
Those bodhisattvas who lack skilful means are afraid of transgressing through desire, but those in possession of skilful means fear transgressing through hatred, not through desire (Ś.S. 164-165).

The “sine qua non of enlightenment” (Keown, 2001: 226), then, is not rāga, per se, but non-fear of acting on it, or the ability to “remain undisturbed” by it (Powers, 2008: 212). The lifestyle of the commencing-bodhisattva is summed up thus, “He should keep to the domain of conduct of non-union and purity” (ācāra gocaraḥ rakṣet asamsṛṣṭah sucir bhavet) (Ś.S. 47). This beautifully brings together both the Indian etymology of “celibate” (brahmacarya), as relating to the student (brahmacārin) and the Western etymology, as relating to being alone (Lat. caelebs) (see Olson, 2008: 5). The fact that this domain (gocaraḥ) should not be kept up indefinitely is immediately confirmed in the Compendium, where a “false” or “evil” ‘friend’ (pāpa mitra) is said to be one who tells the bodhisattva to work when he should be meditating and to meditate when he should be involved in action (Ś.S. 50). In order to indicate Śāntideva’s ascetic views on the passions (kāmānām), Powers (2008: 213) offers the following verses from the BCA (translation mine):

\[
na śastraṃ na viṣaṇ nāgnir na prapāto na vairiṇaḥ  ||
kāmānām upamānāṃ yānti narakādi vyathā smṛteḥ  ||
evam udvijā kāmebhyo viveke janayed ratiṃ  ||
kalahāyaśa śūnyāsu śāntāsu vanabhūmiṣu  ||
\]

No sword, no poison, no fire, no precipice, no enemies can compare with passions when one remembers the torments of hell, etc. Thus, one should recoil from the passions and generate delight in solitude, in tranquil forests, empty of strife and trouble (i.e. BCA. 8.84-85).

However, this only gives half the story. It is in the Compendium where we find the other half, where we see just how influential the understanding of ultimate truth is to
the ethics of the bodhisattva. It comes midway through Chapter 8 on the purification of misdeeds (pāpa śodhanam) and follows a lengthy discussion of the ten unwholesome actions. Here, the ethical thesis suddenly takes a radical turn (Ś.S. 167ff). Śāntideva here tells us that advanced bodhisattvas “may neglect the rules of conduct” (śikṣāṃ nikṣipet) if they should see (paśyet) greater advantage for beings (adhikaṃ sattvārtha). This gains an epistemological basis when he claims that “misdeeds can be purified through a conviction of emptiness” (śūnyatādhimuktyā ‘pi pāpa śuddhir bhavati) (Ś.S. 171).

So while forest-life and seclusion are certainly praised (BCA. 8.85-88), one should not get too comfortable in this life-style. One should not become indifferent to learning, nor to compassionate activity (Ś.S. 50). Hence, Śāntideva’s ethics are not simply gradualist; they also contain over-lapping realms of discourse. The bodhisattva’s vow to save (trātum) all beings is there even at the ascetic stage. The non-self doctrine is there even at the stage of activity. In other words, the valid reasons to be active and the valid reasons to be passive are in constant tension.

But what then of the divisions and distinctions that all of these moves imply? How can they be maintained by a Mādhyamika who claims that all is empty? For example, the Pāli Abhidhamma speaks of two types of sexual material phenomena (bhāvarūpa): the faculty of maleness (purisattam) and the faculty of femaleness (itthittam) (Vm. 14.58). Whilst it also claims that the terms “man” (purisa) and “woman” (itthi) are only conventionally (sammuti) valid (Bodhi, 2006: 26), the Buddha is said to have established a fourfold assembly (parisā), made up of male and female monastics and a male and female laity. The Vinaya (monastic code) was drawn up under such an assumed categorisation. This assumption of conventional categories is based on the
further assumption of the aggregates (skandhā) of form (rūpa) and consciousness (vijñāna). Not only does Śāntideva follow traditional Buddhist metaphysics in denying ultimacy to the terms “man” and “woman”, he also claims that all aggregates are unreal (avastu) (BCA. 9.96b). Men, women and aggregates are equal in being empty. As such, he appears to leave himself no basis whatsoever for the categories which the Vinaya takes as its starting point. I will deal with the issue of gender in Chapter 7.2. Here, I will focus on the issue of conventional ethics.

Śāntideva is well aware of the ethical problem posed by the denial of the aggregates. In the mouth of a Buddhist “realist” (perhaps a Sautrāntika), Śāntideva poses himself the problem: “If consciousness does not exist, there’s no evil in killing an illusory-person” (māyā-puruṣa ghātādau cittābhāvān na pāpakāṁ) (BCA. 9.11a). If there are no aggregates, there is no consciousness (vijñāna/citta). If there is no consciousness, then rebirth would be impossible. If rebirth is impossible, this form (rūpa) belongs to no one. And, anyway, if there are no aggregates, then form is also an illusion. Thus, killing this person would not be of any account. It would be like “killing” a man created by a magician.\[160\]

In his Madhyamaka defence, Śāntideva turns the doubter’s challenge around. For him, believing that you are a person, with your own consciousness, is the cause of ‘morality’ and ‘immorality’. He thus replies: “Rather, merit and demerit arise with the illusory consciousness” (citta māyā samete tu pāpa puṇya samud bhavaḥ) (9.11b). A similar quote from the Compendium may help here; “Where there is mind, there is

\[160\] The likeness to the ethical problem of the Bhāgavad Gītā, presented by Kapstein (2001: 41) as “to slay a body is not to slay a person”, should not go unnoticed. On the value of the ‘person’ in the Gītā, see Sutton (2002). On Arjuna’s arguments against Krṣṇa’s evaluation, see Sen (2000).
virtue and vice. Where mind is not, there is no virtue or vice” (*yatra cittaṁ tatra guṇa
doṣāḥ | nāsti niścittatāyāṃ guṇa doṣāḥ*) (Ś.S. 122). This would seem to put to death any notion that Mahāyāna Buddhism could be called a Virtue Ethics. However, it would also seem to imply a classic “transcendency” thesis (see Chapter 2).

There is an inherent tension in this view. According to Śāntideva, those who amass merit (*puṇya*) are those possessed of knowledge (Ś.S. 4). Also, the *bodhisattva* needs a mass of merit in order to benefit all beings. He prays:

```
kadopalambha dṛṣṭibhyo deśayiṣyāmi śūnyatām     |
śamvṛty ānupalambhena puṇya sambhāram ādarāt     ||
```

When, with this merit accumulated, will I respectfully teach this emptiness, through conventions, without projection, to those whose views are characterized by projection? (BCA. 9.167)

That is, the *bodhisattva* “must try to eliminate factors of reification without destroying confidence in persons, karma, and so forth” (Newland, 1999: 13). But if the *bodhisattva* is to gain merit without projection or reification, then he must do it with a non-deluded consciousness. But if this non-deluded consciousness is not *their* consciousness, then how does it accrue to *them*? Indeed, when faced with such a question (from a virtual Yogācārin), Śāntideva simply reverses the question. The question is this: “When even false perception no longer exists, by what is illusion perceived?” (*yadā na bhrāntir apy asti māyā kenopalabhyate*) (BCA. 9.15b). This question makes more sense when placed alongside a later verse, where we find Śāntideva debating with the Sāṃkhya School. Here he argues that consciousness is not a ‘thing’, but more like a moment:

```
ajānānāṃ yadi jñānāṃ kāṣṭāṃ jñānāṃ prasajyate     |
tenāsaṃnihītā jñeyāṃ jñānāṃ nāstīti niścayaḥ     ||
```

If the non-perception of something is “consciousness”, then it follows that a piece of wood is [equally] consciousness. This proves that there is
That is, on the Madhyamaka account, consciousness can only arise when there is something there to be conscious of. So the Yogācārin’s question (above) can now be read as asking the Madhyamaka: when a bodhisattva no longer has a deluded consciousness, and if consciousness only arises in dependence on (illusory) objects, how does he perceive at all?

As we have already noted (Chapter 2), Śāntideva will get around this issue by demanding an occasional voluntary entrance into a slightly delusional mode of consciousness, whilst denying the ultimacy of that consciousness. In other words, he demands that the bodhisattva flicker between domains, deliberately accepting the illusion to be real. This will be more fully examined in Chapter 6.1. Basically speaking, Śāntideva advises the bodhisattva to maintain a provisional view of the world which includes a provisional view of objects and karma. Hence, in this world, “happiness and suffering are the result of action” (karmaṇaḥ sukhā duḥkhe ca) (BCA. 9.122a). This is in line with classical Hindu and Buddhist ethics and resists the “transcendency” thesis.

In context, the ethical compromise allows him to share common ground with the Hindu virtual debater. But the compromise stretches much further when a voluntary delusion is taken on, allowing him to remain in samsāra, and thus providing the basis for the continuation of a traditional ethics. For Śāntideva, in denying that external objects exist at all (BCA. 9.16), the Yogācāra leave no ground for ethics to take place (BCA. 9.28) (see Chapter 4.1). Likewise, Śāntideva will be forced into admitting that if beings are ultimately non-existent, then there are in fact no players within the
ethical sphere (BCA. 9.75). We should therefore take Clayton’s (2006) claim that the need for morality, for Śāntideva, is “ultimately an illusion” (p97) in its total context, which, on my reading, includes the need for a voluntary delusion (BCA. 9.75-76). And, as already conceded, this delusion also opens the way to demerit (pāpa) and vice (doṣa). Thus, karma continues to be accumulated by the continuum (BCA. 9.72).

This means that the renunciation stage of the commencing-bodhisattva is paramount, a practice which sees morality (śīla) and meditation (samādhi) go hand-in-hand (Ś.S. 121), culminating in the view of emptiness. Hence, one should realise (darśinaḥ) the emptiness of all existents (sarva bhāva śūnyatā), but “without giving up the practical morality” (caryāyā aparītyāgena) of the bodhisattva (Ś.S. 117). Hence, the bodhisattva is in a position to choose when to act and when to remain aloof.

Now Goodman (2009: 89ff), as part of his consequentialist thesis, thus talks of Śāntideva’s ethics as “balancing” the pros and the cons of an action. But I am not convinced that ‘choosing’ requires ‘balancing’. The only time I have noticed true balancing in the Compendium is when the question of whether to give to another bodhisattva is raised (Ś.S. 144), whereby the giver is “supposed to measure the relative level of skilfulness of himself and the recipient, and their respective capacities to help others” (Clayton, 2006: 144). A clearer explanation is given in the BCA on the question of bodily sacrifice:

sad dharma sevakaṁ kāya mitar artham na pīḍayet |
evam eva hi sattvānāmāśāmāśu prapūrayet ||
tyajen na jīvitaṁ tasmaṁ aśuddhe karunāśaye |
tulyāśaye tu tat tyājyam ittham na parihīyate ||

The body is the servant of the True Dharma. One should not harm it for an insignificant benefit. For it is the only means available for one to quickly fulfil the needs of sentient beings. Therefore, one should not sacrifice one’s life for someone whose compassion is not as pure.
But for someone whose compassion is comparable, one should relinquish it. That way, there is no loss (BCA. 5.86-87).

A commencing-bodhisattva then, according to Śāntideva’s rule, should not, for example, give his body to save a starving animal (Ś.S. 51), despite apparent teachings to the contrary. So, in reading the following verse, we need to keep in mind that this is not for all bodhisattvas:

\[
evan\ par\text{ārtham} \ kṛtvāpi \ na \ mado \ na \ ca \ vismayah \ | \\
ātmānam \ bhoyāyitvaiva \ phalāśā \ na \ ca \ jāyate \ |\ |
\]

Though acting in this way for the good of others, there is neither exhilaration nor pride. Even when giving oneself [to animals] as food, the desire for [karmic] reward does not arise (BCA. 8.116).

A commencing-bodhisattva will not have seen deeply enough into emptiness, having yet to reach the first bhūmi (see Pelden, 2007: 190). They have yet to understand the dream-like quality of all phenomena. Nor have they developed the wisdom that fully understands the consequences of their actions (see Gyatso, 1994: 160). So the so-called “frightening extremism of Buddhist ethics” (Goodman, 2009: 52) may only find expression on very rare occasions. The gradualism of Mahāyāna ethics is perfectly brought out by Śāntideva:

\[
ādau \ śākādi \ dāne \ ‘pi \ niyojayati \ nāyakah \ | \\
tat \ karoti \ kramāt \ paścād \ yat \ sva \ māṃsāny \ api \ tyajet \ |\ |
\]

At the beginning [of the path] the guide encourages the giving away of vegetables and the like. Later on, by degrees, one is even able to give away one’s flesh (BCA. 7.25).

Of course, in verses 5.86-87 (above), there is the implication that the commencing-bodhisattva may well give his life for another bodhisattva who happens to possess even greater compassion. It is thus problematic to take Śāntideva’s ethics as being “agent-neutral” or as a general ethics of “balancing” (see Goodman, 2009: 97-98). First, Śāntideva is explicitly against any act of balancing where he himself would
bring harm to somebody else. He writes, “May I never be the cause of harm to another” (anarthaḥ kasyacin mā bhūnmālambya kadacana) (BCA. 3.14b). One must assume that the personal tone of this verse is due to the fact that he never saw himself as someone who could do the kind of “balancing” calculations necessary for pure act-consequentialism. Śāntideva tells us that the essential meaning (piṇḍārtha) of the Compendium, that which should “always be kept in the heart-mind of the bodhisattva” (bodhisattvena manasā nityaṁ dhārayitavyaḥ), is that “one should not harm” (na nāśayet) others (Ś.S. 127). This follows the admonition that a bodhisattva must not conduct himself “like those who kill” (vadhaka sadṛśena) (Ś.S. 125).

Remember, even bodhisattvas of skilful-means still fear (bibhyati) breaking the Vinaya code through acts which pertain to hatred (dveṣa) (Ś.S. 164-165). Second, verses BCA. 5.86-87 are quite the opposite of a universal ethics. A bodhisattva is a type apart, he is not “merely one individual among many” (see Nagel below), but has a worth based on his relative compassion. This is confirmed by the statement that a bodhisattva “can only be brought to ruin by the sin of defaming another bodhisattva” (Ś.S. 85). To borrow Gethin’s (1998: 29) phrase regarding the Buddha, the bodhisattva is “sui generis”. Indeed, it is from the bodhisattvas that Buddhas arise (Ś.S. 86). Now, the notion that a bodhisattva may give his life for a more advanced bodhisattva may appear at first glance to be a virtue ethics, but even Clayton (2006: 109) admits that this logic, although based on the relative virtues of compassion, is in fact consequentialist. The logic seems to be that a bodhisattva with greater compassion can (and will) do greater good, and therefore has more ‘right’ to survive. It is difficult to say whether or not this involves a “hedonistic calculus” (de Silva, 2007: 231). It is certainly a form of “weighing consequences” (Clayton, 2006: ...
but they are consequences that only involve harm to one’s own body, not to another. To repeat:

\[
\begin{align*}
\textit{bahūnām eka duḥkhena yadi duḥkhaṃ vigacchati} & | \\
\textit{utpādyam eva tad duḥkhaṃ sadayena parātmanoh} & ||
\end{align*}
\]

If the suffering of many disappears through the suffering of one, then that suffering must definitely be made to arise by one with compassion for oneself and for others (BCA. 8.105).

On this altruistic account, the body is to be simultaneously protected and forsaken:

\[
\begin{align*}
\textit{tasmān mayānapekṣena kāyas tyakto jagad dhite} & | \\
\textit{ato ‘yaṃ bahu doṣo ‘pi dhāryate karma bhāṇḍavat} & ||
\end{align*}
\]

Therefore, disregarding myself, I forsake this body for the benefit of the world. For this reason, though it has many faults, I endure it as an instrument of work (BCA. 8.184).

Yet one should never forget the explicit gradualism in Buddhist ethics, which means that there are few guidelines which apply to all subjects. So this ethical discourse should not be allowed to spill over into domains which do not involve other bodhisattvas. Hence, if Buddhism ever truly “universalized” karma (Gombrich, 2009: 44), the bodhisattva-ideal reversed it to a form of agent-dependency. And this, despite the fact that they claim the agent has no ultimate existence.

Interestingly, apart from the actions of a bodhisattva, Śāntideva has very little to say about conventional ethics. This is surprising given that he offers his Compendium (Ś.S. 1) to all those of “like elements” (sama dhātu). Despite this apparent universality, his focus is almost exclusively on either: 1) the compassionate activity of the bodhisattva, or 2) the renunciation stage as a necessary means to such activity. Thus, Paul Williams’ “like-minded friends” (in Crosby & Skilton, 1995: xxvi) gives a more accurate characterisation of his target audience. His main contribution to lay ethics comes under the umbrella of faith (śraddhā). He thus makes the overtly
religious claim that, “In a faithless man, pure conduct does not arise” (aśrāddhasya manuṣyasya śuklo dharmo na rohati) (Ś.S. 5). This is even less inclusive than it sounds, for he also makes the more controversial claim that one without devotion specifically to the Buddha is of “evil mind” (pāpa mati) (Ś.S. 54). It would seem then, that for Śāntideva, one who does not follow the “Compendium of Conduct” (śikṣa vrata) is simply immoral by default. A discussion of non-Buddhist ethics is therefore futile.

Buddhist monastic ethics receive rather more coverage. It should be noted then that the Vinaya should not be disregarded by a bodhisattva just because he is following the Mahāyāna (Ś.S. 61 & 67). Most of the discussion on monastic ethics surrounds what we might call etiquette, especially that of alms-collection (Ś.S. 127-135). This includes the condemnation of meat-eating (131-135), a Mahāyāna innovation which Śāntideva traces back to the (4th century?) Lankāvatāra Sūtra (Ś.S. 131). This is followed by a discussion of the correct use of medicine, robes, accommodation and protective charms (134-143). Elsewhere, there is also a special section on the conduct code of the so-called “serving monk” (vaiyāvṛtyakara bhikṣu) who acts as a kind of errand-boy and door-keeper for other monks, as well as dealing with the saṅgha’s finances (Ś.S. 55-56). The frightening consequences of their misdeeds are listed herein (56-59).

Of course, monastic servants were “taken for granted” even in the Buddha’s time (Gombrich, 1988: 102), and in Sri Lanka, “monastic slaves” were bought with donations specific to that cause (p162). This seems to argue against Thapar’s (1988)

---

161 Of course, vegetarianism can also be found in the Mahābhārata (see Chapple, 2002: 149ff), which Chapple puts down to possible “Jaina influence” (p159).
notion of a monastery as an “egalitarian sanctuary” (p279). Overall, there is enough evidence in Buddhist institutions to show that Gombrich’s (2009) suggestion that the “only true criterion of ranking people is moral” (p15) is simply false. For one thing, Buddhism has clearly never valued nuns as highly as monks. And as Dharmasiri (1989) notes, “the Buddha never thought of the possibility of a classless society” (p66) and a “class structure” was always evident in the monastery. And, of course, legal slavery was found in Aśoka’s India and even in pre-20th century Thailand (Harvey, 2000: 188-189). And needless to say, Buddhist monasticism has always survived on the back of lay donations and the theory that merit is thus gained. Maybe this is one area where Buddhism and Aristotle truly meet. As Stalley put it, “not everyone” can achieve the “good life”, and the “rest of us are best off serving those who can” (in Aristotle, 2009: xiv). I will return to this question of so-called Buddhist egalitarianism in Chapter 7.

Returning to the Compendium, following a short discussion of faith, Śāntideva moves on to discuss the importance of bodhicitta (the thought of enlightenment) and the will to liberate all beings (Ś.S. 5). This is the crux of his ethics. In the BCA (1.15), he divides bodhicitta into “aspiring” (praṇidhi) and “proceeding” (prasthāna), the former being a form of resolve towards enlightenment, the latter being actual engagement. In the Compendium, Śāntideva describes the first in terms of an inner pledge, “I must become a Buddha” (mayā buddhena bhavitavyam) (Ś.S. 8). In the BCA, he compares the difference between the two stages with the difference between thinking “I really should go to x” and actually going (BCA. 1.16).

In the Compendium (Ś.S. 103), he gives a list of four stages of bodhisattva development: 1) the thought of enlightenment (bodhicitta), 2) compassion (krpā), 3)
an immovable (acala) resolve, which seems to point to one who has reached the eighth bhūmi, and 4) enlightenment (buddhi). The ideal bodhisattva is then described as being “intent on the liberation of the whole world” (sarva jaga mokṣanodyata) (Ś.S. 104). We will analyse the enlightened activity of such a bodhisattva in Chapter 6.1. But let us turn now to the ethics of the commencing-bodhisattva, starting with renunciation.

As with Śaṅkara, we may divide renunciation here into inner and outer. According to Śāntideva, “No mendicant is truly a follower of the Buddha’s religion who has not given up on existence” (yathā na te tathāgata śāsane pravrajitāḥ yeṣāṃ nāstī tyāga) (Ś.S. 8). This is his inner renunciation. As for outer renunciation, Chapter 8 of the BCA describes how the bodhisattva leaves for the forest in order to meditate on the insubstantiality of self and things. This includes the renunciation of thoughts:

\[
kāya citta vivekena vikṣepatsya na saṁbhavah \mid \mid
tasmāl lokam parityajya vitarkān parivarjayet\]

With body and mind aware, distractions do not arise. Thus, having renounced this world, one should avoid conjecture (BCA. 8.2).

He goes on to deny society, his longing for a wife, his will to status and power, confronting and hopefully ‘dissolving’ the karma that got him where he is. To aid him in his renunciation, he mocks society, mocks the value of family and relationships, mocks the notion of beauty, and basically derides people in general. This seems a far cry from the other-regarding ethics of a bodhisattva, and must therefore be treated as a means rather than an end. It is a mental exercise undertaken in solitude, and should not be projected onto actual people. In fact, Śāntideva asks the monk to be civil to those he happens to meet. His ambivalent attitude is perfectly portrayed in the following verse:
bālād dūraṃ palāyeta prāptam ārādhayet priyaiḥ
na samstavānubandhena kim ūdāsīna sādhuvaḥ

One should steer clear of the immature. On meeting, one should be pleasant, not intimate. Be kind but indifferent (BCA. 8.15).

I will try to demonstrate how this ethical oddity functions in Chapter 6.1. For now, let us continue on our road to renunciation. With the aid of meditation (samādhi), the renouncer denies the objective world. We might say that he enters into a mind-only world. As such, he sits very close to the Yogācārin, whom Śāntideva would normally see as a metaphysical opponent. His temporary aim is to develop what we might (following Hume) call “monkish virtues”; that is: solitude, detachment, self-denial, self-chastisement, humility, and celibacy. Like Śaṅkara, Śāntideva strictly imposes celibacy on his audience, with BCA verses 8.5-8 most likely being aimed at monks who have not come to terms with celibacy (Crosby and Skilton, 1995: 175). His focus here is on one of the three marks of Early Buddhism, the impermanence (anitya) of worldly objects and relationships:

kasyānityesv anityasya sneho bhavitum arhati
yena janma sahasrāni draṣṭavyo na punah priyah
apaśyann aratīṃ yātī samādhaun ca tiṣṭatī
daḥyate tena śokena priya samgama kāṅkṣayā
tac cintayā mudhā yāti hrasvam āyur muhur-muhuh
aśāśvatena mitrena dharmo bhraśyati śaśvataḥ

How can an impermanent being have attachment for impermanent beings, when a loved one may not be seen again for one thousand lives? Not seeing [them] one becomes disturbed and cannot remain in meditation. And even on seeing them one is not satisfied. As before, one is afflicted with longing. One does not see reality as-it-is. One loses drive. One is consumed by grief, longing for contact with one’s beloved. While uselessly preoccupied with these people, life gets shorter by the minute. For the sake of a transient companion, the everlasting Dharma is lost (BCA. 8.5-8).
Virtues like detachment and chastity, however, are mere preliminaries; they are means to the renunciation of selfish desires. Ultimately, this is not a virtue ethics. Through such renunciation, the monk is able to get a glimpse of emptiness, he understands impermanence, and he realises the selflessness of all beings. For the Madhyamaka, only through an understanding of emptiness can awakening take place. Thus, Śāntideva addresses the Śrāvaka monk, when he says:

\[
\text{satya darśanato muktiḥ śūnyatā darśanena kim } \mid \\
\text{na vinānena mārgeṇa bodhir ity āgamo yataḥ } ||
\]

[You say] Liberation comes from understanding the [Noble] Truths. What then is the point of seeing emptiness? [We reply] Because [Mahāyāna] scriptures say that there is no awakening without this path (BCA. 9.40).

Through glimpses of emptiness and the loosening of personal identity, one is able to meditate on exchanging self for the self of others:

\[
\text{ātmānaṃ ca parāṃś caiva yah śīghram trātum icchati } \mid \\
\text{sacaret paramaṃ guhyam parātma parivartanam } ||
\]

Whoever wishes to quickly save himself and others, should practice the supreme mystery, and exchange ‘self’ and ‘other’ (BCA. 8.120).

Now we might wonder how a Buddhist, who is denying the existence of the self, could then go on to advocate a practice of exchanging one’s “self” for the self of another. First of all, we might note that the trainee bodhisattva still has a sense of self. While the monk knows the self to be ultimately illusory, this sense of self is still quite real (cf. Albahari, 2006: 16-17). Śāntideva writes:

\[
\text{yasmīnīn ātmany ati-snehād alpād api bhayād bhayam } \mid \\
\text{na dviṣet kastam ātmānaṃ śātruvadyo bhayāvahāḥ } ||
\]

If, due to over-attachment to this self, even the slightest thing causes fear, should I not detest this self in the manner I hate the fearsome enemy? (BCA. 8.121)
In other words, it is the denial of self that is at stake. And second, this is no Lockean transference of consciousness (Locke, Essay: II.xxvii.15); rather it is to be seen as a mental exercise of putting oneself in another’s shoes, i.e. it is a program of imagination aimed at undermining the self. One puts oneself in the place of the onlooker and looks back at one’s own mannerisms. And so:

\[
\begin{align*}
hīnādiṣv ātmatāṃ kṛtvam api cātmanī & |hāvayerṣyāṃ ca mānaṃ ca nirvikalpena cetasa\ |
\end{align*}
\]

Taking an inferior, then a superior, and then an equal as ‘oneself’, and taking oneself as the ‘other’; with a mind free of conceptions, experience envy and pride (BCA. 8.140).

In this way, the monk overcomes envy and competitiveness, and goes on to generate compassion for all beings. We might note that “moral maturity” to this day is often measured by the degree to which one can “take the perspective of the other” (Scott & Seglow, 2007: 71). However, at this point in the bodhisattva’s training, it is still a mental program, and the field must now shift to a more practical level. Now the practical world the bodhisattva enters is one much different from the forest setting and the monastery setting which he is used to. His monastic vows may well be compromised. Śāntideva is aware of this, and allows for the breaking of the Pratimokṣa vows under certain conditions (BCA. 5.84). For example, “At the time of giving, one may overlook such things as the moral code” (dāna kāle śīlopasaṃhārasyoṃ vistaraḥ) (Ś.S. 11).

With the bodhisattva leaving the monastery, the distinction between the monk and the lay practitioner is potentially broken. However, there still remains the distinction between the homeless monk (pravrajya) and the householder (grhī). Like Śaṅkara, Śāntideva clearly gives preference to the life of the former (Ś.S. 14), suggesting that, while both the lay disciple (upāsaka) and the monastic (bhikṣu) are worthy of gifts,
the monastic is infinitely more worthy (87). This forms part of the “dialectic of attachment and non-attachment to worldly life” as described by Thapar (1988: 274). But the fact that the bodhisattva may also be a householder complicates Thapar’s model of the householder as being “the source of dāna” (p283). In the Mahāyāna, the lay bodhisattva had a wider religious role to play. Nevertheless, when giving (especially Dharma), the monk is said to gain infinitely more merit than the householder (Ś.S. 144). When it comes to the householder, Śāntideva is just as biased as Śaṅkara ever was. In fact, the refrain “He has no yearning for wife, sons and daughters” (Ś.S. 14) might as easily have come from Śaṅkara’s pen. Still, being a householder does not exclude one from being a bodhisattva (19 & 144), even if the household life does have “innumerable faults” (196). While adultery is culpable by nature, having sex with one’s own wife is only culpable by convention (192). One should therefore regard her with misgiving (78). In other words, one must become as unattached as is reasonably possible within one’s social domain. Mrozik (2007) thus talks of the “asceticized laity” (p35). Still, a bodhisattva must give this household life up at some stage, for a householder can never become a Buddha (Ś.S. 193), asceticized or not.

Interestingly, whereas the Gītā (3.6) describes the (external) renouncer as, a “self-deluded hypocrite” (vimūdhātmā mithyācāraḥ), Śāntideva states that, one who leaves the household life is “free from deceit and hypocrisy” (māyā kuhā varjitāḥ) (Ś.S. 196). One can imagine Śaṅkara nodding in agreement. Once again, it seems that the ethics of Śāntideva and Śaṅkara cut across religious boundaries and often pose more of a

162 On the practice of giving (dāna) and the notion of worthy recipients in Indian ethics, see Heim (2007). Also see Harvey (2000: 21-23).
163 Thapar (1988: 289) notes that there is inscriptive evidence that monks and nuns also gave donations to the Saṅgha, thus further complicating the division of donor and receiver.
challenge to their own tradition than to the each other. This is why a comparison of their ethics bears so much fruit for the study of Comparative Religion.

In short, we have seen that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva see the world through renouncer’s glasses, and yet both agree to play ball according to traditional rules. That is, traditional ethics survive both their ultimate discourses. These traditional ethics are lineage-specific, which prevents Hinduism and Buddhism from collapsing into a single path. We have also come to understand that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva feel that those very rules can be side-stepped by the liberated few. We will now attempt to discover exactly what it means to be liberated on their gnoseological terms, and how such liberating knowledge may be developed.
5. Knowledge and Liberation

Here I will show that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva wish to insist that liberating knowledge, i.e. enlightenment, is made possible through a certain insight, a realisation. Both will link this realisation to their textual tradition, and both will claim that this realisation leads to the liberation from conditioned consciousness. As we have seen, both have claimed that the average person inhabits a world we fail to know. While it is normal to think of knowledge in terms of distinctions and categorisations, both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will insist that the intellect which makes such mundane distinctions is not only incapable of grasping the ultimate truth, but, in the final moments, actually stands as an obstacle to its dawning. Our cognitive error is therefore self-imposed, and so we need to remove that ‘self’.

From what we have heard about their respective metaphysics, it comes as no surprise that the final realisation they have in mind is different. We should not be surprised by this. Writing about philosophers in general, Lehrer (2000) opens his account of knowledge with the claim that “All agree that knowledge is valuable, but agreement about knowledge tends to end there” (p1). And Śaṅkara can confirm that the same was true of philosophers in 8th century India (B.S.Bh. II.i.11). True, Śaṅkara also wants to say that “true realisation has no diversity” (samyag-jñānam eka rūpaṃ) (ibid.), and that “in liberation there can be no superiority” (na tu muktau kaścid atiśaya sambhavo ’sti) (III.iv.52). But then, as we have already mentioned, he would argue that the Mādhyamikas had taken hold of a mistaken view and that their search for liberation was incomplete. And of course Śāntideva would say the same of the Vedāntin’s grasp of truth and their mistaken view of the self. Hence, we see a strong
structural similarity between the two thinkers, whilst noting that ‘realisation’ or ‘liberating knowledge’ has a different meaning for each tradition based on their conflicting metaphysics.

For Śaṅkara, liberating knowledge can be restricted to the understanding of the non-duality of consciousness in terms of the tropes of self and brahman. Thus he will claim that enlightenment comes about when one realizes that all is indeed brahman. For Śāntideva, necessary knowledge is derivative of the understanding that all phenomena are inter-dependent and thus empty of inherent existence. Thus he will claim that enlightenment comes about when one realizes that all is empty of independent existence. But while the content claimed of the insight differs, we might note that if knowledge be taken as that which “rests on our capacity to distinguish truth from error” (Lehrer, 2000: 7), then both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva are clearly coaching us in the same direction. For both agree that it is through this capacity to distinguish truth from error that one is said to be liberated from ignorance once and for all. But ‘truth’ here is not to be taken as an objective fact about the state of things in the world, but rather as a conscious state which is free from error. Such a liberated one is henceforth a teacher of men.
5.1 Śaṅkara: Liberation through Knowledge of Brahman

The Vedic corpus is commonly divided into two categories, the section on rites (karma-kāṇḍa) and the section on knowledge (jñāna-kāṇḍa), where ’jñāna’ indicates a state of consciousness which directly ‘knows’ brahman. The latter section of the Vedas is referred to as the Upaniṣads. The ‘Vedānta’, which literally means the end (anta) of the Vedas, and thus essentially equivalent to the Upaniṣads, came to be seen by many as the summit of the Vedas (Olivelle, 1992: 3). Śaṅkara was a leading figure in the promotion of this line of thought, and worked tirelessly to strengthen its non-dual interpretation, typically, but not exclusively, against his Mīmāṃsā opponents.

Śaṅkara thus distinguishes two types of knowledge, and claims that:

\[
\text{karma nimitta vidyā pratyayayor virodhāḥ ... śāstra janya pratyayo vidyā rūpah svābhāvikaṃ kriyā kāraka phala bheda pratyayaṃ karmavidhi nimitam anupamṛdyau na jāyate, bhedabheda pratyayayor virodhāḥ |}
\]

Understanding determined by action and the ‘state of knowing’ are opposed to one another ... This ‘state of knowing’, in the form of realisation (born of scriptural understanding) cannot arise without demolishing the common notion regarding the differences between actions, accessories and results, which is the cause of rites and injunctions, because the two philosophies of difference and non-difference are contradictory (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1).

Knowledge of brahman is clearly unlike other forms of knowledge. It is said to be a “knowledge that is different from the known” (anya veda tad viditād) (Ken.U. 1.4). That is, it is neither factual nor empirical knowledge, nor the acquired experiential knowledge or instrumental knowledge required for action. It is also said to be “beyond the unknown” (aviditād adhi) (Ken.U. 1.4). It is a “higher knowledge” (parā vidyā) (Mu.U. I.i.4), brahman itself. In Lipner’s (1997) words, “Brahman is reality-

---

knowledge *per se*” (p311). This makes it “totally ineffable” (*vaktum śakyam eva na*) (V.C. 482), for “*brahman* is inexpressible” (*brahma nocvaye*) (Bh.G.Bh. 13.12). Elsewhere, Śaṅkara explains, “For nothing which lacks genus, etc. can ever be described in words” (*na hy ajātyādimān kaścid arthaḥ sabdair nirūpyate*) (U.S. Metric, 18.30). And turning to scripture, Śaṅkara writes:

\[
\text{sarvāsu hi upaniṣatsu jñeyaṃ brahma “neti neti”, “asthūlam anaṇu”}
\]

\[
\text{ityādi viśeṣa pratiṣedhenaiva nirdiśyate, na “idaṃ tat’ iti, vācaḥ agocaratvāt ||}
\]

For in all the Upaniṣads, the knowable, *brahman* has only been indicated by negation of all attributes, such as “Not this, not this”, or “Neither gross nor subtle”; but never as “That is this”, for it is beyond speech (Bh.G.Bh. 13.12).

Hence, *brahman*-knowledge is a knowledge which cannot be owned by an agent (*kartṛ*), “for the two contradictory notions, ‘I am *brahman*’ and ‘I am an agent’, cannot co-exist” (*nahi brahmāsmi karteti viruddhe bhavato dhiyau*) (U.S. Metric, 18.225). In fact, Śaṅkara explicitly denies that *brahman* (B.S.Bh. I.i.4) is an object of knowledge. So when Olson (2011) calls *nirguna*-brahman an “object of knowledge” (p249), what he must mean is that *nirguna*-brahman belongs to the realm of *vidyā* as opposed to *avidyā* (the realm of ignorance). In other words, it is a worthy subject of inquiry, all else being inferior, ultimately worthless. Put bluntly, “inferior knowledge is no knowledge” (*nikṛṣṭyā vidyātvābhāvāt*) (B.S.Bh. III.iv.52). True knowledge, then, is that which remains after all inquiries are done, when the “desire to know ceases” (*jjijñāsā nivartate*) (III.ii.22).

Considering all that Śaṅkara says it is, and even more that which he says it is not, it would appear that this state of knowing (*pratyaya*) *brahman* is really more of a *sense of conviction* than of knowing about something. *Brahman* is not ‘known’ representationally, but experientially. This is no doubt a special type of experience,
one which arguably parallels the *as-it-is-ness* of the Buddhist. In other words, it is an “enlightening knowledge” which illuminates the situation for what it really is (Lipner, 2000: 67-68). It is not that one has a self with the quality of consciousness which grasps *brahman* in a cognitive event; for it is said to be beyond (*parāṃ*) the propositional knowledge of beings (Mu.U. II.ii.1). Strictly speaking, the “knower cannot be known by the knower” (*na hi veditā veditum śakyaḥ*) (Ken.U.Bh. 2.1). Hence, “realization is not of the ultimate, but it is itself the ultimate” (Klostermaier, 2007: 165). So even firm conviction (*niścitā pratipatti*) that one knows *brahman*, though desirable, is equally questionable, for one might not fully know (Ken.U.Bh. 2.1).

This state of knowing (*pratyaya*) therefore sits somewhat outside of the *pramāṇa* system and should not be equated with, say, the Nyāya’s valid presentational knowledge (*pramāṇa*), which for Advaita, means un-contradicted (*abādhita*) cognition (see Dasgupta, 1975, Vol.I: 482-484). Rather, this state of knowing falls into that category of which the “genuineness of the experience” is determined by an “external reference” (Flew, 2005: 145). In contrast to external objects, *brahman* “possesses an inherent unknowability by normal faculties of knowledge” (Olson, 2011: 251). Yet, experience of it sublates (*bādha*) all past knowledge. Furthermore, it cannot be a (conventional) form of experiential knowledge, because the ‘object’ is non-different (*abheda*) from the ‘subject’. It takes a skilful teacher to know whether the pupil has attained knowledge or not, and the rule-of-thumb seems to be, if he thinks he has, he has not (Ken.U.Bh. 2.2-3).
So even the “all-knowingness” (sarva-jñātvam) of the yogi, who has perfected his sattva-quality\textsuperscript{165}, does not touch brahman-knowledge, because the truth that is brahman is of a different order, being eternal (nitya) knowledge (B.S.Bh. I.i.5). To know brahman is to share in the knowing that is brahman, it is to “become” (bhavati) brahman (Mu.U. III.ii.9). The truth is that the self is reflexive-consciousness and this singular consciousness is brahman. This state of knowing is therefore immediate and direct (sākṣāt) (Br.U. III.iv.1). It is a state which permits of no doubts (B.S.Bh. IV.i.15). It cannot be attained through works, for as Śaṅkara tells us, work assumes the dualistic notion that there is a difference (bheda) between agent and results gained (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1). Nor is brahman-knowledge to be gained “through argumentation” (tarkeṇa) (Ka.U. I.ii.8-9), as it lies beyond the intellect.

This higher knowledge is not the result of any active work, then, but dawns when physical and intellectual effort stop, when the individual rejects the adjuncts which separate him from brahman. One gains knowledge of brahman through truly listening to one’s teacher (Ka.U.Bh. I.ii.8-9). All other instruments are ultimately “impediments to knowledge” (Taber, 1983: 31). Hence, Śaṅkara concludes that brahman is to be known by the Vedas alone and not from reasoning (B.S.Bh. II.i.31). Thus, authoritative word (śabda) from scripture (śruti) via teacher (ācārya, guru) is the only valid means (pramāṇa) for the final attainment of brahman knowledge. That is, according to Śaṅkara, it takes a qualified teacher to advise whether one knows or not:

\begin{quote}
śāstraṃ ca – “yady apy asmā imām adbhīḥ parigrhīḥ dhanasya pūrṇam dadyāt etad eva tato bhūyah” iti | anyathā ca jiñāna prāpty abhāvāt - “ācāryavān puruṣo veda”, “ācāryād dhaiva vidyā viditā”, “ācarāryah plāvayitā”, “sanyag-jīnānaḥ plava ihocyate” ity ādi śrutibhyah, “upadeksyanti te jiñānaḥ” ity ādi smṛteś ca ||
\end{quote}

\textsuperscript{165} According to Śaṅkhya, nature (prakṛti) is made up of three qualities (guṇā): satva (purity), rajas (activity) and tamas (inertia). The yogi becomes perfect by becoming pure-satva (viśuddha-satva). The Bhagavad Gītā defends this view (Chapter 14), as does the V.C. (119).
The scriptures also say “Even if one were to give him this [world] surrounded by oceans, filled with riches … this truly is more than that”. Since knowledge is obtained in no other way. For the Śrūtis say “He with a teacher knows”, “Knowledge learnt from a teacher …”, “The teacher is a boatman”, “His right knowledge is said to be a boat”, etc. The Śrāti also says “Knowledge will be imparted to you”, etc. (U.S. Prose, 1.3)

So on the question of whether conviction = knowledge, or whether there is such a thing as self-authenticating experience, Śaṅkara may not appear quite consistent. Compare the above with this statement, quoted earlier: “For when somebody feels in his heart that he has realised brahman, and yet bears a body, how can this be contested by anyone else?” (B.S.Bh. IV.i.15). However, I think we can reasonably take him to mean “anyone” except his teacher.

Unfortunately, the addition of the teacher does not overcome the metaphysical problem of the need for an individual ‘experincer’ who has an ‘experience’ which either does or does not require external validation (see Chapter 2). If anything, we are now faced with a further individual, the teacher. And it would seem that a teacher fully absorbed in brahman simply could not validate whether or not another was so absorbed. My notion of flickering would however solve both these issues. First, on my account, the teacher at the time of teaching would not be absorbed; but would be voluntarily within the provisional world. Second, while the individuated self of the student may get lost in the ‘experience’ of brahman-consciousness; due to past tendencies, it inevitably returns.

Such a state of brahman-consciousness is impossible for one who relies solely on the intellect in his search for knowledge. On the limits of intellect, Śaṅkara writes:
As long as the contact between the self and the intellect necessarily follows, so the self is subject to transmigratory existence. So long as there is no right seeing, so long as there is connection with this intellect, there will be no end to cyclic existence. And this individuality and this transmigratory state will last as long as there is this connection with the intellect as adjunct (B.S.Bh. II.iii.30).

So while no stranger to pure philosophising, it would appear that Śaṅkara is warning us that this state of knowing will forever elude one who limits himself to such modes of inquiry and dispute, the so-called “big-talker” (ati-vāḍin) (Mu.U. III.i.4). Śaṅkara clearly wants to lead us to experience, not to argumentation, for it is in experience that we transcend this world.

Nevertheless, he does so through, what Forsthoefel (2002) has called, “intellectual therapy” (p320). Along with other more spiritual virtues, it is one’s intellectual work that gets one to the place where the intellect may be dropped. In the Chāndogya Upaniṣad, Nārada, who begs Sanatkumāra to teach him about the Self (Ch.U. VII.i.3) is described as a “mere knower of the textual tradition” (mantra vit eva), but he is a knower of it. Again, the man who has his “blindfold” (abhinahanām) removed by the teacher is said to be intelligent (medhāvin) (VI.xiv.1). In the Upadeśa Sāhasrī (Prose, 1.2), the student is possessed of many excellent qualities, which include both “conduct” (vṛttā) and “learning” (vidyā). Śaṅkara tells us that the Vedas assume that the person seeking a teacher is an intelligent man (purūṣa buddhi) (B.S.Bh. I.i.2). Thus, the worthy seeker must show himself to have “intellectual acumen” (Perrett, 1998: 14). It is due to the intellectual search and the student’s own exertions that he
now stands before the teacher. This imposes upon the teacher the need for a “superlative degree of intellectual acumen” (Cenkner, 1983: 41). Reflecting (manana) on the teacher’s words is the active counterpart to hearing (śravaṇa), and there is no doubt that hearing is “enriched by what the hearer brings to it” (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 201).  

True, Śaṅkara critiques those “self-styled scholars” (paṇḍitam manyāh), the “logicians” (tārkikā) who use reason as a substitute for the Vedas (Br.U.Bh. II.i.20). Yet, despite citing the Katha Upaniṣads’ (I.ii.8-9) claim that knowledge cannot be reached “through reason” (tarkena) (Br.U.Bh. II.i.20), in the very same Bhāṣya, Śaṅkara still adds “reasoning” (tarkataḥ) to the Upaniṣad’s classic statement on the matter (Br.U.Bh. II.iv.5). In fact, it has been claimed that reason is “paramount” in Śaṅkara’s system of liberation (Cenkner, 1983: 33). His concern is really with the misuse, rather than the use of reason. Reasoning is only acceptable when it is in accordance with the Vedas. Śaṅkara, like other Hindu thinkers, thus warns against “rationalistic self-sufficiency” (Radhakrishnan, 1989: 23) or “dry” reasoning (Chakrabarti, 1997: 264).

Nevertheless, Olson’s (1997: 168) claim that brahman-knowledge is “independent of man” needs qualifying. Śaṅkara tells us that “brahman-knowledge is independent of man’s actions” (na puruṣa vyāpāra tāmtrā brahma-vidyā) (B.S.Bh. I.i.4). He also says that the “realization of brahman is not determined by human effort” (sati apuruṣa

166 The classic Advaitin methodological trio is hearing (śravaṇa), reflection (manana) and contemplation (nididhyāsana) (Br.U. II.iv.5). Also see the V.C. (70). On varying interpretations of the “three methods” in Vedānta, see Ram-Prasad (2001a: 198-209), Cenkner (1983: 21-28 & 65ff), and Roodurmun (2002: 212ff). Cf. the Theravāda’s D.N. (3.220).

167 For an extended discussion of Śaṅkara’s stance on reason, see Halbfass (1991: 131-204).
tantratvād brahma-vijñānasya) (Ken.U.Bh., intro), in that brahman-knowledge depends on brahman itself (B.S.Bh. I.i.4). It is the “Self revealing Itself” (Cenkner, 1983: 23). Conventionally speaking, however, it is within the embodied human mind that knowledge dawns. It is simply that, once at the threshold of knowledge, the mental apparatus should be silenced. Śaṅkara states:

> api ca mithyā-jñāna puraḥsare 'yam ātmano buddhy upādhi sāmbandhāḥ | na ca mithyā-jñānasya samyag-jñānād anyatra nivṛtīr asti yāvad brahmāmatānavabodhaḥ tāvad ayaṃ buddhy upādhi sāmbandho na śāmyati darśayati ca

Moreover, this connection of the self with the adjunct of intellect has forever been associated with misunderstanding and misunderstanding cannot come to an end except through right knowledge. Hence, so long as there is no realisation of the Self as brahman, so long does the connection with the intellect persist (B.S.Bh. II.iii.30).

The world of the intellect, like caste duties and associations, must be left behind. Only by renouncing all, even one’s own ‘personality’ (caste, family history, beliefs, etc), is the knowledge of brahman attained. Of course, even the teacher must be “versed in the Vedas” (śrotriyaṃ) (Mu.U. I.ii.12), and the teachings he gives must include the great sayings of the Vedas. Śaṅkara suggests the following format:


He should first teach the Śrutis which primarily present the oneness of Self, such as: “In the beginning, my child, this [universe] was existence only, one alone, without a second …”, “Where one sees nothing else …”, “All this is the Self”, “In the beginning, all this was but the Self”, “Indeed all this is but brahman”. After teaching these, he should help him, by means of the Śrutis, to grasp the marks of brahman, for example: “The Self is free from evil…”, “That brahman which is
manifest and directly known”, “That which is beyond hunger and thirst”, “Not this! Not this!”, “Neither gross nor subtle”, “This self is not this”, “It is the unseen seer”, “Knowledge, bliss”, “Real, knowledge, infinite”, “Invisible, bodiless”, “That great unborn Self”, “Breathless, mindless”, “Without and within unborn”, “Consisting of knowledge only”, “Without interior or exterior”, “It is indeed beyond the known and the unknown”, “Called space …” (U.S. Prose, 1.6-7).

And so it is ultimately to Vedic revelation that reason is subordinated. The V.C. (58-62) appears at variance on this point with the authentic works of Śaṅkara, even suggesting that the study of scripture is useless (58). However, even here (33), the “guru” is said to be “versed in the Vedas” (śrotriya). Despite all the rhetoric to the contrary, scripture is still seen as the “ultimate instrument to fashion the transformation of the mind” (Forsthoefel, 2002: 320).

This intimate knowing of brahman, that results from such understanding of the Vedic teachings, does not lead to worldly gain, or even other-worldly gain. Śaṅkara tells us that it is the way of a man who has “renounced” (virakta) all “seen” (drṣṭa) and “unseen” (adrṣṭa) results (Ken.U.Bh., intro), meaning that even the wish for heavenly realms or bliss is to be denounced. This amounts to an essentially negative liberation, a “freedom from”, what has been called the “minimal account of mokṣa” (Perrett, 1985: 345). ‘Knowledge’ then, in Advaitic terms, is really the removal of the apparatus of individuation. There is nothing added. One who knows simply becomes “identified with the eternal and unborn brahman” (paricchedyaṃ nityam ajam brahma) (Ch.U.Bh. III.xi.3).

Throughout his works, we see Śaṅkara’s goal as being that of a final state of brahman-consciousness with the simultaneous release from the suffering of existence (e.g. B.S.Bh. I.iv.6 & IV.i.2). As the Upaniṣads say, “a knower of the Self goes beyond
sorrow” (tarati śokam ātma-vid) (Ch.U. VII.i.3). In Śaṅkara’s interpretation, this knowledge of self is achieved, not in the after-life, but “right here while alive” (ihaiva jīvan) (Ch.U.Bh. III.xii.9). And subsequently, the renouncer “overcomes sorrow” (tarati śokam) “even while alive” (jīvan eva) (Ken.U.Bh., intro). The soteriological goal then, for Śaṅkara, is to become such a jīvan-mukta (Mu.U.Bh. III.i.9), apparently resting in the ultimate peace of brahmanhood (brahma-nirvāṇa) (Bh.G.Bh. 2.72).

As we shall see below (Chapter 6.2), this essentially negative thesis only presents itself as positive, as “freedom to”, when the jīvan-mukta is given the role of teacher. This knowledge, when passed on from teacher to pupil, may rightly be called “saving” knowledge (Deutsch, 1973: 47), if by that we mean a knowledge which saves one from further rounds of suffering. It is therefore interesting to note that, in the V.C. (35), the student’s supplication to the guru includes the phrase “save me” (mām uddhara). When used in this pedagogical sense, the Buddha’s knowledge has also been called “saving knowledge” (Bastow, 1997: 412). As Gombrich (2009: 78) states, “The nearest thing to a saviour that the karma doctrine allows is a teacher”. And this seems as applicable to Advaita as to Buddhism. Thus, Cenkner (1983) is justified in speaking of a “salvific relationship between teacher and pupil” (p15).

But in truth, nothing is passed on, for brahman was already there in both teacher and pupil. What takes place is therefore an “epistemic switch” (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 211) to “precognitive knowledge” (Taber, 1983: 55). It is like the boy who knew his group had started out as ten boys, but could now only count nine. A passing man points out

---

168 When Mumme asks whether the jīvan-mukta’s status is marked by “freedom from” or “freedom to” (Fort & Mumme, 1996: 264-267), she is questioning whether or not the jīvan-mukta is free “from” the law (Dharma), or free “to” follow it. My concern here is more with the brahma-vid’s parallel with Śāntideva who wishes to be free in order that he may liberate others.
to him that he is the tenth boy and an “a-haa” experience takes place (T.U.Bh. II.i.1 & U.S. Metric, 12.3). Nothing new has been added to the situation; only the ignorance of the boy has been removed. Śaṅkara writes:

\[
na \ anātma \ lābhavat \ aprāptaprāptilakṣaṇa \ ātma \ lābhāḥ
labdhṛlabdhavyayor bhedābhāvāt ... tasmād vidyayā tad apohana
mātram eva lābhāḥ
\]

Unlike the attainment of things that are not-self, the attainment of the self does not involve the obtaining of something not previously obtained, because there is no difference between the attainer and what is to be attained ... Therefore, the attainment of [the self] is simply the removal of that [ignorance] through knowledge (Br.U.Bh. I.iv.7).

So it would seem that, just as with Śāntideva above (BCA. 9.150), there is, in fact, no difference between being liberated and not being liberated. Elsewhere, Śaṅkara confirms this in remarkably similar language:

\[
na \ hi \ vastuto \ muktāmuktatvata \ viśeṣo \ ‘sti, \ ātmano \ nityaika \ rūpavāt \ |
kīm \ tu \ tad \ viṣayā \ avidyā \ apohyațe \ śāstropadeśa \ janita \ vijñānena \ |
prāktad \ upadeśa \ prāptih \ tad \ arthaḥ \ ca \ prayatna \ upapadyata \ eva \ |
\]

There is actually no difference between liberation and bondage. For, indeed, the self is always the same. However, ignorance of this matter is removed by the knowledge that arises from the teachings of the scriptures. But until one receives these, the effort put into attaining liberation is perfectly reasonable (Br.U.Bh. IV.iv.6).

Śaṅkara’s “\textit{na hi vastuto muktāmuktatvata viśeṣo ‘sti}” looks so much like Śāntideva’s “\textit{nirvṛtānirvṛtānāṃ ca viśeṣo nāsti vastu taḥ}” (BCA. 9.150) it is almost eerie. Perhaps both are traceable to Nāgārjuna’s “\textit{na nirvāṇasya saṃsārāt kimcid asti viśeṣaṇam}” (MMK. 25.19b). All three lend themselves to the same translation. The link between Śāntideva and Nāgārjuna is of course established, with Śāntideva recommending that one should consult Nāgārjuna’s work (BCA. 5.106). As for Śaṅkara, we can only speculate. Ram-Prasad (2001a: 210) wrote that Śaṅkara may have “deliberately or unwittingly” copied from Nāgārjuna. But the evidence here shows an even closer relationship to Śāntideva’s wording. It is indeed ironic that Otto
(1957) claimed that the doctrine that “Nirvāna and Samsāra are one and the same” would be “sheer madness on the basis of Śaṅkara’s teaching” (p150).

On the basis that Śaṅkara accepts the notion of effort in attaining liberation, Taber (1983: 19) has spoken of Śaṅkara holding a “threefold scheme for liberation”, which involves preparation, insight and consolidation. This is further evidence that the commonly held thesis that Śaṅkara denounces action is essentially false, as I will later demonstrate. And as we saw in Chapter 4.3, Śaṅkara is further compromised by the fact that the Bhagavad Gītā went to great length in its glorification of action. And so Śaṅkara, in accepting the Gītā’s authority, must allow for the notion of “non-attached” action as a form of renunciation. It is thus accepted as a means to purifying the mind to make it ready for the realization of brahman. This does not strictly mean that religious practices “cause” knowledge, as Taber (1983: 23) suggests; rather they prepare the ground, providing an opportunity to purify the mind, making it ready to receive the teachings which will cause knowledge to dawn (B.S.Bh. III.iv.26).

Renunciation, then, is not necessarily physical renunciation, but more essentially involves an “inner” renunciation; the letting go of the notion that one is the ultimate agent of one’s actions. But whether one remains embedded in the provisional world or (epistemically) rises up to the heights of the true world, one’s actions must be conducted selflessly. That is Śaṅkara’s central ethic. And such an ethic, at all levels, requires a certain degree of understanding. At the highest level of understanding, where one sees the lack of individuated self, where one has gone beyond attachment to results, but even so continues to act towards others as if they had an individuated self, that is what I call “constructive altruism”.

245
Clearly, if knowledge (vidyā) is the key to liberation, then nescience (a-vidyā), its literal Sanskrit opposite, is its enemy. As we may gather from his use of the opposing terms ‘samyag-’ (right) and ‘mithyā-’ (wrong) jñāna (cognition), Śaṅkara tends to see ignorance more in personal, epistemological terms than in global, cosmological terms. That is, his major focus is on man rather than on God’s power.

Of the relationship between knowledge and nescience, Śaṅkara writes:

\[ \text{na ca vidyāvidhye ekasya puruṣatya saha bhavataḥ, virodhāt tamāḥ prakāśāviva} \]

Knowledge and ignorance cannot co-exist in the very same person, for they are contradictory like light and dark (Br.U.Bh. III.v.1).

Now, it is clear from the context that Śaṅkara means knowledge of brahman (svarūpa-jñāna) here, and not, as Grimes (1991: 298) claims, empirical knowledge (vṛtti-jñāna). For Śaṅkara continues, “Thus, the knower of Self must not be supposed to have any relationship with the sphere of ignorance” (tasmāt ātma-vidāḥ avidyāviṣayo ‘dhikāro na draṣṭavyah) (Br.U.Bh. III.v.1). Elsewhere (Mu.U.Bh. III.i.4), he does seem to be comparing light and dark in terms of empirical knowledge, but that is because he is arguing the other way around, that one involved in ritual actions cannot disport in the Self. But in this same passage he also writes:

\[ \text{ayaṃ tu vidvānnaṁtaṇo ‘nyatpaśyati, nānyacchṛṇoti, nānyadvijānāti} \]

This enlightened man, however, does not see anything, does not hear anything, does not cognise anything other than the Self (Mu.U.Bh. II.i.4).

Again, he asks:

\[ \text{drśirūpe sadānitye darśanādarśane mayi | katham syātāṁ tato nānya isyate ‘nubhavastataḥ ||} \]

How could there be [flickering between] seeing and not-seeing in me who is forever of the nature of [pure] seeing? No experience, therefore, other than [the self] can be accepted (U.S. Metric, 12.9).
Śaṅkara thus appears to be asserting a constant, “context-free state of consciousness” (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 171), which is permanently opposed to ignorance. This is in direct opposition to my notion of flickering. If this were his final word on the matter, then we would be faced with the same problem that has faced those scholars who have pondered the Mādhyamika’s (namely Candrakīrti’s) thesis that the Buddha’s pure mind is so non-conceptual that it would contain no cognitive images at all (see Arnold, 2005: 184). That is, “pure consciousness” would be “indistinguishable from unconsciousness” (Perrett, 1985: 344). Clearly, “life requires a richness of quality which neutral consciousness” could not explain (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 167). It is this richness of quality that my flickering model provides.

As noted earlier, Śāntideva’s voluntary delusion saves us from such an investigation into the contents of a transparent consciousness.169 And thankfully, as was mentioned in Chapter 2, Śaṅkara’s final word on the subject will save us again (at least with regard to the pre-death scenario), for it is in a sense another retraction of the above statements; for there is still the matter of past tendencies. Let us remind ourselves then of the following admission:

> bādhitam api tu mithyā-jñānam dvi-caṃḍra jñāna vat samskāra vaśāt kṛṣṇa j 讷yat eva |

However, mistaken cognition, even when annulled, continues for a while owing to the influence of past tendencies, like the cognition of two moons [due to an eye condition] 170 (B.S.Bh. IV.i.15).

Furthermore, Śaṅkara quite remarkably accepts that these past tendencies are stronger than this knowledge. Hence: “The operation of [pure] knowing, being weaker than

---

169 For an extended discussion of this in Buddhism, see Griffiths (1986 & 1994).

170 See note 36 on p48.
they, is only one possible mode” (pakṣe prāptaṃ jñāna pravṛtti daurbalyam) (Bṛ. U. Bh. I.iv.7).

Thus, we are surely justified in imagining the brahman-knower flickering between moments of ‘light’ and moments of ‘darkness’, or periods of samyag-jñāna and mithyā-jñāna. It would seem that light and dark can co-exist in the very same person, but not at the same time. Or we might say that the one ‘person’ flickers between imagining himself to be an individuated self and being in a non-individuated state of brahman. In his brahman-moments, the imaginary individuated self disappears, and with it, desire for objects. The V.C. merely confirms our suspicions that the early Advaitins acknowledged this flickering:

\[
\text{jñāte vastuny api balavatī vāsanā ‘nādir eṣā kartā bhoktāpy aham iti dṛḍhā yā ‘syā saṁsāra hetuh } | \\
\]

Even after knowledge has been attained, there remains that beginningless, strong, obstinate impression that one is an agent and an experiencer; the cause of transmigration (V.C. 267a).

It is due to this instability that renunciation is paramount, allowing time for full establishment in brahman. Śaṅkara states that renunciation merely serves to mature (paripāka) Self-knowledge (Bṛ. U. Bh. IV.iv.7). Thus, the world is not only there from the side of conventional truth, but, like brahman (Mu. U. II.ii.5), it may also act as a bridge, for liberation verily comes from within this world. Individuation must therefore be “ provisionally retained” (Ram-Prasad, 2001a: 171) in order to pass on that knowledge to the next generation of seekers. But, while knowledge should be repeatedly explained to the pupil until firmly grasped (U.S. Prose, 1.2), it should also be consolidated by the teacher himself.
The teacher must therefore flicker between teaching others and absorption in *brahman*. This is implicit in Śaṅkara’s notion that “total consummation in *brahman*” (*brahmanī parisamāpti*), or being “steadfast in *brahman*” (*brahma-samstha*), denotes the “absence of any other preoccupation” (*ananya vyāpāra*) (B.S.Bh. III.iv.20). For it is clear that, in teaching others, one must assume an additional preoccupation. Also, if the “Vedas are no Vedas” (*vedā avedāḥ*) in such a state of awakened consciousness (*prabodhe*) (B.S.Bh. IV.i.3), then surely the teacher must come out of this state in order to teach from them. Hence, the only way the enlightened can help the unenlightened is by occasionally coming out of this state of absorption in order to share in the student’s distorted vision of reality. Through such flickering, the knower is potentially fit for both domains. And through such a *theory* of flickering, we save Śaṅkara from the charge of contradiction.
5.2 Śāntideva: Liberation through Seeing into Emptiness

We have seen that liberation had a double meaning for Śaṅkara, being: 1) an end to nescience, and 2) an end to rebirth and suffering. For Śāntideva, enlightenment does not naturally lead to liberation from cyclic existence (*samsāra*), for the *bodhisattva* has already denounced such liberation, both ultimately and conventionally. Ultimately speaking, there can be no ceasing of that which did not arise. Conventionally speaking, the Bodhisattva Vow will keep him in the round of rebirths, not through bondage, but through an act of will, through choice. Unlike Śaṅkara, Śāntideva has no problem with action, for the *bodhisattva* does not resist the results of *karma* and may even risk some negative *karma* if the overall benefit is thought to outweigh the cost (see Chapter 6.1). As such, Śāntideva can focus on putting an end to nescience in all beings without over-worrying about the possibility of gaining a karmic result, especially as accumulation of merit (*puṇya*) is simultaneously the elimination of demerit (*pāpa*). The commencing-*bodhisattva* should even be willing to suffer a little in order to remove the suffering of others. Śāntideva writes:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
krpayā bahu duḥkham cet kasmād upadyate balāt \\
jagad duḥkham nirūpyedaṃ kṛpā duḥkham kaiṭham bahu
\end{array}
\]

You may argue, “If compassion brings [us] so much pain, why force it to arise?” But having determined the degree of suffering in the world; is the suffering from compassion so great? (BCA. 8.104).

For Indian Buddhists, like Śāntideva, knowledge is not an end in itself. It is not so much knowledge that is at stake, but the subsequent reduction in suffering which is said to follow from such knowledge. Whether this distinguishes Śaṅkara from his Buddhist contemporaries, as claimed by Ram-Prasad (2001a: 186-188), is open to debate, though I personally feel the question is perhaps one of emphasis rather than substance. Ram-Prasad (2001a: 186-188) argues that Śaṅkara’s emphasis is on ending
“epistemic failure” rather than suffering. However, near the close of the *B.S.Bh* (IV.iv.2), Śaṅkara states that “liberation is nothing but the cessation of bondage” (*mokṣasya baṃḍha nivṛtti mātrā*), and in the *U.S.* (Prose, 2.45), we are told that the seeker of liberation ought to be “tired of the cycle of birth and death” (*janma maraṇa lakṣaṇāt saṃsārāt nirvīṇṇa*), not tired of being ignorant. Moreover, Śaṅkara goes far beyond the source text in his description of the suffering inherent in the act of birth (Ch.U.Bh. V.ix.1). Saha (2009) therefore appears wrong to suggest that, for Śaṅkara, “Suffering is not a matter for [sic] experiencing any physical discomfort” (p28). Furthermore, we should not forget that, in India, re-birth implies re-death, and this may well be seen as the greater of the two evils. And Śaṅkara tells us that “One who sees diversity in [brahman] goes from death to death” (*mṛtyoḥ sa mṛtyum āpnoti ya iha nāneva paśyati*) (U.S. Prose, 1.26), whereas liberation puts an end to re-death (Br.U.Bh. III.ii.10).\(^{171}\)

So while it is ignorance which binds the seeker, existentially, it is suffering which inspires the wish for knowledge. Śāntideva makes this incredibly explicit when he writes, “Therefore, with the desire to end suffering, one should develop wisdom” (*tasmād utpādayet praṇāṃ duḥkha nivṛtti kāṅṣayā*) (BCA. 9.1b). Thus, he demonstrates the fact that “Buddhist ethics is based on the ultimate good, the liberation from suffering” (de Silva, 2007: 233). Here, he appears to sit comfortably alongside the Śrāvakā Buddhist. However, it is because this desire to end suffering extends to all other beings that, unlike the Śrāvaka, an end to rebirth plays no part in Śāntideva’s soteriology.

\(^{171}\) Roodurmun (2002: 220) also suggests that Śaṅkara saw knowledge principally as a means of ending suffering. Likewise, Potter (1981) claims that the “purpose of philosophy” for Advaita is liberation from the “bondage of rebirth” (p6).
Unlike the Śrāvaka, and indeed Śaṅkara, the bodhisattva is willing to be reborn in order to help other sentient beings. The path he walks is one of accumulation of merit (punya sambhāra), through virtuous practice and meditation, finally leading to wisdom (prajñā) and higher knowledge (jñāna). That is, he walks the traditional bodhisattva-yāna. The path is thought to naturally lead to an insight into emptiness, a true cognition of how the world is. Meditation leads to seeing. Such a virtuous seer is henceforth possessed of the enlightened freedom to act for the benefit of all. Śaṅkara thus sits closer to the historical Buddha here than does Śāntideva, for it was an innovation of the Mahāyāna to denounce the final liberation of nirvāṇa, and to see nirvāṇa in non-ultimate terms.

Like Śaṅkara, one of Śāntideva’s first moves is to denounce the intellect (buddhi). Hence, as we saw in Chapter 2, reality (tattva) is said to be beyond the scope of the intellect (BCA. 9.2b). He also went on to tell us that the mistake made by the common man (loka) is to imagine the objects within the world to be real (tattvatah), when they are in fact illusion-like (māyā-vad) (BCA. 9.5). Therefore, he adds that “It is the reification of reality that is here refuted, as that is the cause of suffering” (satyataḥ kalpanā tv atra duḥkha hetur nivāryate) (9.25b).

The only way that this reification can be annulled is through an insight into emptiness (śūnyatā), which, according to Nāgārjuna, corresponds with the cessation of discursiveness (prapañcopaśamaṃ) (MMK, Dedication). Thus, we saw Śāntideva addressing the Śrāvaka monk:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{satya darśanato muktiḥ śūnyatā darśanena kim } | \\
\text{na vinānena mārgeṇa bodhir ity āgamo yataḥ } ||
\end{align*}
\]

[You say] Liberation comes from understanding the [Noble] Truths. What then is the point of seeing emptiness? [We reply] Because
[Mahāyāna] scriptures say that there is no awakening without this path (BCA. 9.40).

We see here that Śāntideva does not try to justify emptiness in terms of a self-validating experience (see Burton, 2004: 150), but gives a testimonial argument for its efficacy. Of course, it is a testimony that his opponent, the Śrāvaka, will reject. He therefore tries another tack, an assault on outward behaviour (that might as easily apply to the brahman-knower):

\[
\text{kleśa prahāṇān muktiś cet tad anantaramastu sā} \quad | \\
\text{drṣṭaṁ ca teṣu sāmarthyaṁ niḥkleśasyāpi karmaṇaḥ} \quad ||
\]

If liberation results from the destruction of the defilements, [as you say], it ought to follow immediately after. Yet the influence of karma can still be seen in those ['arhats'] who are free of defilements (BCA. 9.45).

The mind might well have moments of purity without the realisation of emptiness, but it will continually return to normal states of ignorance; that is, it will oscillate. This oscillation, however, is no voluntary flickering, for it is beyond the monk’s control. And so he tells the Śrāvaka monk:

\[
\text{vinā śūnyatayā cittam baddham utpadyate punah} \quad | \\
\text{yathāsamjhiḥ samāpattau bhāvayet tena śūnyatāṁ} \quad ||
\]

Without emptiness, the fettered mind arises again, as in the case of the meditative state of non-perception; therefore one must cultivate emptiness (BCA. 9.48).

In other words, it is not enough to settle on the ability to enter into certain higher states of consciousness. One must attain a higher degree of wisdom. Hence, we have to “train ourselves out of the automatic habit of projecting svabhāva [inherent existence] onto a world that lacks it” (Westerhoff, 2009: 13). And thus, in the words of Nāgārjuna, “When ignorance ceases, mental formations will not arise” (avidyāyāṁ niruddhāyāṁ saṃskāraṇāṁ asaṃbhavah) (MMK. 26.11a).
Śāntideva argues that the potential benefits of realising emptiness are two-fold; firstly, the power it gives one to act compassionately, and secondly, the guaranteed removal of both the defilements and the obscuration to omniscience. While the arhat may have removed the defilements, they are still left with certain mental obscurations which prevent omniscience, and only the bodhisattva’s path of emptiness and skilful means can remove them:

\[
\text{sakti trāsāttva nirmuktyā saṃsāre sidhyati sthitih } \\
\text{mohena duḥkhinām arthe śūnyatāyā idaṃ phalaṃ } \\
\]

Being able to remain in cyclic existence, free from attachment and fear, for the benefit of those suffering through their delusion - such is the fruit of emptiness (BCA. 9.52).

\[
kleśa jñeyāvṛtī tamah pratipakṣo hi śūnyatā } \\
\text{śīghram sarva-jñatā kāmo na bhāvayati tāṃ katham } \\
\]

Since emptiness is the antidote to the veil of afflictions and to obscurations of knowledge, how is it that one desirous of omniscience [i.e. Buddhahood] does not hasten to meditate on it? (BCA. 9.54) 172

While Śāntideva goes to some length to explain what he means by emptiness, a more succinct definition was given by Nāgārjuna, said to contain the “entire Mādhyamika system in embryo” (Garfield, 1995: 304). It runs, “Whatever is dependently arisen, that we call emptiness” (yah pratītyasamutpādaḥ śūnyatāṁ tāṃ pracakṣmahe) (MMK. 24.18a). In other words, because everything arises dependent on prior causes and conditions, there is no ‘thing’ which may be said to exist inherently without the need for such causes and conditions. This lack of inherent existence (sva-bhāva) is called their emptiness (śūnyatā). And the Mādhyamika assumes that everything, including

---

172 Omniscience is a theoretical aim in Mahāyāna Buddhism, and is basically synonymous with Buddhahood (buddhatvam), the pinnacle of the ten-stage path. I will not take up the debate about literal or non-literal omniscience here as it plays no real part in Śāntideva’s ethics, which rely on the notion of voluntary delusion. For an extended discussion, see Burton (2004: 37-40).
one’s mental states, is dependently arisen. To understand this truth is to be liberated from the reification of imagined, self-standing ‘objects’, including the Yogācāra’s \textit{citta} and the Brahmin’s \textit{puruṣa}. And as we have seen, to teach this ultimate truth without projection to those people whose views are characterised by projection is Śāntideva’s ultimate aim (BCA. 9.167). As for the view of emptiness itself, Śāntideva advises the Śrāvaka that they should: 1) accept its validity as a teaching of the Buddha, and 2) meditate on it:

\begin{verbatim}
tad evaṃ śūnyatā pakṣe dūsanam nopapadyate
| tasmān nirvicikitsena bhāvanīyaiva śūnyatā
\end{verbatim}

As such, there is no valid objection to the emptiness doctrine. Therefore one should meditate on emptiness without hesitation (BCA. 9.53).

Buddhism has traditionally divided meditation practice into calm-abiding (\textit{śamatha}) and insight (\textit{vipaśyanā}). The contrast is sometimes explained in terms of states of absorption (\textit{dhyāna}) and modes of analysis. Now, given that Śāntideva claims that even the higher absorptions do not guarantee insight into emptiness (BCA. 9.48), it would seem that what is required is some form of insight meditation. In fact, we may reasonably assume that the practitioner “alternates between analytical and stabilizing meditation” (Hopkins, 1996: 89). Thus, Śāntideva writes:

\begin{verbatim}
kāya citta vivekena vikṣepatsya na saṃbhavaḥ
| tasmāl lokaṃ parityajya vitarkān parivarjayet
\end{verbatim}

With body and mind aware, distractions do not arise. Thus, having renounced this world, one should avoid conjecture (BCA. 8.2).

\begin{verbatim}
śamathena vipaśyanāsuyuktah kurute kleśa vināśamityavetya
| śamathah prathamaṃ gaveṣṇyāḥ sa ca loke nirapekṣayābhiratyā
\end{verbatim}

Knowing that one of well-attuned insight through tranquillity destroys the defilements, one must first seek tranquillity; and \textit{that} by first becoming indifferent to one’s delight in this world (8.4).
Thus, Śāntideva calls for a state of inner-renunciation which will then allow the mind to settle. From this state of tranquillity it is deemed possible to begin the analysis into the nature of consciousness and its relation to the world of ‘objects’. We can then read much of the ninth chapter of the *BCA* itself as a form of analytical insight meditation. The main analytical conundrum is that of the illusory nature of pseudo-reality and its causes:

\[
\begin{align*}
māyayā nirmitaṃ yac ca hetu bhīryac ca nirmitaṃ & | \\
āyāti tat kutah kurta yāti ceti nirūpyatāṃ & ||
\end{align*}
\]

What is created by illusion and what by causes? From whence do they come and where do they go? This we must examine (BCA. 9.143).

Relying on what he calls the “Mādhyamika style of reasoning” (Gyatso, 1975: 42), the Dalai Lama writes, “Once the referent object of the conception of inherent existence is known to be non-existent, one can easily ascertain emptiness” (ibid.). The Dalai Lama then confirms Śāntideva’s assertion that the intellect is incapable of such a grasp on reality, but reminds us that this is a two-stage process which includes the intellect. Thus, the Dalai Lama continues:

With respect to a non-conceptual wisdom that apprehends a profound emptiness, one first cultivates a conceptual consciousness that apprehends an emptiness, and when a clear perception of the object of meditation arises, this becomes a non-conceptual wisdom (p55).\(^{173}\)

Śāntideva muses:

\[
\begin{align*}
yadā na labhyate bhāvo yo nāstīti prakalpyate & | \\
tadā nirāśrayo ‘bhāvah katham tiṣṭen mateḥ purah & ||
\end{align*}
\]

When one considers that the entity does not truly exist, and nothing is perceived, how could a baseless non-entity stand before the mind? (BCA. 9. 33)

\(^{173}\) For a comprehensive study of emptiness meditation techniques in Tibetan Prāsaṅgika-Madhyamaka, see Hopkins (1996). For a brief resume of Hopkins, see Williams (2009: 79-81).
His response, taken by Ruegg (1981: 83) to be a “summing up of the central idea of the Middle Way”, runs:

\[
yadā na bhāvo nābhavo mateḥ samtiṣṭhate purah  
tadānyagaty abhāvena nirālambā praśāmyate    ||
\]

When neither entity nor non-entity stands before the mind, because there is no other mode, the mind, without support, becomes tranquil (BCA. 9.34).

This process of “self-critical rationality” (Ganeri, 2001: 47) is one of “shaking oneself free of habitual patterns of thought” (Huntington, 1989: 81). One must “eradicate the innate non-analytical intellect that misconceives the nature of the person and other phenomena” as having inherent existence (Hopkins, 1996: 30). Hence, one analyses the object of meditation until the “cognition of unfindability” arises with sufficient force (p64). And, according to Śāntideva, we can be sure that we have come to the end of this process when there is no basis left for analysis:

\[
vicāritena tu yadā vicāreṇa vicāryate  
tadānavasthā tasyāpi vicārasya vicāraṇāt    ||
vicārite vicārye tu vicārasyāsti nāśrayaḥ  
nirāśrayatvān nodeti tac ca nirvāṇam ucyate    ||
\]

[Objection] But when analysis is itself analysed by analysis, there is no end, since that analysis may also be analysed. [We reply] But when the thing to be analysed has been [truly] analysed, there is no basis left for analysis. Without basis, it ends. That is said to be nirvāṇa (BCA. 9.109-110).

At this point, the yogi is unable to find any ‘thing’ to call an object. One has here reached the “limit of analysis” where there is an “abandonment of affliction” (Kapstein, 2001: 217). However, even when this emptiness has become a direct realization, flickering still occurs. This is said to continue up until the eighth bhūmi;

---

174 On the notion of unfindability (anupalabdhi) of self, see Kapstein (2001: 77ff).

175 Cf. MMK. 18.4-5
for, until that stage of the path, the yogi is said to be incapable of consistently remaining in that direct realization of emptiness during the actual perception of phenomena (see Hopkins, 1996: 103-104).

Now Śāntideva is well aware that he cannot help himself to the Indian pramāṇa system in order to justify emptiness, but he seems unconcerned by this:

pramāṇam apramāṇaṃ cēn nanu tat pramitaṃ mṛṣā  ||
tattva taḥ sūnyatā tasmād bhāvānāṁ nopapadyate  ||
kalpitam bhāvam asprṣṭvā tad abhāvo na gṛhyate  ||
tasmād bhāvo mṛṣā yo hi tasyābhāvah sphuṭaṃ mṛṣā  ||

[Objection] If a means of knowledge is [in fact] not [ultimately] a means of knowledge [for you], then surely all gained by that means is falsely established. Therefore the emptiness of phenomena is not truly ascertained [by a valid cognition]. [We reply] Where there is no contact with an imaginary existent there is no grasping at its non-existence. For, if the being of an entity is deceptive, clearly its non-being [i.e. emptiness] is equally deceptive (BCA. 9.138-139).

In other words, as the ‘object’ under analysis is not truly existent, so its emptiness is not truly existent. And so, when one’s insight into the illusory nature of phenomena is so strong that there is no expectation of contact between an individuated consciousness and a self-standing object, then emptiness is fully established. There is no need for a positive perception of emptiness itself as there is no such self-standing emptiness. It is not the case that an Absolute appears when the conventional ceases. Rather, in order to understand the non-substantial nature of a conventional ‘existent’ it is of value to first examine its imagined nature and then to remove one’s false perception of it as being a self-standing ‘object’. The subsequent view of emptiness is thus free of reification.

Beyond this point of realisation, one would need to voluntarily assume persons as self-standing individuals in order to fulfil the Bodhisattva Vow (see Chapter 6.1). While it
may be true that one might eventually reach such a level of clarity that one’s epistemic transparency would lead to a state where the “two cognitions [conventional and ultimate] no longer function alternatively or separately”, but “simultaneously” (Thakchöe, 2011: 49), Śāntideva’s solution appears a more realistic one. Śāntideva reminds his bodhisattvas that they are not buddhas, but humans who must know their level of development. Thus, Śāntideva’s is a traditional Mahāyāna cultivation of insight (vipaśyanā) through tranquillity (śamathena), with altruistic intent (bodhicitta), with the addition of a voluntary delusion. Therefore, Śāntideva’s “emptiness-based altruism” (Clayton, 2006: 63) is one that involves an implicit flickering between the Two Truths.176

One question that remains unanswered is how wisdom should lead one to selfless action. Is it that such wisdom (prajñā) makes one automatically moral? Is it that without belief in a self, egoism naturally turns into altruism? I have been able to glean at least four possible responses in Śāntideva’s works: 1) the weakening of craving, attachment and fear, along with an insight into non-self, makes one less self-centred, redefining one’s boundaries, leaving one more open to others; 2) an understanding of the inter-dependence of karmic relationships leads one to view others as being profoundly relevant to one’s own path; 3) when one has become free of the shackles of saṃsāra, one gains a deep sympathy for those that remain caught in it; and 4) one feels duty-bound via the Bodhisattva Vow to save others from suffering and to continue the Buddha’s lineage. This seems to amount to a complete reorientation in one’s view of the world. Śāntideva writes:

176 Of course, all of these steps depend on the previous perfections, for which one may read the BCA itself. One might also refer to Huntington (1989: 69-104). This excellent guide to the bodhisattva path is mainly based on Candrakirti’s presentation.
Suffering has a further quality in that it inspires the desire for liberation. One feels compassion for those in cyclic existence, a fear of demerit, and a yearning for Buddhahood (BCA. 6.21).

But we should not forget that a certain degree of bodhicitta was already present long before the view of emptiness. And so throughout this chapter on patience (kṣānti), we find references to compassion. Another quote shows how compassion appears as the antidote to anger and intolerance:

\[
guṇo \ 'paraś ca duḥkhasya yat samvegān madacyutiḥ \ | 
saṃsāriṣu ca kārṇyaṁ pāpād bhītir jine sprhā \ ||
\]

\[
kleśonmattī kṛteṣv eṣu pravṛtteṣv ātma ghātane \ | 
na kevalāṁ dayā nāsti krodha utpadyate katham \ ||
\]

Driven mad by their defilements they resort to killing themselves. How is it that you show no compassion, but become angry? (BCA. 6.38)

Finnigan and Tanaka (2011: 229) have also highlighted how, for Candrakīrti, “compassion is the root of both the aspiration for enlightenment and nondualistic wisdom”. So it might be suggested that “selfless concern” is in fact needed in order to “actualize the concept of emptiness” (Huntington, 1989: 84). In other words, selfless action is partly the result of a selfless attitude previously developed which has already sensitized one to the suffering of others. Thus, the Dalai Lama (1994: 114) suggests that while one may not need the first five pāramitās in order to realise emptiness, one certainly needs them if one wishes to benefit others. One might therefore speak of the monk or the bodhisattva as having an “ethicized consciousness” (Gombrich, 2009: 83). Such an internalized compassion “imperatively compels us to act selflessly” (Thurman, 1976: 4), making one feel “obliged to go out and help others” (Dharmasiri, 1989: 50). That is why we sometimes need to think of Buddhist Ethics in terms of a duty to act compassionately.
It is the heightening of this sensitivity through the realization of the truth of interdependence (Ś.S. 119) along with the constant reaffirmation of the Bodhisattva Vow which finally leads to a complete reorientation in one’s lifestyle. Compassion is then in “profound accord with the knowledge gained through philosophical analysis” (Huntington, 1989: 102). It thus becomes “effortless” (ayatnataḥ) (BCA. 1.35). And it should by now be clear that there is no obvious “means/end distinction” (Siderits, 2003: 111, note c) in Śāntideva’s bodhisattva path and that compassion runs right the way through. The mind must return to bodhicitta over and over again, for wavering (dolāyamānaḥ) is inevitable (BCA. 4.11).

Given that the virtues of the jīvan-mukta are also said to run right through (Fort & Mumme, 1996: 144), and given that Śaṅkara explicitly endorses such a thesis (U.S. Prose, 1.2-6), then it comes as no surprise that we can glean parallel responses in Śaṅkara on the link between brahman-knowledge and compassion. This is so, even if Śaṅkara does claim that the jīvan-mukta’s “knowledge cannot supply any impulsion to action” (na ca tad vijñānam karmanām pravartakaṃ bhavati) (B.S.Bh. III.iv.8), for it is clear from the context that it is ritual action that is being denied. Thus, we may still find: 1) a similar weakening of craving and attachment, along with an insight into the non-self of the jīva-trope giving rise to an unbounded view of reality; 2) a conviction in the one basic ground of being (sat) which leads one to view others as manifestations of the one source; 3) a similar sense of freedom from the shackles of saṃsāra, leading to a sympathetic attitude to the seeker of liberation; and 4) a feeling of being duty-bound to protect others, along with a simultaneous need to continue the Vedāntin lineage of brahman-knowers.
So once again, we see how close Śāntideva and Śaṅkara stand in both aim and method. Both wish to be rid of reification, of false understanding. Both describe this as a form of realisation that is beyond the intellect. Both ground their views almost exclusively within their own textual tradition, in what Forsthoefel (2002: 320) has called the “external circuitry” of “text, tradition and teacher”. While Śāntideva informs us that the Buddha’s word is to be taken as “truth” (bhūta) (BCA. 8.156), Śaṅkara states that any teaching that opposes the Vedas is contradictory by default (B.S.Bh. II.ii.18). Moreover, both form hierarchies of knowledge within their tradition, claiming that certain practitioners know better than others and that certain textual statements are more definitive than others. Both see the aim of their texts and the result of the eventual realisation as a reversal of the egoistic attitude, though both suggest that a hint of this non-egoistic attitude is in fact necessary for the path. Both claim that realisation removes ignorance (avidyā) and leads to an end of suffering (duḥkha). Both insist that renunciation is a necessary preliminary to insight, and that some form of inquiry into reality is necessary. Both then claim that this inquiry must eventually cease, and both surprisingly devalue the rewarding bliss (ānanda) that their traditions assert arises at this juncture. And finally, both will place their knowers-of-reality in the role of teacher, whose “job” it is to show others that there is in fact no individuated self. That is, both would agree with Dharmasiri (1989: 52) that, “The most important expression of the monks’ sympathy is their teaching”. Thus, both Śāntideva and Śaṅkara advocate what Cooper and James (2005: 82) have called an “ethically charged form of knowledge”.
6. A Selfless Response to the World

We have just drawn a distinction between the forms of liberation espoused by Śaṅkara and Śāntideva. Both are now faced with the issue of the life that the “liberated” person lives before their physical death. Both have nominated the life of teaching others as the perfect occupation. Yet, due to their radically revisionary metaphysics, both are faced with a critical ethical question: How should such a ‘person’ respond to a world which is like an illusion? In fact, we may well ask the deeper motivational question: Why should they respond to a world that is like an illusion?

The question is perhaps more complex for Śaṅkara than for Śāntideva. While it is true that both share the notion that we are kept in gnoseological bondage due to ignorance, they do not agree on what keeps us in the world. For Śāntideva, it is the will to benefit other beings, the voluntary accumulation of merit (and thus positive karma) that keeps one in the world. For Śaṅkara, the liberated person has gone beyond karma, and so no such accumulation could take place. As a consequence of this metaphysics, it is only past karma that could keep one here. Now, if knowing brahman is going to put an end to rebirth, and if rebirth is caused by karma, then the knowledge of brahman must also put an end to karma. But if karma were to end with knowledge, then this body (which is the result of karma) must also (instantaneously) end. The question thus arises, how does one who knows brahman continue to live? And so we will see that Śaṅkara is forced into denying that all karma is ended with knowledge of brahman. Rather, some is and some is not. This will amount to a theory of three types of karma (i.e. saṃcita, āgāmi and prārabdha).
We therefore need to be careful of the assertion that, for Advaita, *karma* is a “convenient fiction” (Deutsch, 1973: 69). Deutsch clearly overstates his case (Nelson, 1996: 30), for if *karma* was indeed some sort of heuristic device, then it was a sticky one, one which refused to go away after it had surpassed its usefulness. Better to say that it was a meaningful notion which helped the Advaitins explain certain phenomena; such as bondage, class status, justice, morality, purification, and liberation; but a notion that only holds true for provisional reality.

According to certain texts, all *karma* is reportedly burnt up when ultimate knowledge dawns (Mu.U. II.ii.8 & Bh.G. IV.37). Nevertheless, the fact that the body of the seeker (which is the result of past *karma*) evidently remains intact even after *brahman*-knowledge has dawned forces Śaṅkara-the-exegete into a compromise whereby *karma* “crosses over” (as it were) into the terrain of the ultimate, with the *jīvan-mukta*’s mind flickering between absolute and provisional states. In other words, the ultimate gnoseological life kicks in prior to the ultimacy of *karma*-less, incorporeal liberation (*videha-mukti*). According to Śaṅkara, the liberated being (*jīvan-mukta*) must still live out a certain type of residual (*prārabdha*) *karma*, after which he will “fall”, as it were (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2).

But, at this level of explanation, the concept of *karma* actually becomes in-convenient. As Śaṅkara’s own “objector” states: Why doesn’t the knower fall immediately on the attainment of knowledge? How can one be sure that the knower’s *karma* will end at death? How does one know that rebirth will come to an end? (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2). Śaṅkara’s response is that knowledge of *brahman* has eliminated past *karma* which has yet to bear fruit (*saṃcita-karma*), but the knower is still subject to past *karma* that has already begun to bear fruit (*prārabdha-karma*). This *karma* does not affect his
conduct, and for the rest of his existence, his conduct is said to be “beyond good and evil” (Deutsch, 1973: 100). This does not mean that he may act as he likes; rather, he has gone beyond the making of merit (punya) and demerit (pāpa), and will thus produce no future (āgāmi) karma.\(^\text{177}\)

His prārabdha-karma will naturally wear out with the passing of time, just as an arrow which has left the bow must travel and then come to a stop (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2). But the problem of the “delay” will not go away so easily, and even Śaṅkara, who claims that it is “illogical” (anupapannam) that one who has put an end to ignorance should take rebirth (B.S.Bh. III.ii.9), is later forced to admit that rebirth may be necessary if the knower is given a “mission” (adhikāra) by the gods (III.iii.32). In order to answer the question of how long this mission will last, Śaṅkara again turns to the analogy of the arrow (ibid.), whereby the end of the mission means the falling of the man. But the question of how long it takes for prārabdha-karma to end is never made clear, for it seems to be at the mercy of the gods.\(^\text{178}\) In other words, the “liberated” being does not as yet have the total freedom of action (kāmacāra) or self-rulership (sva-raj) mentioned in the Ch.Up. (VII.xxv.2). This sits in contrast to the bodhisattva, who makes it his own mission to return for the sake of other beings. But in order to have his “own” mission, he must remain an ‘agent’, so the selflessness of the bodhisattva is again brought into question.

For Śaṅkara, the teacher’s passing on of the knowledge of brahman produces no positive karma whatsoever for himself, for none of the knower’s actions bear any

\(^{177}\) Cf. the Buddha’s description of a true monk (Dhp. 267) and a true Brahmin (Dhp. 412).

\(^{178}\) Śaṅkara discusses divine missions here on his opponent’s terms. There is no hint in Śaṅkara’s ethical philosophy that the brahman-knower awaits these missions; quite the opposite.
personal fruit (Ch.U.Bh.VI.xiv.2). Of course, it will help the pupil toward removing past karma. This act of teaching is not to be seen as an obligatory duty, but as selfless, spontaneous action, arising from within the jīvan-mukta’s very nature. This spontaneity is indicated in the Upaniṣads by the notion of child-like behaviour, whereby the mukta acts “howsoever he may, being just so” (yena syāt tenedrśa eva) (Br.U. III.v.1). According to the V.C., this includes a form of altruism:

\[
\text{ayam sva-bhāvah svata eva yat para śramāpanodapraṇaṇam mahātmanām}
\]

It is the very nature of those of great-self to labour of their own accord in order to dispel the troubles of others (V.C. 38).

And Śaṅkara seems to reinstate the notion of Dharma and duty, stating that the enlightened (vidvān) should act according to the laws of scripture (smṛti). He seems rather cautious about the interpretation of the Upaniṣads, insisting that “howsoever he may” does not imply “disrespectful” (anādarah) behaviour (Br.U.Bh. III.v.1). Rather, the teacher needs to act with a certain level of modesty, and so Śaṅkara reads “child-like” (bālyena) to mean free from haughtiness (darpa) (B.S.Bh. III.iv.50). As this teaching will necessarily include the use of the great sayings (mahāvākyā), we should also be cautious about such statements as, “The need for sacred texts loses its validity only for the adept” (Isayeva, 1993: 197). Such language of transcendence, if limited to injunctions, may well be appropriate. However, it is problematic once the brahman-knower takes on the ‘job’ of teacher (ācarya), and as such turns around to face the world. It is with language that he turns around, and it is the language of scripture. Thus, while the jīvan-mukta is beyond being directed by the scripture (B.S.Bh. II.iii.48), it is still his instrumental means of directing others. Therefore, the “deep-rooted reliance upon the language of śruti” (Isayeva, 1993: 237) is a trait that the Advaitin adept never shrugs off, and its authoritative validity is demonstrated in
Advaita’s insistence on the śruti as enlightening device par excellence. In fact, Śaṅkara explicitly rejects the idea that the Vedas become invalid after one has let go of the false sense of agency, for they remain meaningful with regard to knowledge of brahman (Bh.G.Bh. 18.66). Thus, the need for sacred texts never loses its validity. When the Upaniṣads themselves speak of the Vedas as no Vedas (vedā avedāḥ), Śaṅkara glosses it as, “Since he transcends those rites, the Vedas are not the Vedas” (tat karmātiṇḍikramaṇāt etasmin kālo vedā api avedāḥ sampadyante) (Bṛ.U.Bh. IV.iii.22). In other words, he takes it to apply only to the pūrva section on rites, and the Upaniṣads are left untouched.

For Śāntideva, it would seem to be a case of business as usual, for the bodhisattva has already been involved in selfless activity, and is now simply capable of more of the same. From the early stages of the path, his actions have been motivated by the desire to liberate all beings. But given that his vision of this world has so radically changed, that he has now attained to the level of “seeing” (the first bhūmi), we may well ask what it is like to see the world from the (subjective) position of emptiness. For if one sees one’s non-self, who is it that acts, and whose intentions are carried out?

Here I wish to introduce a hermeneutic device (Figs. 1 & 2), a new way of describing the vision of the metaphysical and ethical worlds of both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva. I argue for a model which is more complex than the “either/or” model of Western philosophy, a model which may take us beyond the either-self-or-no-self parameters. In doing this, we will be forced into re-evaluating just where the borders lie between a tradition which supposedly believes in a ‘self’ and one which supposedly rejects it. When we combine both the ultimate world of metaphysics with the conventional world of ethics, that is, when we take the Two Truths together, we are forced into
acknowledging the relocations of self which take place in both Hinduism’s and Buddhism’s most revisionary exponents. This relocation will lead to a model which is best described, not as “either/or”, but as “both/and”.

Moreover, we need to enter into a debate, begun by Paul Williams (1998a), which questions Śāntideva’s insistence on the no-self position, even at the cost of the bodhisattva path becoming unjustified. I argue for a model which is more complex than the either-self-or-no-self model that Williams assumes. This will take into consideration the context of each chapter of the BCA as well as the Compendium. The intention is to make use of the aforementioned hermeneutic device, a schematic diagram, to both challenge Williams’ dualistic approach, and provide the reader with a new point of entry into Śāntideva’s personal vision of the bodhisattva. We have seen that, in order to attain ultimate realisation, according to Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, one must become cognisant of one’s selflessness. It is not so much then that this selflessness is subsequently made central to their ethical systems; their ethics are rather embedded in this search for selflessness.

Now Nagel (1978: 100) states that “Ethics is a struggle against a certain form of the egocentric predicament”. We can see that both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva tackle this issue head on, destroying the very notion of ego as a persisting centre of individualistic thinking. We have called their resultant activity “constructive altruism”. According to Nagel (p3), altruism depends on: 1) recognising the reality of other persons, and 2) an equivalent capacity to regard oneself as merely one individual among many. But have we not just witnessed both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva denying the reality of persons? And can it be said that a brahman-knower or a bodhisattva are merely individuals among many individuals? Neither answer is a simple ‘yes’ or ‘no’.  

268
Both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva will deny that there is an ultimately individuated person to be recognised, but neither will deny that there is a “conventional person” there in front of them, with a name, a caste, a gender and a relative qualification. As for whether they have the capacity to see themselves as “one individual among many”, we would then need to ask what an “individual” is. For sure, they will both recognise that their bodies provisionally belong to a certain karmic history. As for the mind, Śaṅkara will claim that unenlightened beings have their own mind (manas) which interferes with the pure consciousness of brahman, whereas the brahman-knower’s mind only minimally and infrequently interferes with brahman-consciousness. As such, the jīvan-mukta both is and is not an individual agent, with the emphasis on the latter. Now Śāntideva will have the bodhisattva recognise the Vow (praṇidhāna) he took as his vow. That is, the “Buddhist too requires an agent-oriented perspective to reach a more impersonal goal” (de Silva, 2007: 243). Nonetheless, it is this vow which makes bodhisattvas different from other beings, in that they have a duty to be self-defacing. Furthermore, when the bodhisattva has seen the non-self of his own being, he does not allow that to be transferred onto other beings.

Therefore, by seeing themselves as empty of individuated self, and yet continuing to see others as having an individuated self, the bodhisattva and the jīvan-mukta quite deliberately adopt a view which sees others as of a different kind. In other words, they do not put their own self down, but rather emphasize the individuality of the other. This is not a simple “other-regarding” ethics; it is an “other-constructing” ethics. The bodhisattva agrees to acknowledge the personal suffering of the other, whilst the brahman-knower agrees to acknowledge the qualifications of the potential student, allowing them their badge of caste where no castes ultimately exist. So, the
manner by which they create what we might see from the outside as an “altruistic situation” is done, not at the expense of their own self, but through the temporary elevation of the other, which is itself derived from a prior decision to see the world in conventional (and thus fabricated) terms. Hence, I have spoken of “constructive altruism”, and as such, I re-define altruism.

It could indeed be argued that altruism \textit{demands} such an unbalanced view of oneself versus others. For one thing, “self-sacrificial altruism would seem to entail a positive violation of principles of justice” (Krebs & van Hesteren, 1994: 126), stemming from the fact that such actors do not see themselves as “one individual among many”. That is, it might be said that the heroes of this world see themselves as having a particular duty to act heroically, a duty that they would not demand of others (see Urmson, 1958). In fact, Smart (1973: 32) sees this as the distinguishing feature between altruism and utilitarianism. We see that “Western altruism” demands a temporary “sacrifice” of self rather than a complete over-coming of the very belief in self. The self is thus taken as being a thing which is normally constant, but which, under certain conditions, can be devalued. We now know that this is in sharp contrast to both Advaita and Madhyamaka assumptions. And with the emergence of non-self philosophies in the West, this surely has implications for the future discussion of Comparative Ethics.
6.1 Śāntideva: Wisdom and Compassion – A Complex Model

I would imagine that by this stage, Śāntideva’s altruistic intent has already been established. He told us:

\[ \text{mā bhūtān mama kuśala-mūlaṃ dharma jñānaṃ kauśalyaṃ vā yan na sarva sattvopajīvyāṃ syād} \]

May there be in me no root of good or knowledge of Dharma or skilfulness which is not of benefit to all beings (Ś.S. 33).

In the BCA, he resolves thus:

\[ \text{anyā sambaddham asmīti niścayāṃ kuru he maṇah | sarva sattvārtham utsṛjya nānyac cintyaṃ tvayādhunā ||} \]

So mind, make the resolve “I am bound to others”. From now on, you must have no other concern than the welfare of all beings (BCA. 8.137).

Śāntideva’s major task is the justification of this compassionate response towards all other beings despite their illusory nature. Specifically, he wishes to persuade others to take on the Bodhisattva Vow to liberate all beings from suffering and from false seeing. It would seem most likely that he is first and foremost appealing to Buddhist monks on the verge of taking the Bodhisattva Vow. He may also be appealing to certain “Śrāvaka-oriented” monks whose primary intent is their own liberation. That is, Śāntideva sees both hesitancy and reluctance towards altruism within his own Buddhist camp.

What then would appeal to both of these groups? The first doctrine that would appeal to them would be the First Noble Truth of the Buddha (see S.N. V.421), which is that all beings subject to conventional reality are in a state of suffering. Because this audience would believe that all beings are subject to rebirth, they would envisage this suffering as endless. But the Third Noble Truth states that the truth of nirvāṇa is an
end to suffering (ibid.). So Śāntideva’s argument must appeal to a group of monks who perhaps regularly oscillate between meditational states of non-suffering and other more “ordinary” states. If they do not so oscillate between states, they at least know that it is possible. Further, as these monks have yet to be fully convinced of the benefits of taking the Bodhisattva Vow, we must assume (from Śāntideva’s perspective) that they have a tendency to be locked into durable states of self-interest. Put simply, his Buddhist audience wish to liberate themselves, and only themselves, from suffering. So Śāntideva begins, quite predictably, with the basic truths of suffering, self-love (ātma-sneha), and the wish for happiness:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{parātma samatām ādau bhāvayed evam ādarāt} \quad | \\
&sama duḥkhā sukhaḥ sarve pālanīyā mayātma vat \quad || \\
&\text{hastādi bhedena bahu prakaraē kāyo yathaikah paripālanīyah} \quad | \\
&tathā jagad bhinnam abhinna duḥkhā sukhaṃ makāṃ sarvam idaṃ \\
&tathāva || \; yady apy anyeṣu deheṣu mad duḥkhāṃ na prābādhate \quad | \\
&tathāpi tad duḥkhāṃ eva mamātma sneha duḥśahām \quad ||
\end{align*}
\]

At first, one should meditate carefully on the equality of self and other. Thinking, “All experience happiness and suffering, [so] I should take care of them as I do myself”. Just as the body with its many parts - divided into hands, etc. - is protected as one thing, so too should this [whole world of beings], which though divided, is undivided in its nature to experience suffering and happiness. Even though my pain does not torment the body of others, that pain on the other hand is unbearable for me based on the love for myself (BCA. 8.90-92).

His next move is to shift the focus onto the other:

\[
\begin{align*}
&tathā yady apy asamvedyam anyad duḥkhāṃ mayātmanā \quad | \\
&tathāpi tasya tad duḥkhāṃ ātma-snehena duḥśahām \quad ||
\end{align*}
\]

Although the suffering of another cannot be experienced by me personally, nevertheless, for him that pain is unbearable because of self-love (8.93).

We might note here that Śāntideva has actually helped himself to one of Nagel’s conditions for altruism, which is the “capacity to regard oneself as merely one individual among many” (see above). At this conventional level, persons are real
indeed. If one has self-love, something which is said to subsist until the first bhūmi (Ś.S. 11), and if one accepts the general Buddhist truth that all beings (conventionally) suffer, then one must accept that others suffer. One does not need to feel their pain to know that they have it. All one needs to see is their self-love (which will show in their selfish behaviour) and their pain follows through inference. We might write this logically as follows: 1) I suffer, 2) I am a self-loving human, 3) they appear (from their behaviour) to be self-loving humans; therefore 4) they suffer. We have now created the ground for sympathy on purely logical grounds based on one’s own experience.

This is not quite yet “compassion”, more a sense of sharing a common ground with others, an “interpersonal framework” (Wetlesen, 2002: 60). It seems comparable to Hume’s notion of “sympathy”, which should not be confused with the sentiment of compassion, which is “merely one of its products” (Penelhum, 1993: 134). Naturally, Śāntideva wants to go beyond mere participation in the emotional life of others, and wishes for a more pro-active stance. While for Hume it might be enough to feel at one with others, for Śāntideva the goal is to become, not their equal, but their helper. His is the kind of sympathy born of “unequal power”, derived from both the suffering other and from asymmetrical levels of wisdom (cf. Ricoeur, 1994: 191).

It is interesting to note how Śāntideva goes through these steps. For example, with regard to the fact that we all suffer, he could have just gone straight to the conclusion, on authoritative grounds, viz. the First Noble Truth; but this would not have involved the audience emotionally. However, he makes no attempt to prove that pain is undesirable. It is of course an accepted truth in Buddhism that suffering is not only felt, but is undesirable. It is the basic reason why the audience became Buddhist
monks in the first place, the reason in which nirvāṇa finds its value. But we might also note that it defies a rational explanation. As Hume noted, if you ask a man why he hates pain, he cannot supply an answer (Enquiries, Appendix I, 244). Pain and suffering are (conventionally) basic facts, assumed (by most) to be undesirable. We can find statements to this effect scattered throughout the BCA. For example:

\[
yadi tu svecchayā siddhiḥ sarvesāṃ eva dehinām | 
na bhavet kasyacid duḥkhāṃ na duḥkhāṃ kaścid icchati ||
\]

If all sentient beings were to have their wish fulfilled, no one would suffer. No one wishes for [their own] suffering (BCA. 6.34).

He later extends this to give a more general account of the undesirability of pain itself, unrelated to the person who it happens to afflict:

\[
duḥkhāṃ kasmān nivāryaṃ cet sarvesāṃ avivādataḥ | 
vāryaṃ cet sarvam apy evaṃ na ced ātmāpi sattvavat ||
\]

That suffering should be prevented, no one disputes. If any of it is to be prevented, then all of it is. If not, then that goes for me too (8.103).

Put simply, either pain is to be accepted, including my own, or pain is to be tackled head on, including that of others. And of course, no Buddhist can accept the first option. But must they accept the second? Logically they need not. Not that they could claim that they are justified in willing pain on those they dislike, for this would go against the Buddhist ethics of non-harming (ahimsā). What they might say is: “I feel my pain, and wish to be free of it, but I do not feel his or her pain in the same way. I know they have pain, but what is that to me?” In other words, they may stick with self-love and go no further.

However, this response is unacceptable, for Nagel (1978) is surely right when he says that, “in order to accept something as a goal for oneself, one must be able to regard its achievement by oneself as an objective good” (p86). And in Buddhist terms, nirvāṇa
(viz. the end of suffering) simply must be taken by these monks as an objective good. What they are more likely to say then, is: “I feel my pain, I recognise that life is suffering and wish to be ultimately free of it. I know others have pain and are subject to all kinds of suffering, but how am I to free them of it? I can only free myself”. That is, “emotional empathy for pain, however intense, does not necessarily result in a helping response” (Oliner & Oliner, 1992: 174). This may not be due to self-love, but more a sense of self-limitation. If someone comes to me complaining of lung cancer, I am not uncaring if I fail to perform an operation on them. The monks might therefore reasonably claim that “ought” implies “can”. As the Compendium states, “There is no fault concerning matters beyond one’s powers” (anāpattih sva śakty aviṣayešu kāryeṣu) (Ś.S. 15). Hence, it is reasonable to accept that others suffer whilst maintaining the view that one lacks the means to put an end to this. Of course, I could drive someone to a hospital, or even put bandages on their wounds, but this will only reduce their suffering, it will not put an end to it, and will certainly not put an end to the cycle of suffering (samsāra). They may also say that, “one cannot purify another”, or that, “one should not abandon one’s own purpose for the purpose of another” (Dhp. 165-166). Taken this way, it would seem to parallel Nagel’s (1978) point that there are “certain ends and objects which one is in a logically better position to pursue for oneself than for others” (p129).

The fact is that Śāntideva has still failed to establish a logical foundation for a life of selfless conduct. His first response to this failure is an attempt to shorten the gap between the way his audience see their own plight and that of others. He does this: 1)

---

179 Naturally, the latter verse should not be taken as an outright rejection of compassion/altruism (see below), but rather seen in the soteriological context of nirvāṇa. It does not mean that “the only real help is self-help”, as Matics (1971: 19) implies. Nor should it be taken as proof of a transcendent self, as Pérez-Remón (1980: 28) suggests.
through a reiteration of the universality of pain, 2) by an appeal to sympathy, 3) by trying to weaken their self-love, and 4) by strengthening their compassion for others.

Now, altruism, on Comte’s original account, involved the “subordination of self-love to meeting the needs of others” (Scott and Seglow, 2007: p16). But Śāntideva first wishes to demonstrate an equal ground for concern before going on to the more developed subordination of selfish concern. Thus:

\[
\text{mayānyad duḥkhaṃ hantavyaṃ duḥkhhatvād ātma duḥkhavat} \mid \\
\text{anugrāhyā mayānye 'pi sattvatvād ātma sattvavat} \quad || \\
\text{yadā mama paresām ca tulyam eva sukham priyaṃ} \mid \\
\text{tad ātmanaḥ ko višeṣo yenātraiva sukhodyamaḥ} \quad || \\
\text{yadā mama pareṣaṃ ca bhayaṃ duḥkhaṃ ca na priyaṃ} \mid \\
\text{tad ātmanaḥ ko višeṣo yattaṃ raksāmi netaraṃ} \quad ||
\]

I should dispel the pain of others, just as I do my own, based on the fact that it is pain. And I should help others for they are beings like me. Since happiness is equally dear to me and others, what’s special about me that I strive after my happiness alone? Since pain and fear are disliked by me and others, what’s special about me that I protect myself and not the other? (BCA. 8.94-96).

At the conventional level of discourse, it would seem that he has gone as far as he can in his “logical” approach to compassion. We have no need to qualify this with the metaphysics of non-self for he has yet to raise the issue. At this level of discourse, he is in fact talking to those who still hold to the sense of self, a self equally prone to pain as all other selves. With such rhetoric, he may well have convinced the more sentimental amongst the audience, but what of the hardened intellectuals? I believe he realises that he needs a second approach, that is, the Two Truths.

Before we go any further though, I would like to introduce the first of my diagrams (see Fig. 1 on p280). With this diagram, I wish to introduce a new dimension into the debate, through which I hope to demonstrate that the Two Truths ought not to be seen in a dualistic manner. To believe that all Śāntideva has open to him is either
conventional truth or ultimate truth is to miss a major dimension of his argument. It is not simply a question of asking whether there is a self (ātman) or not a self (anātman), but about asking when one should see one way or the other. That is, it is about *flickering* between these views. I have added arrows to the axes to further indicate the constant shifts involved. The upper section of the diagram maps the conventional world of the *bodhisattva*, a world where the ‘I’ exists on the *bodhisattva*’s side of the fence, and a world where other beings exist on the other side of the fence. This world is neither empty of inherent existence, nor mind-created. It is a world to be taken very seriously, a world run by karmic laws, where merit is accumulated and dispersed amongst the needy. The lower section of the diagram maps the ultimate world of the *bodhisattva*, a world which offers him a means to renunciation from the evil world of the other. It also offers him the opportunity to see the emptiness of his own self and the self of the other. This diagram helps to highlight that the ‘other’ for Śāntideva is to be contrasted with the ‘me’, not with the ‘self’. Thus, there appear to be *four views* open to Śāntideva: 1) I have a self which suffers and so do others, 2) I have a self which suffers whilst others are empty of self, 3) I have no self and neither do others, and 4) I have no self and yet others have a self which suffers.

However, it is in fact even more complicated than that. For one thing, in order to renounce, one must focus on one’s own suffering, whilst perhaps accusing the world of creating problems for oneself. It is not enough to say “I suffer and they suffer”. To gain distance, one must *disparage* the other. That is, one must form a mind which rejects the world. And so, in his earlier ascetic mode, Śāntideva wrote:

\[
\text{ātmotkarṣah parāvarṇaḥ saṁsāra rati saṁkathā} \quad | \\
\text{ityādy avaśyam aśubhaṃ kiṃ cid bālasya bālataḥ} \quad || \\
\text{evam tasyāpi tat saṅgāt tenānartho samāgamaḥ} \quad | \\
\text{ekākī viharisyāmi sukham aklīṣṭa mānasāḥ} \quad ||
\]
Self-aggrandizement, scorn for others, talk of the pleasures of life, etc. When two fools meet, all things disagreeable will certainly follow. In this way, contact with [a fool] brings harm [to myself] and to him. [So] I will dwell alone, happily, my mind undefiled (BCA. 8.13-14).

If one moves from this mind-state and assumes common sympathy for others, one will need to remind oneself that others will not listen to reason. People play deaf and dumb. They hardly deserve to be helped. Śāntideva writes:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kṣaṇād bhavanti suḥrdo bhavanti ripavaḥ kṣaṇāt} & \mid \\
\text{toṣa sthāne prakupyanti durārādhāḥ prthag janāḥ} & \|
\end{align*}
\]

One moment they are friends, the next moment enemies. In a pleasant situation they get angry. Common people are impossible to please (BCA. 8.10).

In fact, they are almost impossible to help:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{nānādhimuktikāḥ sattvā jinair api na toṣitāḥ} & \mid \\
\text{kim punar māḍśair ajñais tasmāt kim loka cintayā} & \|
\end{align*}
\]

Beings are of varying character. Not even a Buddha could satisfy them. Let alone the ignorant like me. Thus why worry about the worldly? (BCA. 8.22).

So the “Others/Not-self” quadrant includes a deconstruction process. People to whom we are emotionally attached are rejected as being a ‘hindrance’ to my liberation:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{eka utpadyate jantur mrīyate caika eva hi} & \mid \\
\text{nānyasya tad vyathābhāgāḥ kim priyair vighna kārakaiḥ} & \|
\end{align*}
\]

Man is born alone and indeed he dies alone. No one else shares his suffering. So what’s the use of these “dear” ones, these hindrance-makers? (BCA. 8.33)

Clearly, where Śāntideva wants to have us, if we are to be selfless compassionate beings, is to see others as needy of our help, and to see our job as being that of the helper. But he cannot have us believing too much in our own existence, for then we will fall into the ancient habit of putting oneself first. Ideally then, the bodhisattva must see himself as having no-self whilst seeing others as suffering and of being
worthy of his help. Thus, the Comtean subordination of self-love to meeting the needs of others is only a preliminary step in the process of becoming a bodhisattva, for it remains within the framework of an individualistic self-conception. So the above verses which depend on this self-love (BCA. 8.94-96) still position the monk firmly within conventional reality.

The bodhisattva must move on from this to see that there is in fact no self which requires subordination. The love of self must be replaced by the knowledge of no-self, but this knowledge of no-self must itself be over-ridden by the compassionate vow to liberate all other beings (who happen to believe they are selves).

We are thus required to read the question of self and no-self within a complex framework of contexts. While aware that there are other more social contexts within which Buddhism might allow for the notion of self, such as monastic/lay distinctions or king/subject relationships; here the term “context” is being used more in the sense of time than role. In other words, though being a bodhisattva may indeed be seen as a role, it is one that depends on a progressive shift from right motivation through renunciation to selfless activity. One’s view of self is therefore a function of one’s level of wisdom rather than of one’s social circumstance.

There are perhaps two exceptions to this: first, in that a bodhisattva may (theoretically) remain in a state of mind which sees all as non-self so long as he is not confronted by a living being; and second, when a bodhisattva meets with another bodhisattva and must ask about their relative level of attainment. The first instance implies that there are times when a bodhisattva will need to switch from seeing all as non-self to seeing the confronted being as taking themselves to have a self. The
second instance demonstrates that even though a bodhisattva is said to have no self, that does not imply that all bodhisattvas are thus equal, and status does in fact play a part in their interaction (see below). Let us now turn to the diagrammatic representation of the bodhisattva’s life and see the domains available to him:

Fig. 1

The above diagram represents a visual summary of the BCA. The key principle to grasp here is that Śāntideva is well aware that the would-be bodhisattva must have a keen sense of self-agency in order to take the vow to benefit all beings and to ultimately deliver them from suffering. Likewise, he must see beings as existent in order to form the wish to benefit them. If I do not exist, how can I take the Vow? If suffering beings do not exist, how can one free them? Indeed, why would one bother?
The active component of Buddhist ethics, then, cannot be based on the *anātman* principle, and the *anātman* principle should not be used to deny the conventional reality of persons. The one who takes the Vow is a person: me; and the ones I vow to help are persons: Peter, Paul and Mary. This is fundamental.

But let us not forget Śāntideva’s predicament. He has just managed to convince some sentimental listeners to turn towards the path of selfless compassion. Perhaps this group has now gained “aspiring” bodhicitta (see BCA. 1.15-16), that is, the wish to benefit all beings. But he is left with the hard-headed intellectual bunch. As we have already suggested, the only strategy left open to him is the ultimate side of the Two Truths. He needs to convince the audience that they are the same as all others, not only in their desire to be free of suffering (conventional truth), but in their non-being (ultimate truth). His solution then lies in his ability to prove to others (or persuade them into believing) that they have no ultimate selfhood and that they must help others who equally have no ultimate selfhood, but suffer from the false belief that they do. It is not that altruism directly follows from the insight into *anātman*; rather, one is made more available to others when one disregards one’s own needs, and this is felt to follow from the insight into *anātman*.

He thus picks up on the everyday fact that we care about our own future. This caring about our future may not appear strange, especially if we adhere to Nagel’s (1978: 38-39) premise that we all take our future as being part of our own life. But two Buddhist doctrines make it more peculiar than Nagel would admit. First, the idea that the present mental self is but a momentary cognition to be succeeded by another momentary cognition, with the present physical self being a momentary arrangement of elements and conditions. So your future “self” is not “you” (i.e. your present
bundle of form and mind states), but another such bundle as yet to arise. Second, the
belief in rebirth means that your “life” is better seen as your “continuum” (saṃtāna).
In other words, it would seem that to care about this future bundle, whether in this
life-span or the next life or ten lives down the line, is equivalent to caring for
“another” being. The question is therefore more subtle than a simple dilemma of
prudence over altruism.

There are two ways a Buddhist can go from here. Either you see the stupidity of your
ways and stop caring about yourself, or you make the sympathetic leap and see others
as equally deserving of your care and attention. That is, you either give up prudence,
or you take up altruism. In other words, Śāntideva’s argument could just as well
motivate apathy as compassion. Logically, of course, both options are open, but
remember that the starting point was self-love. So it would seem to be an assumption
of Śāntideva that the first option is blocked by a natural inclination to care for your
own “self”:

\[
\begin{align*}
tad duḥkhena na me bādhety ato yadi na rakṣyate & \mid
nāgāmi kāya duḥkhān me bādhā tat kena rakṣyate & \mid \mid 
aham eva tadāpīti mithyeyam parikalpanā & \mid 
anya eva mṛto yasmād anya eva prajāyate & \mid \mid 
yadi yasyaiva yad duḥkhham rakṣyam tasyaiva tan mataṃ & \mid 
pāda duḥkham na hastasya kasmāt tat tena rakṣyate & \mid 
ayuktam api ced etad ahaṃkārāt pravartate & \mid 
yad ayuktam nivartyaṃ tat svam anyac ca yathā balam & \mid \mid 
\end{align*}
\]

If I don’t care about them because their pain does not afflict me, then
why do I care about [my] future-body’s suffering when it doesn’t
afflict [the current] me? The notion “It is the same ‘me’ even then” is
false. Since it is one [person] who dies and quite another that is
[re-] born. If you believe that pain should be protected by whoever it
belongs to, [note that] a pain in the foot is not of the hand, so why
does one protect the other? If it is argued that this is inappropriate as
it proceeds from self-identity, then one ought to equally refrain from
such “inappropriateness” to do with oneself (BCA. 8.97-100).
The final point then is surely not a recommendation, but a sarcastic punch-line. Clayton (2006: 64), through her assessment of the *Compendium*, comes to the very same conclusion:

> Just as it is natural to do things now to benefit yourself in the future, even though it is not the same person, you should work to benefit other beings besides yourself in the present.

Śāntideva has pointed out to his audience that the person they are to be in their next life is not the same person that they are now. It is indeed the same ‘person-as-continuum’, but not the same ‘specific-person’. Thus, the ‘person’ who is reborn is “neither the same nor different” from the one that died (Collins, 1982: 190). It is therefore not a total absurdity to care for the ‘person’ that you will be reborn as, just as it is not absurd for the hand to protect the foot. But if it is not absurd to care for this future person, why not care for other people as well? The response, of course, is that the person I will be in my next life is continuous with the person I am now in a way that other beings are not.

It should be noted that I have taken what Paul Williams (1998a: 31) calls the “narrower” interpretation of Śāntideva’s verses. The Sanskrit compound I have translated as “future-body’s suffering” (āgāmikāyaduḥkhān) (BCA. 8.97) might conceivably be translated as “body’s future suffering”. This “wider” interpretation would be more problematic for Śāntideva, because he would then be implying that me (t₁) and me (t₂) are different persons. I do not think we need to take Śāntideva in this way, the reason being that he specifically mentions rebirth in the next verse.¹⁸⁰

¹⁸⁰The Dalai Lama (1994: 102) seems to be working from a Tibetan text which suggests this “wider” application, but still finds it justifiable. See Padmakara (2003) translation from the Tibetan text, which speaks of “my future pain” (p124). However, I think that a defence of this “wider” position would be much more problematic.
Nevertheless, it would seem that if the audience did understand him on this wider interpretation, he would have even less success in convincing them that caring for others is logically equivalent to caring for one’s own self. After all, it would seem only rational to brush one’s teeth at \( t_1 \) to prevent suffering toothache at \( t_2 \). I would therefore reject Pelden’s (2007: 287) claim that it “makes no sense” to protect oneself from future suffering. It clearly does make sense in the conventional world. It would seem that Śāntideva needs to go back to the drawing board. There is one move open to him, but it would seem to be based on a doctrine that his audience may not accept. He states that:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ye kecid duḥkhitā loke sarva te sva-sukhecchayā} & | \\
\text{ye kecit sukhitā loke sarva te 'nya-sukhecchayā} & ||
\end{align*}
\]

All those who suffer in the world do so because of their desire for their own happiness. All those who are happy in the world are so because of their desire for the happiness of others (BCA. 8.129).

He seems to think that this wins the argument, for he asks us rhetorically “Why say more?” (8.130a). But surely he does need to say more, for how, we may ask, could this doctrine possibly be proven? The first premise clearly follows from the Second Noble Truth, which states that suffering is the result of selfish desire or craving (see S.N. V.421). Thus all Buddhists ought to accept it. But the second premise seems to assume an altruistic context, which is the very thing the audience has yet to be convinced of. It assumes that happiness is the result of altruistic conduct, and that even the personal strife which this conduct generates is itself turned into a form of happiness. Śāntideva seems to be asking how one could possibly be content without a sense of concern for others. It is reminiscent of Ricoeur’s (1994: 180) claim that “self-esteem and solicitude cannot be experienced or reflected upon one without the other”. This is not to be taken in the Aristotelian sense that the happy man needs friends (p182), but in the sense of what Scott & Seglow (2007: 125) call that “intrinsic
satisfaction” of the “saintly participation altruist”. This inner-satisfaction must be more fulfilling than the so-called bliss (sukha) of a private nirvāṇa.

As Śāntideva puts it:

\[
\text{mucyamāneṣu sattveṣu ye te prāmedva sāgarāḥ} \quad | \quad \text{taireva nanu paryāptam mokṣeṇārasa kena kim} \quad ||
\]

Those who over-flow with joy when beings are being liberated; it’s surely they that will be fulfilled. What’s the point of ‘tasteless’ [individual] freedom? (BCA. 8.108).

One is reminded of Levinas’ more overtly humanistic ethics of “being for-the-other”, described by Richard Cohen as taking precedence over, and being better than, being for-itself (in Levinas, 2006: xxvi), with both the descriptive and prescriptive connotations this carries. While their cultural goals may vary, both are critical of those complacent ones who would neglect their moral responsibility. But the “selfish” monk can still claim that his own liberation has a sweeter taste (for him) than the liberation of others. Or once again, he can claim that he is simply incapable of liberating others, so the “tasteless” freedom will just have to do. In other words, he can respond to both description and prescription.

In fact, the debate would now appear to be over types of bliss, for even Śāntideva admits that the meditating monk is in bliss. The argument pretends to be one of ‘bliss’ versus ‘higher bliss’, though it is no mere hedonistic argument.\(^{181}\) If it were hedonistic, we could not make sense of the notion that the bodhisattva selflessly postpones his entrance into the bliss of Nirvana in order to be of benefit to others.\(^{182}\)

\(^{181}\) For a discussion of relative bliss in early Buddhism, see Premasiri (1997). Also see S.N. IV.225 & M.N. I.505-506.

\(^{182}\) On the bodhisattva’s postponement of nirvāṇa, see Williams, 2009: 58ff.
This issue is made more complex by the fact that Śāntideva will later claim that the Śrāvaka monk’s nirvāṇa is “poorly-established” (duḥ-sthitam) (BCA. 9.44), and always will be unless he realises the emptiness of phenomena (9.48). The debate then is not about bliss at all, but about the two pillars of Mahāyāna Buddhism, wisdom and compassion.

Nevertheless, bliss is critical to the argument for two reasons. First, it has become a resting place for those monks who falsely believe that they are liberated. The bliss or happiness (su-kha) they feel is of course the negation of the suffering (duḥ-kha) they had felt, and thus the fruit of the merit produced by following the Buddhist Path. It could therefore be seen as the goal. But Śāntideva sees bliss more as a means than as a goal. In the hands of a bodhisattva, bliss is turned into a store-house of merit to be donated to the needy. This is possible for the Mahāyāna tradition, for to them karmic fruitfulness is ‘empty’ and does not inherently ‘belong’ to any particular ‘being’. In short, the bliss and non-abiding (apratīṣṭha) nirvāṇa Śāntideva has in mind trump the Śrāvaka bliss and private nirvāṇa through an inherent ability to benefit others.¹⁸³

In the BCA, we find this verse:

\[
\text{evam duḥkhāgni taptānāṃ śānti kuryām aham kadā} \ | \\
\text{puṇya-megha samudbhutaiḥ sukhopakaranaiḥ svakaiḥ} \ | | \\
\]

When will I be able to bring relief to those in this hellish fire, with offerings of bliss flowing from the clouds of my merit? (9.166)

¹⁸³ This is a slightly different argument than that found in the Bhagavad-Gītā. However, Malinar’s (2007) comment that chapter 14 “establishes Kṛṣṇa’s superiority by claiming that liberation in the god yields a happiness not to be found anywhere else” (p201) is equally relevant. Malinar continues, “The latter claim is important, since ‘happiness’ is regarded as an element of liberation in other ascetic traditions” (ibid.). Thus we see a constant competition in Indian traditions for the highest bliss.
The “cloud” (*megha*) metaphor is also found in the *Compendium* with reference to the *Gaṇḍavyūha Sūtra* (Ś.S. 122). The mind (*citta*) of the *bodhisattva* must be supported by roots of goodness (*kuśala-mūlaiḥ*). “Clouds of Dharma” (*dharma-meghāḥ*) must flow from this mind.¹⁸⁴ Here in the *BCA*, we see that a further analogy takes place between *Dharma* and bliss (*sukha*), such that merit (*punyā*) rains down from the *bodhisattva*’s compassionate mind in the form of bliss. And while the ‘Śrāvaka-bliss’ is to be enjoyed only by oneself, the ‘Mahāyāna-bliss’, like merit, is transferable. Clearly, this phenomenon of transfer of merit (*parināmanā*) is central to understanding Mahāyāna ethics.¹⁸⁵ Therefore, Śāntideva’s position on helping others may appear to be in direct opposition to the *Dhammapada*’s “one cannot purify another” and that “one should not abandon one’s own purpose for the purpose of another” (Dhp. 165-166).

Of course, the Buddha also said, “Go forth, oh monks, for the benefit of the many, for the happiness of the many, out of compassion for the world” (Vin.1.21).¹⁸⁶ This verse has been called an “altruistic exhortation” (Lewis, 2005: 88), and is highlighted by such scholars as Collins (1982: 194), Cousins (1997: 388) and Goodman (2009: 49) in defence of the apparent lack of emphasis on compassion in early Buddhism.¹⁸⁷ Nevertheless, Śāntideva’s final ethics do go beyond what is generally taken to be the

---

¹⁸⁴ Note that *dharma-meghāḥ* is also the name the *Gaṇḍavyūha Sūtra* gives to the tenth *bhūmi*.

¹⁸⁵ For a useful overview of the literature on merit transference, see Clayton (2006: 76-88). Bear in mind though that her claim that Śāntideva did not accept the notion of a “trace of impurity” (p87) is false once we understand his use of a voluntary delusion. As for Clayton’s objection that Śāntideva’s ethics demand the elimination of *klesas* (ibid.), my theory of flickering overcomes this.

¹⁸⁶ Also found in the Sarvāstivādin *Catuṣpariṣat Sūtra* (see trans. Kloppenborg, 1973)

¹⁸⁷ The anomaly could be explained as: “Do not put others before yourself until you have become an *arahat*”. This would fit both scriptural contexts. The *Dhammapada* speech, according to the commentarial story, was given to a single would-be *arahat* (see Narada, 1993: 150); the *Vinaya* speech was given to the sixty enlightened *arahats* (Kloppenborg, 1973: 43). Thus, the Buddha’s philosophy may be interpreted as, “One’s own house must be put in order before busying oneself with other people’s” (Cooper & James, 2005: 56).
Buddhist rationale for action, seeing the Śrāvaka emphasis on “renunciation and ascetic self-restraint” (Collins, 1982: 194) as a mere preliminary for selfless action in the world. This distinction still remains even if we take on Gombrich’s (2009: 78-91) recent re-evaluation of the Buddha’s teachings on the four “boundless states”. For, even if the bodhisattva-path is indeed a “restatement of the spirit of the brahma-vihāras” (Smart, 1997: 87), and even if “compassion is replete in all strands of the Buddhist tradition” (Carter, 1997: 365), it is generally accepted that there remains a special emphasis on compassion and altruistic action in the Mahāyāna that went beyond that found in the early tradition. So when Collins (1982) claims that Buddhism does not provide for either self-interest or “self-denying altruism” (p193), he was talking from within the Theravāda (monastic) tradition. Contrast this with the following verses of Śāntideva:

```
yadi dāsyāmi kim bhokṣye ity ātmārthe pīṣācatā ||
yadi bhokṣye kim dadāmīti parārthe devarājatā ||
ātmārthaṃ pīḍayitvānāṃ narakādiṣu pacyate ||
ātmānaṃ pīḍayitvā tu parārthaṃ sarva saṃpadaḥ
   durgatir nīcatā maurkhyaṃ yayaivātmonnatīchayā ||
tāmevānāṃ sarva saṃkrāmya sugatiḥ satkṛṭīr matīḥ ||
ātmārthaṃ param ājñapya dāsatvādy anubhūyate
   parārthaṃ tvenam ājñapya svāmitvādy anubhūyate
ye kecid duḥkhitā loke sarve te sva-sukhechchhayā ||
ye kecid sukhitā loke sarve te 'nya-sukhechchhayā ||
```

“If I give, what will I have?” – Such concern for oneself is demonic. “If I have, what can I give?” – Such concern for others is divine. Oppressing others for one’s own sake, one will roast in hell. But from oppressing oneself for the sake of others, one always meets with success. Distress, inferiority and stupidity are the result of desiring one’s own promotion. By transferring that same desire onto others, one gains happiness, honour and intelligence. Putting others at the service of one’s own aims will lead to your own servitude. Putting yourself at the service of others will lead to your own [true] lordship. All those who suffer in the world do so because of their desire for their own happiness. All those who are happy in the world are so because of their desire for the happiness of others (BCA. 8.125-129).
While true that “oppressing oneself for the sake of others” is not Śāntideva’s final position, it is an important step towards a life of pure selfless activity.

But returning to our blissful “selfish” monk, he may still feel unmoved by Śāntideva’s “my bliss is better than your bliss” argument. And he is unlikely to accept that his liberation is poorly established. So Śāntideva now adopts yet another tactic, the rhetoric of shame and blame. He thus speaks to the ‘lazy’ and ‘proud’ monk in everyone present. Thus, “We must cause him to fall from bliss, and continually appoint him distressful duties” (sukhāca cyāvāniyo ‘yaṃ yajyo ’smad vyathayā sadā) (BCA. 8.154a); and again, more generally: “Make yourself fall from bliss and involve yourself in the suffering of others” (sukhāca cyāvayātmānāṃ para duḥkhe niyojaya) (8.161a). But such self-punishing rhetoric may still fail to arouse the listener into compassionate action, though it might lead to a feeling of guilt.

What Śāntideva seems to require then is a philosophical means of persuading the audience that their own self is ontologically equal to that of others. One method is the famous “exchanging self and other” meditation (BCA. 8.140ff), mentioned above. Another method, which is more metaphysical in nature, is to offer a seemingly nihilistic evaluation of the person, whilst offering a universal view of pain:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{saṃtānāḥ samudāyaś ca paṅkti senādi van mrśā} & \mid \\
yasya duḥkham sa nästy asmāt kasya tat svam bhavisyati & || \\
\text{asvāmikāni duḥkhāni sarvāny evāviśeṣataḥ} & | \\
duḥkhatvād eva vāryāni niyamas tatra kim kṛtaḥ & ||
\end{align*}
\]

Continuities and aggregates, such as queues and armies are fictitious. There is no one who is suffering. Therefore, to whom will it belong? Without any exceptions, all sufferings are ownerless. As pain is pain, it should be warded off. Why put restrictions on this? (8.101-102).
The first line states that such wholes as ‘queues’ and ‘armies’ are fictitious, merely labels, placed on top of the separate parts to designate an object which is ultimately empty. The implication is that the momentary aggregates likewise do not go to make up a ‘person’. In defence of a similar sceptical thesis by Hume (Treatise, I.iv.6), Penelhum (1993: 141) writes, the “perceptions the mind has can well include perceptions of the series that constitute it, without there having also to be any supervenient subject beyond the series’ successive members”. Pains are but perceptions, belonging to no one. Post-reduction, there is ultimately no ‘person’ or ‘self’ to whom pain belongs, no substance in which these sensations inhere. There is an obvious problem here, which Paul Williams (1998a: 104-176) has so ruthlessly exposed. Pain, on this account, appears to be free-floating. But how are we to make sense of a free-floating pain? Like Williams, I doubt that this is “rationally” possible. But unlike Williams, I do not think Śāntideva is open to the charge.

While not the methodology I would normally condone; if we are going to hand-pick single verses for critique, then one text that may be open to the charge can be found in the Theravāda. One of its passages reads: “For there is suffering, but none who suffers” (Vm. 16.90, trans. Ānāmoli). As Pérez-Remón (1980: 11) has noted, the “moral self is utterly denied” here. Now, the reason this is open to the charge of a free-floating pain is that, for the Theravādin, pain is generally taken to be inherently real. Thus, Peter Harvey (1990) states that, “suffering is inherent in the very fabric of life” (p48). And Sarah Shaw (2008) defines ‘dukkha’ as “an inherent, moving tension or dynamic that inheres in all existence” (p4). Shaw goes on to claim that “the cause of dukkha is the wish for things to be other than they are” (ibid.).
The problem here, from a Madhyamaka standpoint, is two-fold. First, nothing has inherent existence (svabhāva), so an inherent suffering is a conceptual construction. And second, if we were to accept that dukkha did inherently exist, then it quite evidently is not caused by desire, for it must pre-exist desire. Thus, to “put suffering on the same level as impermanence and nonself”; i.e. as one of the three marks of existence, is an “error” (Nhat Hanh, 1998: 21). While the truth of suffering is thought by the Śrāvaka to be seen by a Noble’s wisdom, the Mādhyamika sees it as a truth merely for “conventional valid cognizers” (Hopkins, 1996: 290). That is why the commentator of the BCA, Prajñākaramati, sees all but the Noble Truth of Cessation (nirvāṇa) as being conventional (saṃvṛtī) truths, thus reducing the four truths to two (see Kapstein, 2001: 217-218).

Śāntideva therefore asks the Śrāvaka, “If suffering really exists, why does it not afflict people when they are cheerful?” (yady asti duḥkhaṃ tattvena prahṛṣṭān kim na bādhate) (BCA. 9.88a). That is, for the Mādhyamikas, pleasure (sukha) and pain (duḥkha) are impermanent phenomena and mind-dependent; whereas, for the Śrāvakas, “even happiness is to be seen as dukkha” (Harvey, 1990: 48). So, just as Nāgārjuna did (see Westerhoff, 2009: 214), Śāntideva distances himself from the Śrāvaka, for whom suffering truly exists.

Of course, if the Śrāvaka maintains that suffering is the end result of the various limbs of dependent origination (see Anderson, 2001: 94-97), then they must give up the notion of its inherent existence. Likewise, if the Śrāvaka truly wishes to claim that the

188 Murti (1973: 19), seemingly independent of Prajñākaramati, comes to the same conclusion.

189 However, it is not unimaginable that Śāntideva would freely adopt the Ābhidharmika perspective as an act of skilful means, as Harris (2011) claims. Even so, we can construct a Madhyamaka case for altruism without this move.
four Noble Truths “do not have any permanent existence in the world” (p121), then once again they must give up the notion of dukkha’s inherent existence. Suffering, under Madhyamaka analysis, must lose its universal position in Buddhist ontology. However, it is never quite dislodged from its soteriology. While the “fact of ill cannot maintain itself against the fact of emptiness” (Conze, 2001: 111), the fact of emptiness must bend, as it were, to allow for the conventional truth of suffering in others.

The problem that Śāntideva faces is that he needs to keep the language of suffering at the conventional level for it has obvious soteriological value. Put simply, if there were no suffering in conventional reality, nobody would renounce. So, in denying suffering, Śāntideva does still seem to be committing a logical error. He has to answer two questions: 1) if suffering does not exist conventionally, then why do my knees hurt? (Williams, 1998a: 156), and 2) if suffering does not exist ultimately, then why should I care about the imaginary suffering of others?

Before we go any further, it is worth repeating that Śāntideva does not deny conventional reality. He writes quite explicitly that:

\[
yathā nirātmānaś ca sarva dhammāḥ, karma phala saṃbandhā
tyādhaḥ ca niḥsvabhāvatā ca, yathā drṣṭa sarva dhammā virodhaḥ ca
\]

All phenomena are selfless. On the other hand, they are connected with the fruit of action. All phenomena lack own-being. On the other hand, there is an experiential world (Ś.S. 244).

Conventionally speaking, there is suffering and indeed, “All those who suffer in the world do so because of their desire for their own happiness” (ye kecid duḥkhitā loke sarve te sva-sukhečchayā) (BCA. 8.129a). So, for this reason, we should renounce. Indeed, we should develop wisdom “with the desire to end suffering” (duḥkha nivṛtti kāṅkṣayā) (BCA. 9.1b). In other words, not only does Śāntideva not deny pain
conventionally, but, like any good Buddhist, he makes it the starting point of the quest for wisdom. And it is the ‘person’ that goes forth on this quest. With wisdom as the updated goal, he states that, it is “the reification of reality” (*satyataḥ kalpanāḥ*) that is the “cause of suffering” (*duḥkha hetu*) (9.25). And so, he tells us that there is no ‘I’ whatsoever (*aham eva na kimḥ*) (9.56). We discover that “the ‘I’ has no existence under analytical investigation” (*aham apy asad bhūto mṛgyamāṇo vicarataḥ*) (9.74b).

When this becomes established, we are ready for the final altruistic both/and twist of his Two-Truth rhetoric. Henceforth, monks, “Make yourself fall from bliss and involve yourself in the suffering of others” (*sukhāc ca cīvavātmāṇāṃ para-duhkhe niyojaya*) (8.161). Where is Śāntideva here if not in the midst of our conventional world of happiness and suffering?

This is not “incoherent” rhetoric, as Williams (1998a: 160) claims; it is simply Śāntideva’s both/and model at its most extreme. If you argue:

```
yadi sattvo na vidyeta kasyopari kṛpeti cet   |
kāryārtham abhyupetena yo mohena prakalpitaḥ   ||
```

For whom is compassion if no beings exist?” [We respond] For anyone who [our voluntary] delusion projects for the sake of what must be done (BCA. 9.75).

If there is a “logical” incoherence here, then Śāntideva is saying “so be it”. One needs to be able to flicker between these domains. One has to live with such “friction” (Harris, 2011: 113); that is the bodhisattva’s task. But if this flickering between seeing a self in others whilst maintaining the view of emptiness becomes problematic, and you start to imagine you have a self, then two paths open up. First, you could use this self-love as a device, and:

```
... yathārti śokāder ātmānam goptum icchasi   |
rakṣā-cittām dayā-cittām jagaty abhyasyatāṁ tathā   ||
```
... in the same way that one desires to protect oneself from pain and grief, etc., so one should develop a mind of compassion and concern towards the world (BCA. 8.117).

But if this prudence-cum-compassion method leads to one’s self-love becoming so strong that you start to care more for your own happiness than for that of others, then “better to meditate on not-self” (varaṇ nairātmya bhāvanā) (BCA. 9.77b). Thus, it would seem that there are methods available for those who have become selfless and for those who still have a trace of self. So Siderits (2003) is not quite right when he says that “one must become a truly empty person in order to effectively practice compassion” (p204). This is an ideal, but it is not a pre-requisite.

Returning to our audience, they may still be hoping for a rational explanation, and may find this reductionism question-begging:

\[
\text{kāryam kasya na cet sattvah satyamīhā tu mohataḥ} \\
\text{duḥkha vyūpāsamārthaṁ tu kārya mohō na vāryate}
\]

Whose is the task to be done if there are no beings? [Response] True, the work is indeed delusional, but in order to bring about the end of suffering, the delusion which conceives the task is not restrained (BCA. 9.76).

As stated above, this voluntary delusion is the key to understanding Śāntideva’s ethics, and indeed it must fail to pass the rationalist’s criteria. For how can we make logical sense of a voluntary delusion? Nevertheless, that is how Śāntideva describes the move which one needs to make in order to admit a ‘person’ conventionally so as to avoid an ethical nihilism. That is, Śāntideva agrees that ethics needs people. So, while Wetlesen (2002) argues with Williams over whether Śāntideva’s conception of a person is reductive or non-reductive, the fact is, it is both. Śāntideva reduces himself to a complex set of inter-dependent conditions with no underlying self, but
reconstructs the other to something more than that, i.e. an individuated person with their own valid hopes and fears.

The question remains as to whether Šāntideva has gone off the Buddhist rails here, or whether he is in fact following a traditional view. Now Harvey (1990) reads the *Diamond Sūtra* to be saying something quite similar, and so claims that the *bodhisattva* knows that there are no ‘beings’, but his skilful means “enables him to reconcile this wisdom with his compassion” (p121). In fact, the *Diamond Sūtra* is a *Prajñāpāramitā* text which completely rejects the notion of ‘self’, claiming that a *bodhisattva* is unworthy of the name (i.e. “wisdom-being”) if he should hold such a notion (*Vajracchedikā*, Ch. 3). But, as we have seen, Šāntideva allows for the notion, if, and only if, it applies impersonally and conventionally. So Šāntideva appears even more conventional than the *Diamond Sūtra*. Paul Williams (2009), for his part, draws on the *Aṣṭa*, another *Prajñāpāramitā* text, for what he calls the “clever means and stratagems” (p61) of the *bodhisattva*. In this text, the *bodhisattva* refuses to realise the so-called “reality-limit” (*bhūta-koṭi*), the (inferior) nirvāṇa of the arhat (*Aṣṭa*. 373). He does this through an intense focus on compassion, which prevents him from falling into complete emptiness, which would lead to the “non-perception of any living being” (Streng, 1982: 93).\(^{190}\) According to Williams (2009), the *bodhisattva* is thus “able to **combine simultaneously** his direct meditative awareness of emptiness with awareness of others” (p61, emphasis mine). In other words, rather than attain the transparent mind of a Buddha, he opts for a flickering *both/and* mode of cognition.\(^{191}\) Now, Šāntideva sits much closer to this *Aṣṭa*-model than to the *Vajracchedikā*, for he

---

190 Streng (1982) has listed four possible meanings of “reality limit” in the *Aṣṭa*.

191 The account of how he does this is rather complex. For the full text, see Conze (1973: 222-226).
deliberately holds ‘persons’ as a support, so as never to fall into either the nirvāṇa of the arhat or into ethical nihilism. We thereby see that the move to re-instate the individuated person is not unique to Śāntideva, but has scriptural support.

Why Paul Williams (1998a) picks out Śāntideva for particular attention is therefore puzzling. There has to be more to it than that “unresolvable struggle between Reductionists and non-Reductionists” (Kapstein, 2001: 44). It would seem that Williams assumes Śāntideva to be denying the person at both the ultimate and the conventional level. Yet, we have already shown that Śāntideva does in fact accept reality at the conventional level. Now Siderits (2000: 416) has stated that Śāntideva’s arguments would indeed break down if he were denying the person at the conventional level, however, he does not believe that he is so denying the person. He therefore, like me, disagrees with Williams’ conclusions (p412).192 But before we close the door on the debate, let us re-examine the particular verses which Williams selected for critique.

In the first set of verses selected by Williams (1998a: 29-51) (i.e. BCA. 8.97-98), Śāntideva is simply saying that the person when reborn is a different “specific” person than the current “specific” person which is “me”. He wrote:

\[
\begin{align*}
tagāmi kāya duḥkhān me bādhā tat kena rakṣyate & || \\
aham eva tadāpīṭi mithyeyaṃ parikalpanā & | \\
anya eva mṛto yasmād anya eva praśyate & ||
\end{align*}
\]

If I don’t care about them because their pain does not afflict me, then why do I care about [my] future-body’s suffering when it doesn’t afflict [the current] me? The notion “It is the same ‘me’ even then” is false. Since it is one [person] who dies and quite another that is [re-] born (BCA. 8.97-98).

192 I might mention that Peter Harvey agrees with Siderits here (MA course notes).
He is not denying either of those persons conventionally here, nor is he denying consciousness-as-continuum which links those two persons. In fact, verse 8.107 reads “those whose continuum is so developed” (evam bhāvita saṃtānāḥ). This continuum even survives the ultimate analysis of Chapter 9. Thus:

\[
\text{hetumān phala yogītī drśyate naiśa saṃbhavah} \quad | \\
\text{saṃtānasyaikyam āśritya kartā bhokti deśitaṃ} \quad ||
\]

“The cause is connected with the fruit” [you say]. But such an event is never seen. It is taught that there is an agent and an experiencer [of the fruit merely] in terms of a unity of the continuum (BCA. 9.72).

There is simply no way that Williams (1998a) can maintain the claim that Śāntideva sees the relationship between my current life and my future lives as one of “complete otherness” (p41). It is “other”, in that I may not even be a human being in my next life, but it is not unrelated to my current continuum. So, rather than Williams’ “somewhat selective reading of the text” (Wetlesen, 2002: 34), we need to pay attention to the context in order to understand Śāntideva’s true meaning. For example, in verse 8.98 (above), Śāntideva is simply downplaying this continuum-aspect and focusing on the specific-person-aspect, because that has more persuasive force in this stage of the meditation. Williams fails to grasp the difference between these two. In a later work, Williams (2002, Appendix I) does seem to pay lip service to the true Buddhist position, but still claims that “in terms of personal survival, being causally dependent upon the one that died is irrelevant” (p200). But how is it irrelevant? To grasp Śāntideva’s self-model, one needs to be quite flexible with regard to self and persons, but Williams appears rather one-dimensional. Of course, as already mentioned, Śāntideva’s argument would have less force if he were talking about me
versus me \( t_2 \) in this present life; but as Williams himself points out (1998a: 31-33), in the Sanskrit text, this is not the case.

In the second set of verses selected by Williams (1998a: 104-176) for critique (BCA. 8.101-103), Śāntideva is simply denying ultimate existence to the person, whilst admitting conventional existence to pain. People are like armies, made up of parts, with no ultimate status. Conventional pains are thus ultimately ownerless. In full:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{saṃtānaḥ samudāyaś ca paṅkti senādi van mṛṣā} & \\
yasya duḥkhāṃ sa nāsty asmāt kasya tat svamā bhaviśyati & \\
asvāmi kāṇī duḥkhāni sarvāy evāviśeṣataḥ & \\
\text{duḥkhavād eva vāryāni niyamas tatra kim kṛtaḥ} & \\
\text{duḥkhān kasmān nivāryaṃ cet sarveśām avivādataḥ} & \\
\text{vāryaṃ cet sarvāṃ apy evam na ced ātmāpi sattvavat} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

Continuities and aggregates, such as queues and armies are fictitious. There is no one who is suffering. Therefore, to whom will it belong? Without any exceptions, all sufferings are ownerless. As pain is pain, it should be warded off. Why put restrictions on this? That suffering should be prevented, no one disputes. If any of it is to be prevented, then all of it is. If not, then that goes for me too (BCA. 8.101-103).

The Dalai Lama (1994) summarises these verses thus, “Although the “I” does not truly exist, in relative truth everyone wants to avoid suffering” (p103). It is because Śāntideva’s rhetoric flickers back and forth between domains that this is difficult to grasp. I therefore agree with Pettit (1999: 129-130) that Williams’ critique of Śāntideva appears “fundamentally misguided”. Nevertheless, I will respect Williams’ issue with the notion of altruism as normally understood, and thus demand that from now on we call Śāntideva’s ethics “constructive altruism”.

Whether this is an altruism of “complete rationality” (Williams, 1998a: 29) is for the reader to decide. But note that Williams himself warns us that we ought to take such writings as the \textit{BCA} as “counselling” rather than as “abstract statements about the
universal way things actually are” (in Crosby & Skilton, 1995: p. xv). Williams also, quite rightly, notes that the *BCA* is a “meditation manual” (p. xxvi), a point he repeats in his own work (Williams, 1998a: 29). So perhaps, as Pettit (1999: 134) suggests, we may need more than just “philosophical reflection” to understand Śāntideva’s ethics.\(^{193}\) Perhaps Madhyamaka philosophy only makes real sense as an “expression of an entire form of life” (Huntington, 1989: 59). However, I believe that we have been able to save Śāntideva’s ethics on the basis of the Two Truths without having to claim a need for “meditative and moral practice” (Wetlesen, 2002: 53), or being in a “trance” of some kind (Matics, 1971: 29). In other words, we might rightly claim to have a rational explanation for “constructive altruism”, so long as one understands that the ‘person’, for Śāntideva, is this embodied being, but that this ‘person’ is also empty, in the sense that me at \(t_3\) is not exactly the same me as at \(t_1\) or \(t_2\), but is nevertheless conditioned by them.

In fact, when examined in its entirety, Śāntideva’s ethics accept the conventional person in a fuller manner than many other Mādhyamika exponents. For example, Candrakīrti distinguishes between ordinary perfections and supramundane perfections (MMA. 1.16). A supramundane form of giving (\(dāna\)) would have “no conception of the fundamental real existence of the giver, gift or receiver” (Williams, 2009: 51), the so-called “three-fold purity” (Conze, 2001: 18) of the *Prajñāpāramitā Sūtras* (see Conze, 1975: 50). It is an “unqualified rejection of any reified concept of giver, gift or recipient” (Huntington, 1989: 70). This threatens to make the Levinasian “face-to-face encounter” of giving (see Heim, 2007: 192) rather faceless.

---

\(^{193}\) Paul Williams (2002: xiii) later confessed that his meditation was mainly on paper.
But, as argued throughout this thesis, Śāntideva’s altruism is indeed a “qualified” one. While the notion of ‘altruism’ is denied by Levinas (2006: 55) on the grounds that the impulse to give derives itself from the ‘Other’; in Śāntideva, the ‘Other’ must first be constructed, deriving its force from the Bodhisattva Vow. Śāntideva’s ethics of “constructive altruism” thus appears as a Buddhist compromise on self, allowing for the qualified notion of a receiver, if not for a giver (which is non-existent) or a gift (which is illusory) (Ś.S. 270-275). Thus, an ultimately understanding giver gives an ultimately understood gift to a constructed receiver. The other person’s face is given new life through the bodhisattva’s compassion. For Śāntideva then, it is a clear case of the ends (the reduction in overall suffering) justifying the means (voluntarily adopting a fabricated view of the situation).

Note that by saying that the delusion is “not restrained” (BCA. 9.76), there is the implication that the bodhisattva is indeed free to restrain it. This would mean that a superior bodhisattva could apply his wisdom to the delusion that saw the other person as real, but chooses not to. At this level, dualistic appearances would not interfere with his non-dualistic vision of emptiness unless he forces the interference. It is not the case that the bodhisattva maintains a slightly delusional mentality which allows for a mildly delusional view of beings as real, the kind of “madness” that Burton (2004: 85) suggests. It is more a case of willing the subordination of wisdom to compassion. Again this highlights the advantage of taking the mind as flickering between seeing things as existent and non-existent, and then having the freedom to act accordingly, either on the basis of wisdom or on the basis of compassion.

If we now return to Fig. 1 (on p280), we see that we now have the entire picture of the path before us. The bodhisattva, in the Me/Self quadrant, sees the suffering of the
provisional world. He sees the error of his ways, both ethical errors and cognitive errors. He regrets his ethical errors and prays for forgiveness of sins. This person-as-continuum thus vows to change his ways and to generate enough merit to liberate all beings. Misdeeds are ‘dissolved’ or ‘purified’ by a combination of prayer and the realisation of emptiness. Merit is accumulated through the practice of the six perfections. The first steps to realising emptiness are a certain form of moral conduct conducive to the denial of the egoistic self.

The bodhisattva thus shifts into the Me/Not-self quadrant. He works on renunciation of self. He wishes to be self-reliant, but without the notion of a self. Naturally, a denial of the self is itself an act of self, which demonstrates the preliminary nature of this stage of renunciation. In this quadrant, we find the bodhisattva’s denial of society, family, and status, his renunciation of selfish desires. This is followed by the subsequent glimpses of emptiness, growing out of an inferential understanding of the teachings, and the realisation of impermanence and the selflessness of all beings. Subsequently, “The influence of phenomena is removed by employing the influence of emptiness” (śūnyatā vāsanādhanāddhiyate bhāva vāsanā) (BCA. 9.32a).

Through the loosening of his personal identity, he meditates on exchanging his self for others (parātma parivartanam), a now standard popular method of generating empathy in Tibetan Buddhism. We can thus deduce that the term ‘ātma’ in “parātma” (i.e. “para ātma”) (BCA. 8.120) has no metaphysical implication, but implies the taking up of a different view-point. In fact we can again relate Śāntideva’s psychology with what Hume called “sympathy”. Thomas’ explanation of Hume captures this practice perfectly: “I might imagine what it would be like to go through what you are undergoing and in some way I reproduce in myself what you are
experiencing” (Thomas, 1993: 57). Through such meditation, the bodhisattva overcomes envy and competitiveness, creating a basis for generating empathy and compassion for all beings.

At this point it is still a mental program, and the field must now shift to a more conventional worldly level. As stated by Oliner (2003: 210), “just thinking empathetically is not in itself altruistic”. Thus, even the “truly imposing altruistic impulse” (Huntington, 1989: 19) and the feeling of “compassion and loving kindness to the depths of one’s being” (Lewis, 2005: 110) are insufficient. We do not become virtuous by ourselves but are “made virtuous through relationship with others” (Mrozik, 2007: 10). In short, “Altruism must entail action” (Monroe, 1998: 6). But in shifting the field to the external world, in wishing the well-being of “real” others, the bodhisattva has to re-instate them, reconstruct them. This is a move that may not so readily occur to most Western ethicists, and hopefully our explanation of Śāntideva will help future discussion of ethics within other forms of non-self metaphysics.

Returning to the diagram (on p280), the bodhisattva thus moves out of the Others/Not-self quadrant and into the Others/Self quadrant. People suffer, they need help, they deserve help, and surely in the past they have helped “me”. Karma, though empty, is meaningfully re-instated. We might recall (from Chapter 2) that people “may well behave at a high level in one domain and at a low level in another” (Krebs & van Hesteren, 1994: 107). My quadrants can thus be seen as “domains” in which shifts of cognitive maturity take place, sometimes through meditational progress, sometimes as a voluntary fall. The bodhisattva moves back to the Me/Self quadrant and reinforces the Vow to help all beings:
ākāśasya sthitir yāvac ca jagatah sthitih
| tāvan mama sthitir bhūyāj jagad duḥkhāni nighnataḥ  ||

So long as space remains, so long as the world remains, so will I remain, to dispel the suffering of the world (BCA. 10.55).

If he acts on this vow, if his resolve remains steady, then he becomes a true bodhisattva. If his mind is still prone to wavering, and if he continues to choose to benefit others over himself, then he is surely a true altruist, even in the Comtean sense of the word. But once he firmly grasps that there is no self, and has the need to delude himself about the self of others, then his ‘altruism’ is of a different kind, it is “constructive altruism”, which relies on skilful means.

Yet an ethics that bases itself on such a tension between the ultimate and the conventional is bound to be unstable. It is an ethics which can be explained, but hardly justified. It may even be an ethics that we find difficult to accept, given our modern emphasis on the body and the rights of the individual. Moreover, it is a risky ethics. What happens if I spend so much time in the Others/Self quadrant that the conventional notions of their worldly reality start to filter back into the ultimate notions of my bodhisattva reality? If too much time is spent in one domain, could it be that one’s cognitive level might fall irreparably into an old stage-structure? It is worth reminding ourselves of Śāntideva’s solution:

duḥkha hetur ahamkāra ātma mohāt tu vardhate  |
tato ‘pi na nivartyaś cet varam nairātmya bhāvanā  ||

However, egoism, which is the cause of suffering, increases from the delusion that there is a self. If this [particular delusion] cannot be avoided, better to meditate on not-self (BCA. 9.77).

Egoism (ahaṃkāra) is to be stamped out because it is the biggest obstacle to liberation. But to see others as non-existent is the biggest obstacle to compassion. It
is through flickering between these views (these quadrants) that one is able to remain on the Bodhisattva Path. If one becomes too deluded by compassion, one shifts the focus to not-self. If one becomes too wise, as it were, through an intense realisation of emptiness, if one “destroys the bodhisattva path”, to use Paul Williams’ phrase, then one needs to re-instate beings through a “voluntary” or “deliberate” act of delusion.

This deliberate act needs to become habitual:

\[
yathātma buddhir abhyāsāt sva kāye 'smin nirātmake \\
pareṣy api tathāmatvam kim abhyāsān na jāyate
\]

In the same way that, through habit, the idea of a ‘self’ arose about this, your own body, though it is without self, will not the ‘selfhood’ also arise through habit with regard to others? (BCA. 8.115)

He then turns this into an injunction:

\[
tasmād yathānyadiyesu śukra śoṇīta binduṣu \\
cakartha tvam ahaṃkāraṃ tathānyeṣv api bhāvaya
\]

Therefore, just as you have formed the notion of individuality from the drops of [your parents’] sperm and blood, so you must develop the notion regarding others (BCA. 8.158).

There is still something to be said for Nagel’s (1978: 88) point that “recognition of the reality of others depends on a conception of oneself”. Śāntideva accepts this view, but with a slight modification. The recognition of oneself as being real is applicable to the past, whereas the recognition of the reality of others is applicable to the future. It is through the memory of the former notion that the latter notion is to be constructed. But the former notion is then to be dropped. For example, the body is important to the other, but it must be transcended by a bodhisattva. It must be placed at the service of those others. Of course, one would still recognise a body and a need to eat, but its impermanence and interdependence would be a feature of that recognition. That is, the bodhisattva both experiences the conventional world whilst perceiving it as a
fabrication. So when Nagel (1978: 101) states that “it must be possible to say of other persons anything which one can say of oneself”, we need to qualify this. For my purposes, I will qualify it here in terms of flickering, and note that the bodhisattva could say he exists or does not exist as a self, and could say that others exist or do not exist as selves, but opts to say that he does not exist as a self but others do.

If we were to place Śāntideva’s bodhisattva into Bernard Williams’ case study situation (see p59 above), he might report that (ultimately speaking) he neither believed himself to be either A or B. He might therefore add an unexpected dimension to the case (though one that may become more and more familiar in Western thought). Yet one would imagine that (despite struggling with the non-altruistic response required of the test), he would posit B’s mind to be the most relevant factor in the A-body-or-mind/B-body-or-mind enigma. We therefore see that it remains possible for Śāntideva’s bodhisattva to speak of others as he speaks of himself, but he chooses not to do so. Rather, like the jīvan-mukta, he chooses to participate in the “magic show”. The delusion is not restrained, allowing him to take the perspective of the suffering other.
6.2 Śaṅkara: Living Liberation – The True Place of Action

Much of the inspiration for this chapter comes from the following verses and the Advaitin concept of the “living-liberated being” (jīvan-mukta). Here, Śaṅkara describes how such a person has apparently reached the final goal of life, wishing for nothing further, established as he is in brahma-nirvāṇa:

\[
\text{saḥ yogī brahma-nirvāṇaṃ brahmaṇī nirvṛtiṃ mokṣam iha jīvann eva}
\]
\[
\text{brahma-bhūtaḥ san adhigacchati prāphoṭi || ...}
\]
\[
\text{jīvan-muktaḥ 'brahmaiva sarvam' ity eṣaṃ niścayavantam brahma-}
\]
\[
\text{bhūtam akalmaṣaṃ dharmādharādi varjitaṃ || ...}
\]
\[
\text{sthitvā asyāṃ sthitau brahmayām yathāktāyāṃ antakāle 'pi antye}
\]
\[
\text{vayary api brahma-nirvāṇaṃ brahma-nirvṛtiṃ mokṣam ṛcchati}
\]
\[
\text{gacchati | kimu vaktavyaṃ brahmacaryād eva saṃnyasya yo}
\]
\[
\text{brahmaṇy eva avatiṣṭhate sa brahma-nirvāṇam ṛcchati iti ||}
\]

That yogi, having attained the final state, even while living, absorbed in brahma, he is satisfied, liberated ... A living-liberated being, having certitude that brahman is all, has become pure consciousness, taintless and free from merit and demerit ... It is said that he remains established in this state in the autumn years of his life, free, absorbed and satisfied in brahman. What need is there to say that he who has abided in brahman during his whole life, from celibate pupil to renunciate, alas attains the final peace of brahmanhood (Bh.G.Bh. 5.24, 6.27 & 2.72).

But even more inspiring is the way in which Śaṅkara deals with the following verse from the Chāndogya Upaniṣad. In this commentary, we find Śaṅkara’s theory of lineage and salvation. A man finds himself lost in this world. Not even God has shown mercy on him. He is anxious to find direction. Luckily for him, there are those who know reality, the ultimate and the provisional. They can guide him. Through their speech, the blindfold is gradually removed and the newly enlightened man can see the way.
But unlike the picture painted above, we do not simply find our way and leave it at that. We do not sit in absorption longing for the final release of death. Rather, we stand at the side of the road and wait for those who may also want to find the promised land, and slowly-slowly, we remove their blindfold. Only then may the body fall off. Thus, we begin our interpretative journey, as Śaṅkara did, with the Upaniṣads, whose ethics of “non-attachment and altruism” (Lipner, 2010: 261) are here enriched even further by Śaṅkara’s exegesis. The square brackets are included to express a number of Śaṅkara’s separate comments which I find particularly poignant:

`tasya yathābhīnahanam pramucya prabrūyād “etām diśāṁ gandhārā
etām diśāṁ vrāja” iti sa grāmād grāmāṃ precchan paṇḍito medhāvī
gandhārāṇ evopasampadyetaivam evehācāryavān purūṣo veda tasya
tāvad eva ciraṁ yāvan na vimokṣye ‘tha sampatsya iti (Ch.U. VI.xiv.2).

If a [kind (kārūnikaṁ)] person [a knower of Self (brahmātma-vidam), who is free from bondage (vimukta bandhanam)] were [out of compassion (kārūnikena)] to remove the blindfold from the eyes of a man [lost (dīnmūḍhaḥ) in a forest (aranye)] and say, “The land of Gandhāra lies this way. Walk in this direction”, and if he who received this instruction, being an intelligent man, by asking his way from village to village, verily reached the land of the Gandhāras [attaining peace and happiness (āpanna nirvṛtsukhyabhūḥ)]; so in the same way a man [who has been forced to inhabit (praveśitaḥ) this ‘forest’ of a body (āpamana nirṛtaḥ sukhyabhūḥ)] having [by some merit or other (cideva punya)] met with a [preeminent (atiśaya)] teacher [becomes dispassionate towards cyclic existence (viraktaḥ samsāra viśayabhyaḥ) and when told “you are not a transmigrating being” (nāsi tvam samsāri) - “you are that” (tat tvam asi)] acquires knowledge in this world [attaining his own true self (svam sad-ātmānam upasampadyā)]. For him the delay lasts only until he becomes liberated [i.e. attains immortality (amṛtavartī) when the body falls (deha pāta)]. Then he will merge [with existence (sat)].
(Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.1-2)

From the above comments, the picture painted by Śaṅkara is in near-perfect harmony with that painted by Śāntideva. There are two issues the latter could possibly have with this; one ethical, the other metaphysical.
First, the notion of a final resting place would be resisted by Śāntideva on the grounds of an apparent lack of compassion. But then Śāntideva has the same issue with the Buddhist “Śrāvaka” monks. And note that Śaṅkara explicitly adds here that the teacher teaches “out of compassion” (kārūṇikena), as he does elsewhere (U.S. Prose, 1.6). In other words, the removal of the blindfold is both an altruistic act and a duty. It simultaneously saves the seeker from further suffering, while continuing the Advaitin lineage of knowers. So the disagreement is really about commitment to rebirth rather than compassion per se (as it arguably is with the Śrāvaka). Thus, the altruistic nature of the jīvan-mukta remains intact despite the denial of rebirth.

The second issue would be that, while Śaṅkara finds non-duality in “Being” (sat), Śāntideva would find his non-duality in Nāgārjuna’s equation of samsāra and nirvāṇa (MMK. 25.19). However, as we saw in Chapter 5.1, perhaps even this can be overcome to some degree by Śaṅkara’s assertion that “There is actually no difference between liberation and bondage” (na hi vastuto muktāmuktatva viśeṣo ‘sti) (Bṛ.U.Bh. IV.iv.6). The difference, however, would re-appear in the line that follows: “For, indeed, the self is always the same” (ātmano nityaikarūpatvāt) (ibid.). And so we are back to our polar Self/Not-Self metaphysical differences. But we have known that from the start.

What remains startling is just how close Śaṅkara and Śāntideva still stand given this enormous difference in metaphysical doctrine. Running through the above comments to the Chāndogya, one is simply amazed at the similarities. We have the teacher painted as an all-knowing, kind-hearted helper, who takes it upon himself to direct others out of compassion. The person that comes to him, even though intelligent, is in some sense lost. The allegorical scene of this compassionate response is a forest, just
as it is in the Mahāyāna Aṣṭa Sūtra (see Conze, 1973: 223). The lost person does not turn to God for help, but turns to a fellow human being. There is no grace or divine intervention here, there is only the teacher.\footnote{When Ram-Prasad (2001a) states that, “the Advaitic path to liberation is still one walked by the subject unassisted by a higher power” (p217), he is denying the need for a God, not the teacher (personal communication). On the need for a teacher in Advaita, see Suthren Hirst (2005: 49).} If it were not for this fearless guide, we would all be lost in the wilderness.\footnote{Cf. S.N. I.137}

Śaṅkara here appears to share with the Buddhist, what Collins (1982: 10) calls, a “pragmatic agnosticism”. The first step in this pragmatism is to turn away from the world of sense pleasures. Therefore, in line with Śāntideva (BCA Chapter 8), Śaṅkara adds his signature doctrine of a prior need for renunciation of the physical world. Hence, we have the negative evaluation of the body, this so-called “forest of a body” \((dehāranyāṃ\), described in graphically foul terms. In fact, Suthren Hirst draws our attention to this very passage (and Ch.U.Bh. V.ix.1), under the sub-heading of “Renunciation”, where she states that, these lists are “reminiscent of ... Buddhist cultivations of mindfulness” (Suthren Hirst, 2005: 74). This list includes: phlegm, blood, fat, flesh, semen, worms, urine, and faeces. And, of course, Śāntideva’s meditation at \textit{BCA} 8.40ff has this very intent of renunciation of the body. For example, Śāntideva writes:

\begin{verbatim}
yadi te nāśucau rāgaḥ kasmād āliṅgase 'paraṃ parityogamām |
māmsa kardama samliptaṃ snāyu baddhāsthi pañjaraṃ \textbackslash\textbackslash
\end{verbatim}

If you [believe you] have no passion for what is foul, why then do you embrace another, a cage of bones bound by sinew, smeared with slime and flesh? (BCA. 8.52)
Śāntideva even describes people as “moving skeletons” (*calat kaṅkālā*) (BCA. 8.70), just as the *V.C.* likens the body to “living corpses” (*ārdra śavā*) (297).

Having dispensed with what the pupil is not, i.e. this body; the Advaitin teacher then tells him what he is. Of course, Śāntideva adopts a similar meditation on the body and aggregates at *BCA* 9.56ff to demonstrate that no self can be found. Śaṅkara will use the same deconstruction of the provisional to show that “you are that” (*tat tvam asi*), the ultimate.\(^{196}\) Once again, it would seem that it is only the Self-doctrine that divides the two philosophers.

Finally, having had his blindfold removed, the seeker has succeeded in finding his way, and is no longer in a state of anxiety, but is content. But Śaṅkara’s altruistic ethics prevents the ascetic from buying a one-way ticket to the forest. Rather, like the *bodhisattva*, he re-enters the social arena as a paternal guide.

And so we will discover that so much of what we have said about Śāntideva’s ethics is also true of Śaṅkara. He too sees the world in negative terms, but ultimately grounds human suffering in our confusion about the world rather than the world itself. He too is motivated by the wish to liberate beings from *samsāra*, and so he too, if restricted to his ethics of liberation, might well be labelled a “negative consequentialist”. Unfortunately, his arguments are far more scattered than Śāntideva’s. As Roy Perrett

once quipped, if Śāntideva wrote too little, Śaṅkara wrote too much.  This means that, in the case of Śāntideva, the researcher is faced with having to fill in the “gaps”, perhaps being welled from other Mahāyāna texts; whereas in the case of Śaṅkara, the researcher is faced with having to reconcile conflicting textual accounts. With regard to Śaṅkara, then, it is perhaps asking too much of the reader to assess the validity of my schema in Fig. 2 (on p312). I trust, however, that any reader convinced of the validity and/or utility of Fig. 1, will now be willing to accept a parallel schema for Śaṅkara.

As with Śāntideva, I feel that the best way to avoid an either/or reading of Śaṅkara’s work is to place it in schematic form, highlighting the shifts that he makes. The horizontal axis will remain the same as before (see Fig. 1, p280), with the distinction between ‘Me’ and ‘Others’. When discussing Śāntideva, we saw how this distinction allowed the bodhisattva to divide the world into those who had taken the Bodhisattva Vow and those who had not. Śaṅkara can similarly use the distinction to distinguish between those who are qualified (adhiśāra) for brahman-knowledge and those who are not. In making this distinction, the focus is on the most extreme case, which is that the candidate must be a qualified male Brahmin. This case has already been argued for in Chapter 4.3. If this remains controversial, I qualify it by claiming the Provisional/Me quadrant to be representative of an “ideal” personality. As argued in Chapter 4.3, this would include the celibate student (brahmacārin). Allow me then to simply introduce the diagram with no further ado and to base my following account on the summary it offers:

---

197 Personal communication
The first thing one should notice about this diagram is that the vertical axis no longer represents ‘Self’ versus ‘Non-self’, but ‘Ultimate Reality’ versus ‘Provisional Reality’. It should also be noted that ‘Ultimate Reality’ maps onto the realm of ‘Self’ as brahman. The notion of ‘Ultimate Reality’ went unstressed in my explanation of Śāntideva, because, unlike Śaṅkara, he offered no absolute transcendence thesis. In other words, placing these diagrams side by side, one might immediately notice the circularity of Śāntideva’s model as opposed to the upwardly transcendent nature of Śaṅkara’s model. I have therefore left out the arrows. Instead, ‘Ultimate Reality’ is shown as being a funnel-shaped space that one visits rather than being an absolute
alternative to ‘Provisional Reality’. This allows for my notion of flickering or oscillating between realities; the more one transcends, the wider the funnel, and the more time spent in ‘Ultimate Reality’, that being the (blissful?) consciousness of absolute being.

So while the commencing-bodhisattva entered the path at the level of ‘self’, the Advaitin pupil (śisya) enters the path at a level of ‘not-Self’. His notion of “My ātman is of the same nature as brahman” is in fact a lower level of understanding about ātman. He has yet to realise that his jīvātman and the ātman that is brahman are one and the same. That is, the ‘Provisional Reality’ of the pupil belongs to a worldview which assumes the self to be of the same nature as brahman, but still independent of brahman. The pupil still belongs to the provisional ethical world of Dharma, with its caste roles. That is why he continues to proudly see himself as a Brahmin male. 198 He is one to whom the teacher might say:

\[\text{naivam somya pratipattum arhasi, pratisiddhatvād bheda pratipatteḥ} | katham pratisiddhā bheda pratipattir ity ata āha – “anyo ‘sāv anyo ‘ham asmīti na sa veda”, “brahma taṃ parādād yo ‘nyatrātmano brahma veda”, “mṛtyoḥ sa mṛtyum āpnoti ya iha nāneva paśyati” ity evam ādyāḥ \]

“My child, you should not hold such a view, for it is forbidden to hold a doctrine of difference”. [If the student] then says “Why is the doctrine of difference forbidden?”, [the teacher quotes] “He who thinks he is one and He [brahman] another, does not know”, “The Brahmins reject him who believes Brahmins to be other than Self”, “One who sees diversity in [brahman] goes from death to death” (U.S. Prose, 1.26).

198 Interestingly, Theodor (2010) has recently mapped the Two Truths on top of the Gītā’s ethics, giving rise to a three-tier hierarchical interpretation of the Gītā, which shares a number of features with my interpretation of Śaṅkara’s ethics. Had Theodor drawn his “somewhat graphical description” (p18), he would have had a vertical axis with Dharma at the bottom and mokṣa at the top. Our horizontal axes would, however, remain quite dissimilar. The pupil in my “Me/Provisional” quadrant (see Fig.2) appears to be in a similar mental condition as Theodor’s so-called “second-tier” yogi, still “convinced that he is an embodied spiritual self” (Theodor, 2010: 19).
This view of an individuated self with caste affiliations must now be transcended. Whilst the life of the *brahmacārin* has been one of outer-renunciation, the path now is one of inner-renunciation. This gradual path may take many years. Thus, we must imagine a mind that flickers between the provisional and the ultimate truth. The path which Śaṅkara lays out for the *Brahmin* male is one that requires both intellectual knowledge and direct knowledge. One begins the path as a student of the Vedas. One ends the path when one comes to understand that all is *brahman*. Hence, there is an obvious ascendency involved. It is for this reason that Fig. 2 begins in the lower left quadrant, as opposed to the upper left in Fig. 1 (p280). The person in this quadrant is a male *Brahmin* and a seeker of liberation. He is not as yet at the same stage as the *bodhisattva*, and need not have any altruistic motives. He is formally equivalent to a “selfish” Buddhist monk, seeking liberation for himself.

It is only when he is established in *brahman*-consciousness that the knower turns round and offers this knowledge to those qualified to receive it. The student then becomes the teacher. These knowers of *brahman*, forever engaged in the practice of “knowledge and absorption and so on” (*jñāna dhyānādi*) (Mu.U.Bh. III.i.4) are said by Śaṅkara to be the “**only true men of action in this world**” (*eveha kriyāvān*) (ibid.). The action that Śaṅkara has in mind clearly includes the passing on of this knowledge to others. Action, then, does not stop when realisation is attained; rather it *starts* when realisation is attained.

This shows that knowers do not literally give up action, only the making of further *karma*, in the sense of that which creates positive or negative consequences and rebirths. When Śaṅkara speaks of the giving up of “*karma*” it is shorthand for “*karma-sādhana*” (ritual action). As pointed out by Kuznetsova (2007: 35), the
“most significant dimension of karma is the ritual act”, and thus, for the renouncer movement, the “elimination of karma means principally the elimination of rites” (ibid.). And so, as already mentioned, when Śaṅkara writes that, “steadfastness in knowledge combined with action is illogical” (Bh.G.Bh. 18.66), he is speaking of ritual action. Elsewhere, he makes this explicit:

\[
tasmāt pratiṣiddhatvād bheda darśanasya, bheda viṣayatvāc ca karmopādānasya, karma-sādhanatvāc ca yajñopaviṭādeḥ karma-sādhanopādānasya paramātmābheda pratipattā pratiṣedhah kṛto veditavyaḥ | karmanāṁ tatsādhanānāṁ ca yajñopaviṭādināṁ paramātmābheda pratipatti viruddhatvāt | saṁsārino hi karmāṇi vidhiyante tat sādhanāni ca yajñopaviṭādīni, na paramātmano 'bheda darśināḥ | bheda darśana mātreyā ca tato 'nyatvam
\]

As the doctrine of difference is forbidden, so ritual actions which assume the domain of difference, and the sacred thread, etc., which are the means to their performance, are also forbidden. It should be known that the prohibition to undertake rites and their means derives from the knowledge of non-difference with the Supreme Self. For these rites and means to them, such as the wearing of threads, are at variance with the view of one’s non-difference with the Supreme Self. Rituals and means, such as the sacred thread are indeed enjoined upon a transmigrator [but] not upon one who holds the view of non-difference with the Supreme Self. That one is other [than brahman] is due only to the [error of] accepting the doctrine of difference (U.S. Prose, 1.30).

Now it is evident that this prohibition (pratiṣiddha) of ritual action (karma-sādhana) is not a prohibition of all action, for it appears in a text used for teaching purposes, which is itself an action (karma). Much confusion would be overcome if scholars and translators were more careful about the distinction between these meanings of karma.\(^{199}\)

\(^{199}\) Chari notes that sometimes where Śaṅkara took karma to mean “deeds” [e.g. in his reading of the Gītā’s, “karma undertaken for a sacrifice gets totally destroyed” (Bh.G.Bh. 4.23)], Rāmānuja took it to mean “past karma causing bondage” (Chari, 2005: 38). Yet Śaṅkara does sometimes take karma in this latter sense [e.g. in his reading of the Gītā’s, “The fire of knowledge reduces all karma to ashes” (Bh.G.Bh. 4.37)]. Clearly then, this ambiguity has been around for some time and has contributed towards many sectarian debates and scholarly misunderstandings. Śaṅkara is no doubt partially responsible for many of these misunderstandings.
So just like Śāntideva’s bodhisattva, we can imagine the jīvan-mukta as “acting nobly in the world” (lokāryam kurvan) (Ś.S. 363), dedicated to his pupils. Indeed, this need for an enlightened teacher is much more explicit in Śaṅkara than in Śāntideva. True, Śāntideva (Ś.S. 34-42) speaks highly of the relationship with a “kalyāṇa-mitra” (lit. “good-friend”), and thus all bodhisattvas are to be treated as one’s “instructor” (śāstr) (53). He also speaks of the advantage of taking the Vows with a “guru”, namely the “intense shame” (tīvram apatāpyam) that would follow if one broke them (11-12). He also laments at the difficulty in finding enlightened teachers (buddhotpādo ‘tidurlabhaḥ) (BCA. 9.162a). Nevertheless, he also allows for the taking of the Bodhisattva Vow in the “absence of a good friend” (kalyāṇa-mitrasya abhāve) (Ś.S. 12). Moreover, he follows his famous rendition of the Bodhisattva Vow by vowing to become his own teacher (ātmācarya), forming a private student-teacher relationship with himself; becoming his own master (gurur-ātmanaḥ). And while, at the very end of the BCA (10.58) he thanks his “kalyāṇa-mitraṃ” for their “prasāda” (kindness, inspiration), nowhere does Śāntideva actually state that one needs a teacher in order to realise emptiness. So while this need not contradict Matics (1971: 49) claim that, for Śāntideva, a “Guru is indispensable”, it does leave that possibility open.

In contrast, for Śaṅkara, knowledge of the Vedas must be imparted by a knower of the Vedas, and knowledge of brahman must be imparted by a knower of brahman

---

200 This is a slightly modified version of the one found at BCA. 10.55 (quoted on p303). It runs: “So long as space remains, so long as the world remains, so will I remain, acting nobly in the world, aiming towards enlightenment” (yāvād ākāśa niṣṭhasya niṣṭhā lokasya sambhavet | tāvat sthāṣyāmi lokāryam kurvan jñāna purāḥsaraḥ) (Ś.S. 363).

201 Cf. Dhammapada: “Oneself is indeed one’s master, for who else could be one’s master? With oneself well-restrained, one gets a master hard to find” (attā hi attano nātho ko hi nātho paro siyā | attanā va sudantena nātham labhati dullabhām) (verse 160). The V.C. (54-55) also puts the emphasis on one’s own effort.
(Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2). In fact, Śaṅkara sees no other way to liberation, and therefore, until one is liberated, he urges “constant reliance upon the guru” (Cenkner, 1983: 32).

The following citations make his intention clear:

\[
\text{anyathā ca jñāna prāpty abhāvāt - “ācāryavān puruṣo veda”,}
\]
\[
“ācāryād dhaiva vidyā viditā”, “ācarāryāh plāvayitā”, “samyaag-jñānaṃ plava ihocayte” ity ādi śrutibhyah, “upadeksyanti te jñānaṃ” ity ādi smṛteś ca ||
\]

Since knowledge is obtained in no other way. For the Šrutis say “He with a teacher knows”, “Knowledge learnt from a teacher …”, “The teacher is a boatman”, “His right knowledge is said to be a boat”, etc. The Smṛti also says “Knowledge will be imparted to you”, etc. (U.S. Prose, 1.3).

The Brahmin pupil (śiṣya) must therefore search for his teacher (ācārya), who must subsequently assess his qualities:

\[
tad idam mokṣa sādhanam jñānam sādhana sādhyād anityāt
sarvasmād virāktāya tyakta putra vitta lokaiṣṭhāya pratipanna
paramahamsa-pārivrājyāya śamadama dayādi yuktāya śāstra
prasiddha śiṣya guṇa sampannāya śucaye brāhmaṇa vidhivad
upasannāya śiṣyāya jāti karma vṛtta vidyābhijanaṁ parīkṣitāya
brūyat punah punah yāvad grahaṇam ṛddhībhavati ||
\]

The means to liberation is knowledge. It should be repeatedly explained to the pupil until firmly grasped, to one who is indifferent to everything transitory, achievable through means, and who has no desire for sons, wealth, this world or the next, who has adopted the way of the highest ascetics, who is endowed with tranquillity, self-control, compassion, etc., possessed of the qualities of a pupil, well-known from the scriptures, if he is a pure Brahmin, who approaches the teacher in the prescribed manner, and if his birth, profession, conduct, knowledge and family have been examined (U.S. Prose, 1.2).

We see here that the pupil is explicitly restricted to the Brahmin class, and that his caste is also to be assessed based on family and profession. The pupil must have given up any wish for sons, which shows the stress that Śaṅkara placed on chastity. But it also highlights the one-pointed nature of Śaṅkara’s view of renunciation. It is an all-or-nothing stance which explicitly rules out the life of the householder. It also rules out any desire for another “world” (loka), by which he means heavenly realms.
As with early Buddhism, Śaṅkara sees these realms as limited due to their impermanence, that is, one must someday fall from them. The only true liberation is total liberation, the complete merging with brahman (Ch.U. VI.xiv.2).

Despite the seemingly world-denying tone of this verse from the U.S., it is important to note that the pupil must have compassion (daya) as one his chief characteristics, alongside the more renunciatory virtues of tranquillity (śama) and self-control (dama). And we have already seen how, in the Ch.U.Bh, Śaṅkara speaks of an auspicious meeting with a compassionate knower of the self who teaches the seeker the truth of non-duality (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2). We also find Śaṅkara advocating the need for compassion in Br.U.Bh (V.ii.3), where daya is one of the so-called “three Da’s” that one must practice, the other two being “self-control” (dāmyata) and “generosity” (datta) (Br.U. V.ii.1-3). But the virtues of compassion and generosity only have validity when they are applied. They become crucial when the pupil himself becomes a teacher, who must selflessly give his knowledge to others.

Indeed, Śaṅkara’s G.K.Bh. ends (Salutation, 2) by thanking his parama-guru (great teacher, or teacher-of-my-teacher) for teaching the truth of the Vedas “out of compassion” (kāruṇyād) for the benefit of all beings (bhūta hetu). Also, in the V.C. (35), the guru is addressed as an “ocean of compassion” (kāruṇya sindhu). Written in these terms, these salutations might well have been addressed to a bodhisattva.

Indeed, Śaṅkara demands all of the following qualities of his Advaitin teachers:

ācāryas tuḥāpohagrahaḥaṅa dhāraṇa śama dama dayānugrahādi
sampanno labdhāgamo drśṭādṛśta bhogēsv anāsaktah tyakta sarva

While noting their eulogistic format, Suthren Hirst (2005: 11-13) has highlighted similar comments from Śaṅkara’s students about his compassion. Naturally, the ethical prescriptions Śaṅkara imposes on the teacher and student are more convincing than the eulogistic descriptions.
Now the teacher is one who is able to grasp the pros and cons of an argument, who understands and remembers them, who has tranquillity, self-control, compassion, kindness, etc., versed in the scriptures, unattached to enjoyments (visible or invisible), having abandoned all ritual actions, he is a knower of brahman, he is established in brahman, breaking not the rules of conduct, free from faults such as: deceit, pride, trickery, wickedness, deception, envy, falsehood, egoism and selfishness. With the sole aim of helping others, he wishes to make use of knowledge (U.S. Prose, 1.6).

This verse is simply over-flowing with information. We can immediately note how both the pupil and the teacher are to be possessed of tranquillity (śama), self-control (dama) and compassion (daya). The teacher is distinguished from the student by being a knower of brahman (brahma-vid), established in brahman (brahmaṇi-sthita).

In other words, his knowledge of brahman is immediate; he is literally one with brahman and has no other self but brahman. While he should remain detached from the world, the list of virtues makes it unlikely that he could be described as discarding social mores. In fact, on a virtue ethical account, he would seem like a model citizen. Surely, his compassion need not be restricted to the teacher-student relationship.

Halbfass (1991: 384) speaks of the freedom of the jīvan-mukta as being “carefully channelled” by conservative traditionalism. In more positive terms, Mumme claims that the Advaitin jīvan-mukta will “naturally observe dharmic norms” (Fort & Mumme, 1996: 266). Potter (1981: 37) also claims that the mukta’s ethical training and liberation will guarantee an honest and helpful response from the liberated teacher.203 This accords with the Vedāntic mystical notion that, “Inner perfection and outer conduct are two sides of one life” (Radhakrishnan, 1989: 108). Established in

203 Cf. the V.C. (33), where the guru “demonstrates cardinal virtues” (Forsthoefel, 2002: 319).
brahman, having no further goals, the jīvan-mukta stands beyond egoism and selfishness. Such a parama-haṁsa is said to be selfless (nirmamaḥ) (Jā.U. 6). And yet, according to Śaṅkara, this ideal saṁnyāsin “does not transgress the limits of moral propriety” (Mu.U.Bh. III.i.4) (trans. Gambhirānanda, 1989, Vol. 1: 144), his behaviour is never “disrespectful” (anādarah) (Br.U.Bh. III.v.1).

Nevertheless, this selflessness does not imply an absence of activity. On the contrary, the teacher remains in society with “the sole aim of helping others” (keval parānugraha prayojana) (U.S. Prose, 1.6). This perfectly parallels Lewis’ (2005) depiction of the altruism shown by the bodhisattva who remains in samsāra “for no other goal than assisting others” (p97). And although, unlike the bodhisattva, the jīvan-mukta does not vow to return to this world of suffering; his acceptance of the duty to pass on the knowledge of brahman ensures that beings will continue to be liberated by his pupils. The outcome is therefore the same, and can be compared to the Buddha’s refusal to enter parinirvāṇa until he had disciples that could continue his work. And so, by claiming that the life of the brahman-knower is constructively altruistic, we must also question Perrett’s (1998: 54) assertion that “mokṣa is the good life rather than the moral life”. For Śaṅkara, it is both.

We might also compare the jīvan-mukta’s “constructive altruism” with Davis’ (2005) treatment of the altruistic form of rulership as recommended in the Mahābarata. Davis suggests that “The altruistic dharma of a king … lies in renouncing personal aims in favour of seeking to “benefit the world”” (p167). The jīvan-mukta, by

---

204 While we have no commentary by Śaṅkara on the Jābāla Upaniṣad, or any other so-called Saṁnyāsa Upaniṣad (see Olivelle, 1992); Śaṅkara does quote from it with reference to the lifestyle of the mendicant (parivrājakah) or highest renouncer (parama-haṁsa) (Ch.U.Bh. II.xxiii.1), and again with reference to renouncing from the state of a student (B.S.Bh. III.iv.17).
contrast, has already renounced everything, including this world and the next, and, as such, no longer has any personal aims. The brahma-vid need do nothing. His selfless following of the Dharma is therefore effortless. Yet, it is with time and effort that he teaches the truth of brahman. So while he need do nothing, he does do something. So he does not leave “all activity and repose in oneness”, as Otto (1957: 207) claims. Rather, he acts from that place of oneness, "out of that consciousness" (Radhakrishnan, 1989: 357). This constitutes his own form of altruistic dharma, where dharma stands more for conduct than duty. For if duty is a “thing that can be exacted from a person, as one exacts a debt” (Util. 5.14), then his teaching is no duty. Better to see it as a spontaneous and compassionate gift. And as Mill noted: “No one has a moral right to our generosity and beneficence” (5.15).205

It is quite interesting that according to Green’s (2005) strict definition of altruism as “intentional action for the welfare of others” which has “only a neutral or negative consequence on the actor” (p191), Śaṅkara’s jīvan-mukta, who is “free from merit and demerit” (dharmādharmā varjitam) (Bh.G.Bh. 6.27) would seem to pass the test where the bodhisattva might fail. The bodhisattva fails if he continues to accrue merit by his positive actions, and he will continue to accrue merit until he reaches the stage of an enlightened arhat. At such a time, the arhat is said to create no new karma, having passed beyond merit (punya) and demerit (pāpa), due to the destruction of the three roots of unwholesome action. However, they are still subject to past karma, and may still experience physical, if not mental, pain (Miln. 44-45). But as we know, Śāntideva has imposed a voluntary delusion on his bodhisattva, so karma and merit must still be functioning. Significantly, Śāntideva also argues that karma still

---

205 Whether or not such generosity or compassion should be “strictly optional” and whether or not liberalism is thus “deficient” (Garfield, 2002: 187-205) is open to debate.
functions in the *arhat* (BCA. 9.44-48), just as Śaṅkara admits that *karma* still functions in the *brahma-vid* (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2).

We might stop to question here whether Śāntideva, in dedicating all his merit to others (BCA. 9.166-167), has thereby transcended a “eudaemonist interpretation” (Goodman, 2009: 92). The only problem with this non-merit-making thesis is that the act of dedication (*nāmanā, parināmanā*) traditionally forms part of a seven-limbed practice, as found in the *Gaṇḍavyūha Sūtra*.²⁰⁶ Śāntideva recommends this practice for the accumulation of merit. In fact, Chapters 2 & 3 of the *BCA* may well be seen as an extended version of this practice (Crosby & Skilton, 1995: 9-13). But even so, whether merit is accumulated or not, this does not render it “eudaemonistic” or selfish, for this accumulation is itself sought with the sole intention of fulfilling the Bodhisattva Vow. Śāntideva states that:

\[
puṇya dānād api yat puṇyaṃ tato ‘pi na vipākaḥ prārthanīyo ‘nyatra parārthāt
\]

In that merit which arises from the donating of merit, there is no ripening, except for another’s benefit (Ś.S. 147).

Thus, Śāntideva’s ethics do indeed transcend a eudaemonist interpretation. The situation is much clearer for the *brahma-vid*, who is claimed by the Upaniṣads to be beyond the making of new *karma* (Mu.U. II.ii.8), a claim Śaṅkara explicitly endorses (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2). The *brahma-vid* is therefore a definite candidate for altruism according to Green’s strict criteria. Unlike the *bodhisattva*, the *brahma-vid* has no need to ‘generate’ an altruistic motivation; he teaches spontaneously. Nevertheless, he still needs to *empathise* with the pupil. The pupil believes he is an individuated self. Even if he believes he has a relationship with *brahman*, it is still based on a

²⁰⁶ Dayal (1970: 54-8) is wrong to claim that it was Śāntideva who formulated this practice.
notion of ‘me’ and ‘Him’. So it would seem that the brahman-knower still needs to alternate between ultimate reality and provisional reality. But how is he to do this? The problem is similar to one we faced with regard to the fully enlightened Buddha. I therefore believe it better to understand the brahman-knower as flickering between these two realities. Like Śāntideva, Śaṅkara does not provide us with a positive theory of how such flickering would work. However, he does, reluctantly (Br. U. Bh. I.iv.10) and unwittingly (U.S. Prose, 1.2) admit that it must so occur. Thus, the brahma-vid who also “knows” his wife and the brahma-vid who sees fit to examine the pupil’s credentials must rely on flickering cognition.

One thing worthy of note is that Śaṅkara’s constructive altruism is mainly towards people who are overtly seeking his help. They come to the teacher as “seekers” of liberation. The V.C. thus speaks of the brahman-knower as acting “through others’ wishes” (parecchayā) (539). Adopting Nagel’s (1978: 81) words, the teacher’s actions are “motivated by reasons which the other person’s interests provide”. The power structure is also quite clear, the pupil having already conceded a lack of knowledge. Of course, in this case it also happens that the interests of the teacher and pupil coincide, the teacher having once been a seeker himself. The teacher is simply one (admittedly profound) leap ahead of the pupil, and the pupil is potentially set to become a teacher himself. One is reminded of Foucault’s (1982: 782-785) notion of “pastoral power”, a power which concerns individuals rather than whole communities, a power which is “salvation oriented”.

In contrast, the so-called other-regarding ethic of Śāntideva’s advanced bodhisattva is aimed at all beings, whether they overtly realise that life is suffering or not. They thus vow to lead to nirvāṇa all those without refuge: the foolish, the ignorant, and the blind
(Ś.S. 287-289). He is therefore open to the criticism that some beings might not wish to be “liberated” or “perfected”. Of course, Śaṅkara may also help others who do not wish to be helped, but Śāntideva’s ethics do seem to spread a wider net. Kantians may therefore point out that Śāntideva’s ethics go beyond the “duty of love”. They may insist, with Baron (1997), that “we are not to seek to perfect others” (p14), nor “decide for them what their ends should be” (p15). It could then be argued that this is not other-regarding at all, for the incentive to act comes from the bodhisattva’s projection of a Buddhist doctrine (i.e. suffering, nirvāṇa, etc), not from the other person’s overt interests. Furthermore, it would seem that the motivating factor is the bodhisattva’s own desire to liberate all beings. This appears to contradict the bodhisattva’s vow to work only if it is in the “interests of others” (Ś.S. 117). It may also go against Śāntideva’s own (Kant-like) claim that:

\[
na \text{ yuktam svārtha drṣṭyādi tadiyais ca} \text{ śu}rādibhiḥ || \leftarrow \text{na yuktam syanditum svārtham anyadiyaiḥ karādibhiḥ ||}
\]

It is not right for example to set the eyes of others onto your own goals. It is not right to use the hands and limbs of others for your own projects (BCA. 8.138).  

However, it would also seem rather perverse to treat this ‘desire’ for the happiness of others, or the ‘desire’ to end suffering on a par with egoistic desires. Levinas (2006: 30) asks himself if the “Desire for Others” stems from appetite or generosity. Śāntideva writes:

\[
ataḥ parāthaṃ kṛtvāpi na mado na ca vismayaḥ || \leftarrow na vipāka phalākāṅkṣā parārthaikānta trṣṇayā ||
\]

Actually, though acting for the good of others, he neither feels exhilaration nor pride, nor desire for the resulting [karmic] reward, with a thirst solely for the welfare of others (BCA. 8.109).

\[\text{207 Cf. Kant’s famous: “Act in such a way that you always treat humanity ... never simply as a means, but always at the same time as an end” (Kant, 2005: 106-107).}\]
Śāntideva’s other-regarding ethics, notably similar here to the ideal of the Gītā, are anything but “egoistic”. And even Kantians would agree that “We are very much obliged to try to alleviate suffering” (Baron, 1997: 15). Following Nagel (1978: 121), we might see this desire of the bodhisattva in purely impersonal terms, re-writable as “If only all beings were liberated from suffering”, a statement which seems devoid of egoity. Sober and Wilson (1998), drawing a distinction between “ultimate” (i.e. irreducible to other desires) and “instrumental” desires, have claimed that “altruists have ultimate desires concerning what they think will be good for others” (p230, stress mine). Foucault (1982) has also spoken of “pastoral power” in terms of “ultimate” soteriological aims, and has suggested that such power “cannot be exercised without knowing the inside of people’s minds” (p783). Sober and Wilson (1998) further suggest that an “altruist may want others to have what they actually want for themselves; alternatively, an altruist may want for others something they have never thought of” (p230).

Consider again Śāntideva’s position. On one side, there are those who are ignorant of their true state:

\begin{verbatim}
 aho batātīsocya tvam eṣam duḥkha ugha vartinām \\
 ye nekṣante sva dauḥstityam evam apy atiduḥsthitāḥ    ||
\end{verbatim}

Alas! - The extremely grievous condition of these beings that exist in this flood of suffering, not seeing their own state, while remaining in such wretchedness (BCA. 9.163).

\begin{verbatim}
 ajarāmara līlānām evaṁ viharatāṁ satāṁ \\
 āyāsyantyāpado ghorāḥ kṛtvā maraṇam agrataḥ    ||
\end{verbatim}

For people live on like this, pretending they will never grow old or die. Terrible misfortunes will be coming, with death the foremost of them (9.165).
On the other side, there are those bodhisattvas, “in whom there is born a concern for the welfare of others beyond that which they have for themselves” (yat parārthāśayo 'nyeṣāṁ na svārthe 'py upajāyate) (BCA. 1.25b). This may well be typical of the “Well, samsāra is painful, though you do not feel it to be” attitude that Chakrabarti (1983: 168) claims the “liberation-obsessed philosopher” throws at others. Yet we ought to remember that even Mill’s idea of democracy was a decision-making process for “the good of the people, not the will of the people” (Skorupski, 1998: 25). Mill’s society was one where the intellectual elite had an “obligation to exercise moral and intellectual influence” (p29). Surely, no one would disagree that our modern forms of democratic government continue to abide by this principle.

And even if all this sounds rather paternalistic, then Śāntideva would say, so be it. In the Compendium, we see the bodhisattva “appointing himself as a father to all beings” (pitr samam ātmānam sarva praṇāyām nitojayanāh) (Ś.S. 23).208 It could hardly be any more paternalistic, but it is a trait that Śaṅkara shares (Bh.G.Bh. 4.19). And assuming it to be of ultimate benefit to others, and so long as it honours a code of “pastoral delicacy” (Matics, 1971: 60), which we trust would involve both sensitivity and respect, it seems difficult to denounce; unless, of course, one has a very different definition of liberation. After all, even Freud (2008) suggested we behave like an “understanding teacher” (p55) providing the other with “a knowledge of the way

208 Kṛṣṇa is also called the “father” (pīṭā) of the world (Bh.G. 11.43), though clearly on a much grander scale. While the bodhisattva and the jīvan-mukta may teach and protect others like a father-figure, they are not world creators; unlike Kṛṣṇa, who is said to be the “seed-giving father” (bīja-pradah pīṭā) (Bh.G. 14.4) as well as the “mother” (mātā) (9.17). Thus I think we should resist the temptation to parallel Kṛṣṇa with a bodhisattva. Also, Śaṅkara takes Kṛṣṇa to be a teacher (guru) who is greater than any other (Bh.G.Bh. 11.43). Thus, we should not even take the parallel between Kṛṣṇa and the brahma-vid (see Nelson, 1996) too far. Perhaps Sharma’s (1990: 28–29) equating of Śāntideva’s bodhisattva and the Gītā’s sthita-prajña is as far as we should venture.
things really are” (p57). Freud called this process “education for reality” (p63); but what else have we been talking about?

No doubt there is a glaring power gap here, and that may be worthy of further discussion, but the bodhisattva could simply argue that it is for the “ignorant” that he is most called on to act. Just as Christ came to save the “sick” and the “sinners” (Mark, 2:17), so the bodhisattva returns to save (trātum) the “deluded” (mohitāḥ). Just as Kṛṣṇa acts in order to save the worlds from ruin (Bh.G. 3.22-24), so the jīvan-mukta acts “for the sake of preventing people from going astray” (loka saṁgrahārthe) (Bh.G.Bh. 4.19). Nobody would argue with the person who saved a blind man from falling off a railway platform, or persuaded the fool to stop hanging out of the carriage window, or prevented a child from crawling onto the tracks. Such interventions are accepted by all ethical parties. The argument is more about: 1) what constitutes ‘blindness’, being a ‘fool’ or a ‘child’, and 2) what the correct, wise, and mature view of life ought to be. It is not a question of whether we ought to tolerate power relations or not, for, a “society without power relations can only be an abstraction” (Foucault, 1982: 791). As such, modern ethicists, Freud included, would more likely start by criticising the metaphysical bases of such power relations (e.g. Smart, 1973: 5), rather than the use of power per se. And needless to say, both Madhyamaka and Advaita Vedānta would be equally open to attack on metaphysical grounds.

Focusing on Śaṅkara, we should note that not all seekers would be eligible for help, for not all would be of the right type, not all would qualify. When Śaṅkara talks of “seekers of liberation” (mumukṣunā) he has in mind a male Brahmin of a certain educational background. Of course, theoretically, when that student achieves self-
realisation, thereafter “he and the teacher stand as equals” (Cenkner, 1983: 17). As for everyone else, Śaṅkara simply assumes that they ought to be involved in worldly pursuits, hopefully generating the karmic merit to be reborn in a situation that will allow them to become true seekers.

These traditional assumptions on caste are even evident in the language of those who wish to deny caste differences. Tiwari (1977), writing about Advaita’s monasteries (maṭhas), claims that, “There was hardly any scope for making a distinction between one caste or the other” (p132), a claim clearly at odds with the Upadeśa Śāhasrī. But he then goes on to say that “Even though a śūdra, if you do good you become a Brāhmin” (ibid.). In other words, the difference is no difference because it is temporary. But the difference remains in the very language of such apologetic statements.

---

209 This is clearly not the case in real terms. If it were, Śaṅkara would be treated just like any other teacher in the lineage, which he clearly is not. Similarly, Cenkner’s suggestion that the early Buddhists accepted “equality between teacher and pupil” (p19) does not take into account the fact that disciples like Mahā-Kāśyapa, Mahā-Maudgalāyana and Sāriputra were singled out by the Buddha, or that the tradition still sees the Buddha as being superior to all of them. These monks have thus been singled out by the Mahāyāna, usually for ridicule. Even Śāntideva singles out Mahā-Kāśyapa (BCA. 9.51). Of course, theoretically, it could be argued that Śāntideva aims to bring all beings to the same level of Buddhahood (buddhatvaṃ) as the Buddha himself. In the meantime, however, due to the Mahāyāna notion of stages, inequalities are bound to exist. So, for instance, Śāntideva states that “the views of some yogis are superseded by the views of others of even higher wisdom” (bādhyante dhīviśeṣeṇa yogino ’pyuttarottaraṁ) (BCA. 9.4). Inequality is thus a natural state of affairs.

210 Tiwari (1977) introduces the maṭhas rather sceptically, using the phrase “If this were true” (p128); but then continues to discuss their social implications as though this fact were confirmed. For a “hypothetical construction” of their creation, see Hacker (in Halbfass, 1995: 29). Suthren Hirst (2005: 26) has recently said that there is “no definite evidence” that Śaṅkara established any maṭhas. For my thesis, it matters little.

211 Śūdra: The lowest of the four classes in India, as listed in the Āpastamba Dharmasūtra (1.4); the other three being: Brahmīnṣ, Kṣatriyaḥ and Vaśiṣyaḥ. These first three were known as “twice-born” (dvijā), because the males of these classes underwent an initiation after which they were “subject to the prescriptions of dharma”, thus constituting a kind of “second-birth” (Olivelle, 1999: xxxv). Śūdra males, like the females of all classes, underwent no such initiation. The institution of Brahmanical renunciation therefore “disregards” Śūdras and women (Olivelle, 1992: 60). Note though that these groups still “acknowledged the authority of the Vedas” (Lipner, 2010: 68).

212 Lipner (2010: 141) has even noted such “inconsistency” in Gandhi’s rhetoric on caste.
The truth is this: for Śaṅkara, the final stretch of the path to liberation is grounded in the understanding of certain verses of the Upaniṣads. And, of course, he believes that only certain people are capable of such an understanding. This is not an agent-neutral theory. Rather, his ethics are explicitly hierarchical. For example, he writes, “Owing to the gradation of duty, there is gradation of qualification” (dharma tāratamya d adhikāri tāratamyam) (B.S.Bh. I.i.4). His teaching is not for the “guidance of mankind”, as Tiwari (1977: 132) claims, but for the guidance of a select few (see Chapter 7). Not only are certain castes excluded from the renouncer’s path to ultimate knowledge, but so are most women, at least in their present incarnation. It is true that in the B.S.Bh., Śaṅkara states that Gārgī (a legendary female philosopher) was in fact a brahman-knower (III.iv.36-8), but his intention seems to be to make those not involved in ritual duty eligible for ultimate knowledge. That is, he wants to make room for himself and his monastic following, one which did not include women (see Cenkner, 1983: 50). The logic is this: if a woman (who is ineligible for rites) can be a brahman-knower, then so can an ascetic who has renounced rites. In other words, ritual is irrelevant to knowledge.

Again, women can of course be reborn as men and can then go on to qualify for the path of renunciation. Just as all men have “equal opportunities, but not in this life” (Weber, 1958: 144), so it is with women. Śaṅkara’s supporters could therefore claim that his apparent sexism is not entirely exclusivist. Like those of low caste, they are “not doomed to be associated to any constant social label in different births”, as Saha (2009: 72) puts it. Clearly, this concept of the temporary nature of one’s present incarnation is one that may not satisfy the modern woman of today. It may also be small consolation to those of lower caste; nevertheless, it is a powerful concept, one which has been taken very seriously in India. For example, the V.C. (2) states that,
“Liberation is not to be attained except through the well-earned merit of 100 million rebirths” (muktir no śāta janma koṭi sukṛtaḥ puṇyair vinā labhyate). As such, Tiwari’s apology (above) is not an invalid one, so long as one admits the elitism and inequalities involved.

That Śaṅkara does not ultimately close the door on others, but merely tells them to “come back later” is a fact that should not be lost on us, regardless of our politics and scepticism. After all, Śāntideva also talks of the immature and the unworthy as being disqualified from hearing the holy doctrine (Ś.S. 54). Taber (1983) correctly notes that “virtually all systems of Buddhism presuppose some spiritual conditioning which prepares one for the truth” (p65). Śaṅkara’s ethics then are not to be taken unquestionably as exclusive, just as Śāntideva’s ethics ought not to be taken unquestionably as inclusive. Both throw out their doctrinal nets, yet both feel the need to scrutinize their takers. Yet, going back to our Fig. 2 (p312), we see that the knowers are those who see through the illusion (māyā) of difference (bheda) and drop the individualistic notion of “I” (ahaṃkāra). They are therefore beyond the society whose divisions they condone.
7. **Marginal Cases**

Here I wish to reflect on what we have gathered so far, and I particularly want to re-examine how the Two Truths are used with regard to the marginal cases of women and lower castes. In calling them “marginal cases”, I am thinking from the perspective of Śaṅkara and Śāntideva. I want to show that whatever they had to say about the level-playing surface that an ultimate view theoretically provides, they nevertheless continued to play their social games on an inclined field. In other words, holding an ultimate view does not lead them to social egalitarianism. Rather, life is seen as a cultural and soteriological “staircase” (Radhakrishnan, 1989: 366). This ties in with Dumont’s (1980) claim that, in India, the “language of religion is the language of hierarchy” (p108). Now while this need not necessarily lead to actual temporal power and/or authority, I have argued that it does in fact lead to an assumed “pastoral power”. Having established the nature of this hierarchy, through a number of examples, I will then be asking whether we still have the right to apply the word ‘altruism’ to their ethical views. Put another way, we need to ask whether egalitarianism or impartiality are essential components of altruism.

We have been searching for an approach to ethics which will allow us a direct comparison of the activities of a bodhisattva and a brahma-vid. The notion of a selfless response to the world has proven itself a useful tool, and this led us to believe that perhaps the Western notion of altruism could provide us with the final key which would offer up a fundamental category within which to discuss these ethical systems. However, we have come across a number of problems. First, we have been forced into noting that the standard Western notion of altruism assumes that the actor is fully
aware that they have a self, one which needs protecting; and that this self is being momentarily denied attention. This notion is unacceptable to Śaṅkara, for his brahman-knower knows that he is one with brahman, and thus knows that he has no separate self which requires protection. His selfless acts are not altruistic in the sense that they put the self down in order to hold the other in higher esteem. There simply is no self to hold down. I have, however, argued that this notion is acceptable to Śāntideva, so long as the monk has yet to have a full insight into emptiness. Here, the monk is still subject to self-love (ātma-sneha) and has yet to throw himself into the Bodhisattva Vow. A selfless act by such a monk would indeed be an altruistic one. But once the monk has had an insight into emptiness and has plunged into the life of a bodhisattva, he no longer acknowledges a self, and as such, his actions, though selfless, are not altruistic in the Comtean sense. In fact, we have noted how, instead of putting himself down, the bodhisattva actually voluntarily inflates the other, creating a self where there was no self. Thus, I have spoken of a “constructive altruism”.

There are two more problems that our model of “constructive altruism” would need to face, one of which has been mentioned already. This was the problem of doing things for others without their expressed consent, and moreover, possibly even against their will. That is, the bodhisattva can see suffering that you cannot see, and has taken it upon himself to remove that suffering from you. We tried to draw on Foucault’s notion of “pastoral power”, but saw that this is too limited, for Śāntideva’s “flock” seems to stretch further afield, and could potentially cross both cultural and religious boundaries. For Śāntideva, so far considered, there are really only two categories of people, bodhisattvas and non-bodhisattvas, with the former having the responsibility to look after the latter.
This brings us to the second problem of our model of “constructive altruism”, the problem of partiality. It is probably fair to say that the problem is more acute for Śaṅkara, who explicitly accepts Hindu class and caste categories. Nevertheless, it is complicated by the fact that Śaṅkara holds that a brahman-knower does not see himself as being a Brahmin. In fact, he should not even see himself as male. Even so, when testing a student’s qualifications, he must be aware that the student needs to be both a Brahmin and a male. This highlights two problems. First, Śaṅkara’s ethics are clearly partial. Second, his ethics rely on an application of the Two Truths, and only work if the brahman-knower simultaneously denies his own family background, whilst taking extreme care in analysing the family background of the applicant. That is, the brahman-knower is selfless, but not just to anyone. Not only is he partial, but he is partial in a way that seems inherently paradoxical. The system only works because it relies on a Two-Truths philosophy embedded within a Hindu social context. It is altruistic only within this confined space. In other words, it threatens to fail the Comtean notion of altruism on two accounts, by denying the self on the subjective side of the equation and by denying the equality of the objects on the other.

Up to this point, it has been suggested that Śāntideva has only two ethical categories, the bodhisattva and the non-bodhisattva. However, this is not the whole story. Like the Buddha himself, he also discriminates between the lay and the monastic and between male and female. While class and gender should not matter to the Buddhist, in fact they were “reinforced in institutionalized forms” (Kasulis, 2005: 303). However, we must hold Śāntideva more accountable than the Buddha, for the insight into emptiness that the Mādhyamikas posit as the turning point in one’s view of the world ought to overcome any such discrimination. According to this account, all distinctions are unjustified. And yet, we see them being argued for. So while
Huntington’s (1989) claim that the bodhisattva “behaves in accordance with an ideal of impartiality” (p100) might only be intended to apply to those above the 7th stage, one may still wish to question its applicability on the ground. And perhaps Williams (1998a) is over-hasty in assuming that Śāntideva’s arguments in the BCA are “intended to lead to altruistic action which makes no distinction between different persons” (p144).

While some of his verses may imply this, the context also plays a part in the actions of the bodhisattva. For example, while his argument at BCA 8.103 (see p274 above) appears like a universal/egalitarian moral imperative, we have to remember that: 1) not everyone is a bodhisattva, 2) not all bodhisattvas have the same capacities, and 3) not everyone is ready to let go of duḥkha and saṃsāra. So while it is a form of moral imperative, it has limited applicability. Hence, it could be argued that, in real terms, Śāntideva is just as partial as Śaṅkara.

Rather than go into the whole question of inequality in their relative systems, let us simplify things by allocating a single area of social context in each system. Let us compare how Śaṅkara handles the subject of class and caste with the way in which Śāntideva handles the subject of gender. Both will claim that these categories are mere labels to be left behind, yet both will confirm these labels within their ethical systems. To reiterate, ultimately speaking, according to both Advaita and Madhyamaka metaphysics, these categories cannot stand up to analysis. However, conventionally, they not only stand up, but Śaṅkara and Śāntideva continually prop them up. Through these means, I wish to demonstrate how the conventional, and thus moral-making, ground of each tradition consistently manages to survive the ultimate

---

213 Wetlesen (2002: 39) claims to have found “four different senses” of ‘altruism’ in Williams’ book.

214 Wetlesen (2002: 42) hesitates here to call it a “moral imperative”, because he wants to take Śāntideva’s ethics as virtue ethics. But, as argued in Chapter 2, Śāntideva adopts more than one form of ethical method.
level of discourse. Needless to say, I am not simply trying to show how partial these thinkers were. They were no doubt no more or less partial than any other thinkers of their time. What I am trying to do is show how the doctrine of the Two Truths actually functions in practice.
7.1 Śaṅkara: The Reality and Non-reality of Class and Caste

Earlier, I had been trying to argue that Śaṅkara’s teacher-student relationship could be seen as a particular manifestation of altruism. This had seemed to be beyond debate. Then we brought in the notion of self, and we were asked whether a brahman-knower, apparently having no self, could in fact be altruistic at all. It was decided that we would need to posit a more “qualified” form of altruism, one in which the self of the other was projected solely for their sake. This we called “constructive” altruism. We will now take this problem of altruism one step further.

It may seem too obvious to state, but the notion of ethics also involves the notion of morality, and some scholars have attempted to divide the altruistic from the moral. So while some scholars may be happy with me claiming that Śaṅkara’s and Śāntideva’s ethics are altruistic in some qualified manner, they may still propose that they are acting in ways that are less than moral. I have already mentioned the problem of doing for others things that they have not willed you to do. Here, however, I will focus on the debate from impartiality. In their recent (mainly) historical account of altruism, Scott and Seglow (2007) begin by offering two hypothetical cases, which they assume give us reasons to doubt whether an altruistic act need always be classed as a moral one. I wish to question this assumption. Not that I am suggesting that all altruistic acts are de facto moral. What I wish to question is the leap that Scott and Seglow make from partiality to immorality.

The first hypothetical case is one of a “racist organ donor” (Scott & Seglow, 2007: 2) who wishes to donate his organs, but only to those of his own race. This act is said to
be “altruistic, but hardly moral” (ibid.). A similar (actual) case, involving the deceased person’s parents, is later claimed to be “morally condemnable” (pp.127-128). Personally, I cannot see why the donors here are not acting morally, and I believe most people would object to them being called *im*-moral. It certainly does not amount to a crime of any sort. Even Singer (1972) concedes that “Most people reserve their moral condemnation for those who violate some moral norm” (p.236). To condemn such an act is to deprive the donor of freedom of choice, and in the case of the family, may lead to them being less altruistic in the future. **To be openly partial when giving need not exclude one from being moral.** This is an essential point.

Let us put the partial-thus-immoral thesis to the test. Are parents being “hardly moral” when they put their own children through school and college? I think not. And even Scott and Seglow (2007: 38) have to admit that it is a “perfect duty” to look after one’s own children. What about an elderly lady who leaves her house and wealth to her family on purely genetic grounds? Is she being hardly moral? I think the answer is once again negative. And remember, in the above cases, we are talking of the donor, not of the surgeon. If a white surgeon gave all available organs to white patients only, then that would indeed be condemnable. But here we are talking of a dying person’s last wishes or a family in deep distress. So while I (and possibly all Buddhists) would agree with Scott and Seglow (2007: 127) that such forms of partiality follow from over-attachment, I feel that to publicly condemn such an act is both wrong and counter-productive. So how does this affect my thesis?

Well, if I am right about this, then an Advaitin teacher passing on Vedic knowledge exclusively to *Brahmins* is not immoral. In fact, his sense of exclusion is not based on over-attachment to the gift, but on a belief that the receiver needs to prove their worth
before receiving such a valuable gift. As such, even a Buddhist must acknowledge this restriction for they too guard certain of their teachings. Śāntideva himself states that a bodhisattva commits one of the root downfalls (mūlā pattiṇāṃ) “if one communicates the doctrine of emptiness to those minds that are not as yet prepared” (śūnyatāyāś ca kathanāt sattveṣv akṛta buddhiṣu) (Ś.S. 67), a rule that is still maintained in the (Tibetan) Bodhisattva Vow.  

The second hypothetical case, of an American citizen donating “huge sums” to fellow Americans (Scott & Seglow, 2007: 2), is even more controversial. In order to claim that it “arguably offends the moral ideal of impartiality” on the grounds that these beneficiaries are “quite well off” (ibid.), one would first have to establish such an “ideal of impartiality”. Partiality only opposes the “moral” within a certain negotiated ethics of justice, one which (arguably) few societies would accept. Mill suggested that impartiality was not to be seen as a duty, and that condemnation of partiality was “rather the exception than the rule” (Util. 5.9). Modern day Europe and America, on the whole, clearly do not accept impartiality as a duty. And we can be quite certain that 8th century India, with its own “meritorian concept of justice” (Dissanayake, 1994: 275) did not accept it as a duty.

Most people, be they American or Indian, would rather buy their own child a large birthday present than buy them a small one and the next-door neighbour’s child an equally small one. There is nothing immoral in this seemingly natural response. Recall Mill’s “No one has a moral right to our generosity or beneficence” (Util. 5.15). Hence, Singer’s argument, which also uses the language of condemnation, is preferable to Scott and Seglow’s on two accounts. First, in stating that “If we accept

215 See, for example, Bokar (1997: 70) or Sonam Rinchen (2000: 129-130)
any principle of impartiality …” (Singer, 1972: 232), he at least recognises the if-
condition of the argument. And second, his condemnation is of those who give no money to charitable causes (p235), not to those who give to the ‘wrong’ cause.

While sympathetic to the possible egoistic nature of “in-group altruism” (Scott & Seglow, 2007: 4), I cannot accept that this makes such altruism “incompatible with the impartial demands of morality” (ibid.), for no such “impartial demands” have been established. And if the problem lies in giving to people who are “better off” than some others, then by this account, if I give a donation to any human being, this could still be classed as “hardly moral” on the grounds that there was another human being somewhere or other who happened to be “worse off”. This would basically leave our hands tied. Furthermore, giving to the “worse off” goes against one of our most popular forms of giving, the giving of prizes. Prizes, be they honorary awards or sums of money, are typically given to those who deserve them in some non-trivial way. It is surely not immoral to give out a prize to the most deserving. Rather, the opposite seems true. Likewise, it is not immoral to give teachings to those who have proven themselves deserving of them. After all, Western Universities typically restrict tertiary education to those who have proven themselves at the secondary level.

It is indeed ironic, that in disagreeing on this issue as to what counts as a moral form of giving, Scott & Seglow have given weight to the point I made in Chapter 2, being that we simply cannot use virtue ethics as a basis for comparison. Even we British-educated males cannot agree on what constitutes the virtue of generosity. For surely, if we are entitled to question the morality of a donation, then we are equally entitled to question whether or not generosity is a virtue at all.
Moreover, as our discussion is one which involves religious values, we might ask just what is meant by the term “well-off”. Although they only imply as much, I am assuming that Scott and Seglow’s (2007: 2) criterion for being “well off” is financial and that the “huge sums” they speak of are dollars and cents. If so, it is a criterion that Buddhists and Advaitins would not accept, and clearly one that renouncers of any denomination, including the early Christians, would not accept. It might be noted here that what we in English call a “renouncer”, the Indians call a “saṃnyāsin”, which in Sanskrit literally means “one who has laid it all down”; and what we in English call a “monk”, the Buddha called a “bhikku”, which in Pāli literally means “beggar”. Now no one is financially worse off than a beggar who has laid all he had down. So the “beggar you choose to give a few coins to in India” (Scott & Seglow, 2007: 75) might well be a bodhisattva, and you might well receive a larger “sum” in return. The currency of the “renouncer”, of course, is wisdom and merit, not dollars!

In Śāntideva’s words, “The monks make virtue their object, not wealth” (nārthārthikāḥ pravrajitā guṇārthikā) (Ś.S. 115). The wealth of a monk is measured in terms of his knowledge and his ability to teach. So when we speak of the “well off” or the “affluent” (e.g. Singer), we might pause to consider the scope of our definitions. And once again, we should not question the ethics of those religions which see teaching, rather than charity, as the highest of gifts. Whilst Śaṅkara and Śāntideva no doubt saw worldly pleasure as having a value of greater than zero, their central focus is clearly the highest good, that of ultimate knowledge.

Needless to say, Scott and Seglow, like Singer, do indeed raise important questions with regard to giving, inclusiveness and exclusiveness. Similarly, Nagel, who Scott

---

216 We are once again reminded here of how terms have taken on new meaning under the influence of the welfare state (see Foucault, 1982: 784).
and Seglow (2007: 35) take as a model “impartialist”, has many interesting comments to make on the matter of partiality with regard to family, clubs, businesses and nations (Nagel, 1978: 130). His focus is not so much on their “moral” nature, but on their subjective (versus impersonal) nature, which likewise puts limits on their altruistic force. Nagel is not about to say that caring more for one’s own family is immoral. Rather, Nagel’s interest is that while to speak of the act of helping one’s family is objective, to actually help one’s own family is essentially subjective, and is based on relationships rather than objective reasoning. It therefore sits outside his thesis that altruism follows from objective reasoning. By contrasting such acts with “perfectly general altruism” (Nagel, 1978: 130), it is not clear whether Nagel thus sees such acts as non-altruistic, though Scott and Seglow (2007: 37) appear to take him this way. It is particularly interesting, however, that Nagel (1978) adds a short note that “Religions present a more complex case” (p130, n.1), by which he must be taken to mean that religions are pre-disposed to partiality. This point has already been discussed above (Chapter 2) with regard to the larger problem of comparing religious and secular ethics. But to focus the discussion onto altruism, we might interpret Nagel’s point here as being one with Neusner & Chilton’s (2005), that “Each religious tradition frames altruism in its own context” (p.vii). Let us then try to tease out the complexities of the religions under review.

There are two reasons why Śaṅkara’s ethics may rightly be called “altruism”. Oliner (2003: 15), in his interpretation of Comte’s definition of altruism, highlights two phases: 1) the eradication of self-centred desire, and 2) a life devoted to the good of others. Both these phases are found in the path of the brahman-knower, whose task it is to drop the belief in the “I” (aham) and then to remain in society with the “sole aim of helping others” (U.S. Prose, 1.6). In fact, not only does the brahman-knower give
up selfish desires, but in dropping the “I”, he even gives up unselfish ones. This shift in motivation involves the “total de-identification from even the act of desiring itself” (Marcaurelle, 2000: 20).

Naturally, as an Advaitin teacher, the main help that Śaṅkara has in mind is the giving of knowledge, and the “others” he has in mind are male-only Brahmins. It should by now be obvious that it is not just any knowledge given by anyone. It is a liberating knowledge given by one who has achieved all there is to achieve. It is a type of knowledge that Śaṅkara believes will put an end to the other’s suffering. The worthiness of the task is obvious. The value of the gift is unmistakable. It is for these motivational and consequentialist reasons that such a life is worthy of the name “constructive altruism”.

Now clearly, Śaṅkara cannot offer people of other religions the chance of liberation through knowledge of brahman. It would make no sense for him to offer this path to a Buddhist, for example, who denied the Self. Surely we can glean nothing of his moral character from such exclusion. Notably, the Diamond Sūtra excludes the hearing of its discourse from those who hold to the view of Self (Vajracchedikā, 15). This shows that even Mahāyāna Buddhism, despite its apparent universalism, must exclude others who hold conflicting beliefs. These are not merely cases of group loyalty. Such exclusion does not imply that an Advaitin cannot give food to a hungry Buddhist, or vice versa; but the giving of teachings, this most sacred of transmissions, must necessarily be guarded. This is simply a by-product of religious doctrine and has no moral content.
Nevertheless, while certain religious and inter-religious exclusions seem unquestionable, we may still want to question why Śaṅkara denies access to this path to fellow Hindus on the grounds of their class, caste and gender. After all, even the Gītā, while accepting the varnāśrama, as Śaṅkara does (Bh.G.Bh. 18.44), still finds a privileged place for these groups, whereby, “No devotee of Kṛṣṇa, regardless of social status or gender, is lost” (Johnson, 2004: xvii). Thus, Kṛṣṇa permits “each individual embodied self to reach the ‘highest self’” (Malinar, 2007: 11). Certainly, on the basis of its metaphysics, Advaita seemingly offers the scope for transcending social and cultural boundaries. As already discussed, the logical implications of non-dualism should verily forbid distinctions. The central question thus remains unanswered: If knowledge and even existence reside in brahman, how can there be any distinction between classes and gender? In asking this question, I will focus on the issue of class (varṇa) and caste (jāti). My analysis will concentrate on Śaṅkara’s use of the Two Truths, rather than on the question of ‘discrimination’ per se, which is, after all, a very complex and controversial matter. As such, my point can be made without referring to the issue of gender, an issue I will reserve for my discussion of Śāntideva.

Now Nagel (1978: 99) suggests that altruism need not rely on a “mystical identification of oneself with other persons”, or on a notion of a “mass self consisting of all persons”. We can therefore assume that Nagel would agree that altruism could be based on such notions. And it would seem that Śaṅkara, at the ultimate level of discourse, can help himself to either of these conditions. We have already noted how Śaṅkara claims such a condition, when he quotes: “When a man sees all beings in this Self, and the Self in all beings, he feels no hatred” (Īś.U. 6). The ethical point being made is that one who is fully satisfied can have neither desire nor hatred. The further point being proposed here is that when one realises that there is only one Self, one
literally becomes brahman (Mu.U. III.ii.9), that is quality-less (nirguṇa) brahman, and a quality-less brahman is incapable of hatred because there is nothing ‘other’ than the self to either desire or hate. The problem Śaṅkara then faces is how to reconcile this with the relative level of discourse. Put simply, how can we all be the same, but different? If, at the level of consciousness, I am brahman and you are brahman, and brahman is quality-less; then I share your consciousness, and they are both quality-less. If the reply is that there is no “I” and no “you”, then the question is: How can there be ground for a caste system?

The only way of penetrating this dilemma is through the Two Truths. On one hand, there is only brahman, and all beings share in being nothing but brahman. On the other hand, there is the provisional reality in which we must maintain the codes of Dharma. Where does this leave the question of class and caste? The class or caste in which you are born is the result of the karma accumulated in one’s past lives. In the commentaries, we find that Śaṅkara holds a particularly negative view of lower castes, which, if taken at face value, is even shockingly violent. I am referring here to the pouring of lead into the ears of a Śūdra who accidently overhears the Vedas being taught, and the cutting off of his tongue should he repeat what he hears, and the cutting of his body into pieces should he dare commit any of it to memory (B.S.Bh. I.iii.38). And while it may have scriptural backing (Gau.D.S. 12.4-6)217; this is nothing short of barbaric. It is thus hard to accept that Śaṅkara possessed a “critical attitude toward the Hindu caste system”, as suggested by Cronk (2003: 10). Śaṅkara’s ethics on caste seem a far cry from Vivekananda’s (2009: 390) “hurting anyone, you hurt yourself”, the so-called Vedāntin “basis of ethics” (pp384-385), written in what Lipner (2010: 81) calls “the Age of the Śūdra”.

Now Marcaurelle (2000: 32) has suggested that the Śūdras were only to be denied access to the Śrutis, and not necessarily brahman-knowledge. This they could access through hearing the Purāṇas (Legendary Stories). He therefore feels that scholars such as Mayeda and Halbfass were wrong in claiming that the former restriction implied the latter (p220, n.19). Similarly, Cenkner (1983) has claimed that, “Social status does not stand in the way” (p49). I am unconvinced. For one thing, as Taber says, over-hearing the Purāṇas does not constitute an “established discipline of knowledge based on smṛti” (p694). Second, Śaṅkara states that Śūdras lack scriptural ability (B.S.Bh. I.iii.34). Third, Śaṅkara categorically states that a born Śūdra has no right to knowledge (I.iii.34-38). And fourth, as Taber (2003: 694) again notes, had Śaṅkara wanted to extend the eligibility of knowledge to Śūdras, then the story of Jānaśruti (Ch.U. 4) would have given him the ideal opportunity. However, in both the Ch.U.Bh (IV.ii.3) and the B.S.Bh (I.iii.35), Śaṅkara resorts to “ingenious exegesis” (Suthren Hirst, 2005: 43) to show that Jānaśruti is not really a Śūdra by caste or birth even though he is addressed as such. Finally, Śaṅkara is so stubbornly against a Śūdra gaining knowledge that he claims that even those that did gain it, did so due to tendencies acquired in a past (non-Śūdra) life (B.S.Bh. I.iii.38).

Now Marcaurelle (2000: 34) has also introduced Ch.U.Bh (V.xi.7)218 in order to show that Śaṅkara accepted that householders could receive the knowledge of brahman. Not only that; they receive it, not from a Brahmin, but from a king. But what message does Śaṅkara take from this? He tells us that, in requesting knowledge from one of “inferior caste” (jātito hīnaṃ), the “great householders” (mahāśālā), who incidentally

218 Misprinted in Marcaurelle (2000: 34) as 5.2.7
were “Brahmins, deeply versed in the Vedas” (mahāśrotiyā brāhmaṇāḥ), “abandoned their pride” (abhimānaḥ hitvā). Hence, “seekers after knowledge should behave in the same manner” (C.U.Bh. V.xi.7). He also tells us that the “import of the story” (ākhyāyikārthaḥ) is that a teacher should only impart knowledge “to competent persons” (yogvaṃbhya) (ibid.). In other words, the pupil must learn to be humble in front of the teacher, while the teacher must learn to discriminate between potential pupils. Both these morals are clearly expounded in the Upadeśa Sāhasrī. Thus, Śaṅkara states that the student “should also be guided in humility, etc., the virtues which are means to knowledge” (amānitvādi guṇam ca jñānopāyaṃ samyak grāhayet) (U.S. Prose, 1.5). As to who was competent; when Śaṅkara is free to speak his own mind, it is a pure Brahmī (U.S. Prose, 1.2).

Now Marcaurelle (2000: 32) believes that such statements in Śaṅkara are exceptions to his normal inclusiveness. I am not convinced. For one thing, throughout the Upadeśa Sāhasrī, the teacher is explicitly told that he must use key phrases, literally “great sayings” (mahāvākyā), from the Upaniṣads in order to enlighten the pupil. If this is so, even if certain non-Brahmins were allowed a hearing, the Śūdras would hereby be de facto excluded from the lesson. Socio-religious circumstances “stopped all but brahmin men from having access to the intellectual culture of the philosophical tradition” (Ram-Prasad, 2001b: 378). To be fair to Marcaurelle, Śaṅkara was not particularly consistent, as is shown by his commentary of the Taittirīya Upaniṣad (I.xi.2-4), where he states that “everyone has the right to knowledge” (sarveśāṁ cādhikāro vidyāyāṁ). Even here though, Śaṅkara’s objective is not to open up access to knowledge to all and sundry. The main aim, as even Marcaurelle (2000: 31) himself admits, is to establish acceptance of the monastic’s right to knowledge without having to fulfil ritual duties.
Śaṅkara is thus abusing the notion of ultimate truth and its implied egalitarianism in order to gain an advantage for his group. However, he does not remain true to this universal position, preferring to keep the classes where they are. Whether Śaṅkara believed that Śūdras could have access to knowledge or not, the point still remains that he firmly accepted that class distinctions had validity and that people were far from being equal. In the Ch.U.Bh, he even claims that only Brahmins are straightforward (ṛjava) by nature (sva-bhāvataḥ) (IV.iv.5), and also implies that non-departure (na agaḥ) from truthfulness (satyāt) is a virtue solely belonging to the Brahmin (ibid.). So I will stand by Mayeda (1988) when he states that Śaṅkara was “rather rigid and strict with respect to caste” (p191) and Halbfass (1991: 385) when he speaks of an “uncompromising adherence to an unequal, caste-bound access” to liberation. Furthermore, no teaching on the ultimate truth changed this conventional view. Fort (1998) thus states that “traditional Advaitins find the nondual truth irrelevant to equality in everyday social relations” (p174). So while Śaṅkara clearly believed that the Self was devoid of class distinctions (B.S. I.i.1), and that the brahman-knower was thus beyond caste (Br.U.Bh. II.iv.1); he still wanted the caste-system to remain in place (B.S.Bh. I.iii.34), even to the point of being violently imposed.

The most important point to take from this is that relatively speaking, there are caste differences, but ultimately speaking, there can be no castes. Now Mayeda (1988) claims that Śaṅkara may not have been “aware of any inconsistency” (p199), but I believe he was well aware of it. The Two-Truths strategy allowed Śaṅkara the possibility of holding both views and alternating between them depending on the context. That is why, in practice, he was able to adhere to caste distinctions. This is
brought out quite vividly in the *Upadeśa Sāhasrī*, where the pupil (who must be a Brahmin in order to qualify as a pupil) is to understand that the Self is free of caste, etc, if he is to become a *brahman*-knower:

\[\text{yatas tvam bhinna jāty anvaya saṃskārāṃ śarīraṃ jāty anvaya varjītaśātmanāḥ prayābhyaajīnāsīḥ brāhmaṇa putro 'dīnvaya ityādīnā vākyeneti} \|\]

Because, by your statement ‘I am the son of a Brahmin of such and such a family, and so on’ you have identified the Self, which is free from caste, family and rites, with the body, which is subject to different caste, family and rites (U.S. Prose, 1.15).

Here we see a clear distinction being made between the body (which is subject to caste) and the Self (which is not subject to caste). But more importantly, we have a distinction between provisional reality, which must be upheld if we are to limit the gift of *brahman*-knowledge to male-only Brahmin pupils, and ultimate reality, which must be understood if this knowledge is to dawn on the pupil.

This leads to a vital point. It is misleading to think of Advaita as a non-dual philosophy, without being clear what they are being non-dual about. They are clearly not being non-dual about body versus Self. They are not being non-dual when it comes to the question of caste. They are not being non-dual with regard to gender. They are not being non-dual about other schools of thought. They are not being non-dual when comparing teacher and pupil. Hence, from the empirical point of view, we see that Advaita admits of numerous distinctions. Non-duality then, for Advaita, is of a very specific kind, it is the non-duality of the ātman and brahman, which, in a nutshell, means the non-duality of self-reflexive consciousness.

In Śaṅkara’s Two-Truths model, castes and women can exist only in the conditioned domain (T.U.Bh. I.xi.2-4). It is because the majority of us move within the
conditioned that the social norms must remain intact. In other words, it is our own ignorance which gives rise to empirical distinctions. However, it is my belief that we must see the brahman-knower’s consciousness as flickering back and forth between domains. That is why there is no contradiction in the fact that a brahman-knower does not cognise women as women even though they are women. It is also why there is no contradiction in the historical fact that there has never been a female Śaṅkarācārya or an outcaste Śaṅkarācārya (see Knot, 1998: 80 & 93). In fact, the Advaita order of renouncers, the Daśanāmi, does not accept women ascetics at all (Klostermaier, 2007: 299). While this may be controversial, it is not contradictory.

On one side, there is the conditioned, provisional world of ethics, in which Śūdras are Śūdras, women are women, teachers are teachers, pupils are pupils, and Brahmin males are Brahmin males. On the other, there is the ultimate, unconditioned, world of knowledge, “where one does not see anything else, does not hear anything else, and does not cognise anything else” (yahatra nānyatpaśyati nānyacchānāti nānyadvijānāti) (Ch.U. VII.xxiv.1). In between, there is a door, (arguably) open only to the Brahmin male, who paradoxically, once through it, must come to realise that he is not a Brahmin or a male. Holding the keys to the door is the brahman-knower who I believe flickers between the inner world of brahman and the outside world of caste, occupation and gender. If we understand these two domains, and the line that stands between them, we understand Śaṅkara’s ethics.
7.2 Śāntideva: The Reality and Non-reality of Gender

Unlike Śaṅkara’s system, there is no explicitly acknowledged class or caste system in Buddhism. I stress ‘explicit’, because caste clearly plays an important didactic role in Buddhism. For example, a virtuous Buddhist lay person may well expect to be born into a “good family”, which Keown (1996) defines as one “enjoying a privileged status in terms of caste and wealth” (p339). Furthermore, the fact that the Buddha, in becoming an ascetic, gave up his rights to the throne, plays a major role in the story of Buddhist renunciation. It is no coincidence that the same story is repeated with regard to the hagiography of Śāntideva. Indeed, in the Mahāyāna, the bodhisattva is often depicted dressed like royalty; and in the Theravāda tradition, the bodhisatta is associated not only with Buddhahood, but with kingship. It therefore comes as no real surprise that Śāntideva’s Compendium should assume that “Humans are superior to animals, high castes to low castes, men to women” (Mrozik, 2007: 8).

Sweet (1977: 55) also points out how Śāntideva’s statement that “people are seen to be of two types, the ordinary and the yogis” (BCA. 9.3) should be seen as a Buddhist parallel to the “pretensions to hereditary spiritual superiority” of the Hindu Brahmin class. And, needless to say, throughout the Compendium, Śāntideva explicitly accepts the hierarchy of the bodhisattva over the Śrāvaka. He also warns the bodhisattva about giving the Buddhist doctrine “to those who are unworthy” (abhājanībūteṣu) (Ś.S. 54). He is told to “live in a good caste” (106), which should not be one of the classic four castes (105). He speaks of the negative influence of “inferior men” (anārya jana) (161). Furthermore, the bodhisattva is specifically told to avoid the Caṇḍāla (outcaste) (48). And one of the classic warnings against acting immorally is that one may be reborn as a Caṇḍāla (69). Even an eater of meat is said to be reborn...
as either a Caṇḍāla or a Pukkasa\textsuperscript{219}, whereas one who avoids meat is either “born into a Brahmin family” (brāhmaṇeṣu ca jāyate) “or into a practitioner’s family” (atha vā yogināṃ kula) (133).

Such caste-related karmic consequences are no different than those found in the Hindu texts. So the Chāndogya Upaniṣad (V.x.7) likewise speaks of immoral behaviour leading to rebirth as a Caṇḍāla. And the Bhagavad Gītā (6.42) even includes the exact same phrase: “or even into a practitioner’s family” (atha vā yogināṃ eva kula) with relation to the positive consequences of karma-yoga. If nothing else, it shows that the “Hindu” class categories may play similar ethical roles in Buddhist rhetoric. And such caste categories have survived in Buddhism for 2,500 years. In present day Sri Lanka, the monks hold an equivalent place to the Brahmins in India, and monastic communities favour certain castes to the extent that ordination may be refused to all other castes (see Gombrich, 1988: 143-175).

This is by no means a modern phenomenon. Thus, Mrozik (2007) has argued that despite a recent change in attitude, “premodern Buddhist literature indicates that social hierarchy was generally an accepted part of Buddhist life” (p69). This is not to say that hierarchies are inherently wrong. Nor do I claim that the Indians held a principle contrary to our modern society, as Dumont (1980: 2) did. For surely the British that entered India had their own form of “subtle and deeply entrenched social hierarchy”, as Doniger (2010: 578) claims. And it would be foolish to argue that it is no longer present in our European society. My purpose then is simply to remove the notion that the Buddhists were somehow exempt from the concept of hierarchies and inequality.

\textsuperscript{219} Pukkasa = Pulkasa (Bendall & Rouse, 1971: 131). A Pulkasa is a low caste person born from parents of different classes. See Gautama Dharmasūtra (4.19), Baudhāyana Dharmasūtra (1.16.11 & 1.17.13), Vasiṣṭha Dharmasūtra (18.5), and Manu Smṛti (10.18).
Hence, there are a number of easily over-looked passages in the Pāli Canon that make it clear that from earliest times the Buddhists wished to be seen as a class distinct from the Brahmins. I take this example from the Dīgha Nikāya (iii.84), which is normally read for its discussion of Dhamma-kāya. Here I leave out that section and focus on what precedes it:

Vāseṭṭha, all of you, though of different birth, name, clan and family, who have gone forth from the household life into homelessness, if you are asked who you are, should reply: “We are ascetics, followers of the Sakyan.” He whose faith in the Tathāgata is … unshakeable by any ascetic or Brahmin, any deva or māra or Brahmā …, can truly say: “I am a true son of Blessed Lord, born of his mouth, born of Dhamma, created by Dhamma …” (trans. Walshe, 1987: 409).

This passage highlights: first, that the person who leaves his home is socially constructed, second, that this constructed person, once homeless, may have an identity crisis, and third, that the Buddhists were to be seen, not just as ascetics, but as a particular type of ascetic. It clearly shows that they wish to be distinguished from the Brahmins and other ascetics. And it even uses language which “echoes word for word” (Gombrich, 2009: 189) the creation myth of the Vedas: “His [Puruṣa’s] mouth became the Brahmin” (Rig Veda, 10.90.12) (trans. Doniger, 2005: 31). And while it may be true that the Buddha here wishes to parody the Vedic creation myths, he surely does it with the intention of creating his own sect, setting up his own teaching as the “true Veda” (Gombrich, 2009: 190).

These examples indicate that even though the Buddhists ultimately claim that there is no abiding self, this does not prevent them from using conventional categories. As Gombrich (2009) rightly claims, the Buddha clearly “recognized the conventional nature of the caste system” (p187). I would suggest then that the commonly spouted view that Buddhists believe in the equality of all people (e.g. Isayeva, 1993: 22; Sen,
2005: 10) may well need to be qualified. As these are complex issues embedded in the history of Indian culture, I prefer to focus on the example of gender categories as found in Śāntideva’s texts.

Śāntideva could not deny the historical fact that women were allowed to join the Saṅgha. He speaks of those nuns who take 500 precepts (Ś.S. 174). While certain “ill-behaved nuns” (bhikṣūṇ duḥśīlām) are to be shunned (Ś.S. 48), this does not apply to all nuns. Women may also be allowed access to the bodhisattva path (Ś.S. 116) and its moral code (60). Sometimes this inclusion has an edge to it, as when he says that “even women” (strīṇām api), which Mrozik (2007: 35) reads as “exceptional women”, can follow the path (Ś.S. 11). But overall, women are certainly not excluded. Śāntideva thus includes quotes from scriptures which address women. For example, he quotes the Gaṇḍavyūha, which addresses its discourse on the cultivation of purity to a female, which Śāntideva indicates by maintaining the feminine vocative ending (Ś.S. 180). Furthermore, Śāntideva quotes from the Śrī-mālā Sūtra (Ś.S. 42), a Mahāyāna text which supposedly recounts a discourse between the Buddha and a queen. In other words, Śāntideva does not hide the fact that women are very much part of Buddhist history.

Nevertheless, Śāntideva often talks as if his audience were male-only. The Compendium, “primarily represents a male monastic perspective” (Mrozik, 2007: 10). Similarly, the BCA was written for a “monastic audience which without doubt would have been predominantly male, if not exclusively so” (Crosby & Skilton, 1995: xxxv). And with this in mind, I have likewise tailored my translation accordingly. Therefore, some of the apparent gender bias (in English translations) can be put down to translation choices. For example, Rouse interprets “vīrya” as “manliness” (pp92, 99,
“manly effort” (p51), “manly strength” (p111) or “manly energy” (p122), where simply “effort” or “vigour” would suffice. Some of the bias may also be due to the fact that Sanskrit uses masculine endings when both men and women may be implied. So when Śāntideva talks of “men” or “sons” he should not always be taken as excluding women. Some of the bias may also be due to the texts that Śāntideva is quoting from. For example, he quotes the Saddharmasmyuptupasthāna, which claims that “women are the root of ruin” (Ś.S. 72). He then quotes from the Ugradatta-paripṛcchā, which suggests that a wife is “an obstacle to morality, meditation and wisdom” (Ś.S. 78), a common description of the eightfold path. Of course, the act of editing is not restricted to the question of what to put in, but also what to leave out. So it might be just as telling to note that, while there are in fact Buddhist stories which depict female bodhisattvas as using their beauty to positive effect, for example, that of Vasumitrā (Gaṇḍavyūha Sūtra), Śāntideva chose not to include this story, even though he quotes extensively from this sūtra.

Whether borrowed from other texts or not, there is no getting away from the abundance of sexism throughout the Compendium. For example, the bodhisattva’s generosity is shown in the giving away of his wife (Ś.S. 20 & 27), a gesture that would no doubt stir some modern controversy. And Śāntideva’s stress on celibacy is made clear when he says that a true bodhisattva has no wife (115). Moreover,

---

220 The same problem of translation can be found in Hindu texts. For example, compare these two translations of the V.C. (verse 2) from writers who both take this to be the authentic work of Śaṅkara. The text says: “jantūnāṃ nara janma durlabhamatāḥ puṃstvaṃ tato viprata”. One translation runs: “For all beings a human birth is difficult to obtain, more so is a male body; rarer than that is Brāhmaṇaḥood” (Mādhavānanda, stress mine). The other runs: “It is hard for any living creature to achieve birth in a human form. Strength of body and will are even harder to obtain; purity is harder still” (Prabhavananda & Isherwood, stress mine). One is inclined to agree with Forsthoevel (2002) that the former seems correct and the latter apologetic.

221 See Cleary, 1993: 1270-1273.

222 Mrozik (2007: 57), while noting the “flagrantly misogynist” passages in the Compendium, also makes the valid point that Śāntideva may not have had the complete texts available to him (p58).
unspecified misdeeds of a householder are said to result in his rebirth as a woman (69). On the other hand, the passion of a woman, if directed towards a male bodhisattva, may lead to rebirth as a man (168). Similar gender bias can be found in his own BCA, where he warns that a woman comes at a price (BCA. 8.71), and that a man wastes his wealth on a woman (8.42). Moreover, when training oneself as a bodhisattva, one “should be made to behave like a new bride; modest, timid and kept in order” (sthāpyo nava vadhū vṛttau hrīto bhīto ‘tha saṃvṛtaḥ) (8.166). And when one becomes a true yogi, one will know for certain that a woman is “aśuci”, that is, “foul” or, more literally, “impure” (9.8). In fact, this verse prevents us from claiming that his sexism can be put down to the culture he grew up in, for he actually claims that the “worldly” disagree with the yogi on this one. So, let us not deny the blatant sexism in his work. Like Śaṅkara’s ethics, Śāntideva’s ethics were not egalitarian.223

Having got this out in the open, let us get to the main issue, the philosophical problem with this rhetoric. The problem, as I frame it, with this conventional and often derogatory view of women, is that Śāntideva, in both the Compendium and the BCA explicitly claims that there are no truly existing gender distinctions. And as with the case of Śaṅkara, it is this manipulation of the Two-Truths doctrine, rather than discrimination per se, that I wish to explore.224

223 We should not take this too far in the other direction. I am not suggesting that Śāntideva would not help a woman in distress or that Śaṅkara would not throw a rope to a drowning Śūdra. Their “constructive altruism” would clearly allow for such responses.

224 I am not claiming that the gender issue is not an important one; it is simply not the focus of this thesis. Those interested in a more ‘feminist’ discussion of Śāntideva can do no better than read the excellent (and balanced) study by Mrozik (2007).
Let us stay for a while with verse 9.8 of the BCA, for it does in fact highlight a number of interesting points. But to put it into philosophical context, we also need to remind ourselves of the three verses which came before. So we have:

lokena bhāvā drśyante cāpi tattvataḥ ||
na tu māyā-vad ity atra vivādo yogi lokayoh ||
pratyakṣam api rūpādi prasiddhī na praṃānataḥ ||
asucyādiṣu śucyādi prasiddhyā na pramāṇaḥ ||
lokāvānaḥ arthaṃ ca bhāvā nāthena deśitāḥ ||
tattvataḥ kṣaṇikā naite saṃvṛtyā ced virūdhyate ||
nadro yogi saṃvṛtyā lokātte tattva darśinaḥ ||
anyathā loka bādhā syād aśuci strī nirupaṇe ||

Ordinary people see existent things and imagine them to be real. They do not see them as illusion-like. This is where there is dispute between the worldly and the yogis. Even what we call perceptible objects, such as form, are only established by popular consensus, not by any valid means of knowledge. [However] such consensus is wrong, for example, when ordinary folk view the impure as pure. 225

The Protector [Buddha] taught of existents in order to guide people [gradually into the knowledge of emptiness]. If it is objected then that these ["entities"] are not really momentary, but only conventionally so... [the fact is that] there is no fault in a yogi adopting the conventional usage. He has a better understanding of reality than the worldly. Otherwise, the objections of the worldly would invalidate the [yogi’s] determination of women as “foul”226 (BCA. 9.5-8).

---

225 This is one of the four classic misconceptions of mankind as mentioned in the Pāli Canon (A.N. ii.52). Here, one takes the impure/foul (asubha) to be pure/desirable (subha). The same list of four is mentioned in Patañjali’s Yoga-Sūtra (2.5) and here the contrast is in fact between ‘asuci’ and ‘śuci’.

226 I adopt the term “foul” here rather than “impure”, for that is how Śāntideva typically characterises women, and “foul” is a better opposite to “desirable”, which is how most “worldly” men see women, rather than as “pure”. Mrozik has noted how even male bodhisattvas are meant to regard their own wives as ‘asubha’, which, like me, she translates as “foul” (Mrozik, 2007: 91). Also note that in Chapter 8 of the BCA, the terms ‘asuci’ (8.52) and ‘amedhya’ (8.56) are used synonymously, where the same ‘amedhya’ is often used with the sense of “filth” (8.50, 8.53, 8.57, 8.58, 8.59, 8.60, 8.61, 8.63, 8.71) or even “excrement” (8.49, 9.135). It should be mentioned that Śāntideva sees the average male body as foul too (BCA. 8.56). Likewise, Śaṅkara took embodied existence as a fairly foul situation (Ch.U.Bh. VI.xiv.2); and both Śāntideva (BCA. 8.59) and Śaṅkara (Ch.U.Bh. V.ix.1) agree that the womb is a foul place to be born.
Now Arnold (2005: 202-203) has recently asked how the Buddha (S.N. III.138) and Mādhyamikas, like Candrakīrti (Prasannapadā, 370.6-8), can endorse the claim that “the world disputes with me, I do not dispute with the world” (loko mayā sārdam vivadati, nāhaṃ lokena sārdham vivadāmi). Arnold (2005) offers what he believes to be a “charitable reading” (p203), claiming that the Madhyamaka are really opposing the “Ābhidharmika version of Buddhist thought” (ibid.). But as we can see from the above, Śāntideva is also arguing against conventional (i.e. common) views about women, just as he and all Buddhists argue against certain commonly held views about the self. Arnold wants to say that the Buddhists are speaking purely at the ultimate level, and this saves them from falling into dispute with the worldly, and thus saves Arnold’s thesis of the Madhyamaka offering “transcendental arguments” (p139) rather than sceptical ones. With regard to the question of self, Arnold is no doubt correct. However, Śāntideva also feels that the common man gets the conventional truth wrong too, and explicitly states that “common opinion” (prasiddhi) can be mistaken (mrṣā). In other words, the perceptions of the worldly are “inaccurate and interpretation-laden” (Burton, 2004: 35). The Buddhist therefore stands alongside Lehrer (2000) when he cautions that “common sense should not be allowed to run unbridled in the epistemic field” (p72). The Mādhyamika does not “enshrine every aspect of the worldly non-analytical intellect” (Hopkins, 1996: 435). Thus, in Ganeri’s (2001) sceptical reading of Nāgārjuna, “common sense deceives us” (p46).

Mrozik (2007) has rightly noticed how Śāntideva “goes to great length to undermine the conventional view that women’s bodies are desirable” (p91). But further along, Mrozik seems to make the same mistake as Arnold by assuming that “conventional view/perspective” must mean “consensus” (p98). And Huntington’s (1989) linguistic notion of conventional truth as “our shared sociolinguistic experience” (p48) does not
help us here, for Śāntideva is attacking the use of verbal descriptions by the unenlightened. Mrozik (2007: 98) is therefore right in saying that the sexist remarks of Śāntideva cannot be wiped clear by an appeal to the Two Truths.

For Śāntideva, conventional truth (saṃvṛti-satya) is not synonymous with “consensus” (prasiddhi). Here Śāntideva, contra Candrakīrti (?), does not “let the mundane be just as it is seen” by the average person (see Arnold, 2005: 192), and, contra Arnold’s depiction of Madhyamaka, does in fact point to a “privileged level of description” (p203), that of the yogi. As Wallace notes, “The insights of the enlightened few may invalidate the consensus of the masses” (in Dalai Lama, 1988: 124, n.22). This is the opposite of what Burton (2004: 120) calls the “epistemic modesty” of Mādhyamikas. It is in fact a privileged level of description, and parallels what Olson (2011: 247) calls the “privileged point of view” of Śaṅkara.

Of course, Śāntideva is not interested in whether women really are, ontologically, foul or not; he simply wants men to renounce their lust for them. While I agree with Mrozik (2007: 98) that a Buddhist apologist cannot lean on the Two Truths to downplay such misogynistic statements, I contend that the 8th century Śāntideva would offer no apology. Śāntideva, as promoter of asceticism, clearly needed such views as women being foul on a conventional level for his call for renunciation. The Buddhist needs to claim a privileged level of seeing for the yogi in order to add authority to their counter-intuitive claims. So this combined attitude of elitism and

227 Candrakīrti believes that all means of valid knowledge are “conventionally veridical” (Huntington, 1989: 18). But can this really be the same as ‘consensus’ when Candrakīrti describes common people as “blighted by the cataracts of ignorance” (Arnold, 2005: 149)? Surely, the notion of “true-for-the-ignorant” is very far away from our notion of ‘conventional’ (Cowherds, 2011: 12-13). But see Tillemans (2011) on Kamalaśīla’s critique of the notion of simply accepted belief (pratijñā mātreṇa siddha) and whether or not it applies to Candrakīrti. It certainly cannot apply to Śāntideva.
sexism would have been taken for granted in his cultural milieu. What allows the Mādhyamikas to “keep persons in play” (Arnold, 2005: 203), then, is not that they shy away from telling us how things really are, but by a voluntary delusion that (socially constructed) persons are indeed independently existent, and as such, open to conventional designation. And here I agree with Arnold that their motivation is both soteriologically (p176) and ethically (p203) grounded. It is in the conventional world where merit is accumulated and where people suffer. That is why the Buddha provisionally (neyārtha) spoke of existents.

However, this decision to live in the conventional world does not mean that the Buddhist must always defer to “ordinary intuitions”, as Arnold (2005: 117) suggests. Even though the bodhisattva may accept much of what Nāgārjuna called “worldly conventional truth” (loka samvṛti-satya) (MMK. 24.8), and might well participate in the established language games of his culture; the yogi sometimes has to step in and say: “I am sorry, but you are wrong here”. Thus, yogis are entitled to use conventional language, like “pure” and “impure”, because they understand both the ultimate and the conventional better than ordinary folk. That is, on my interpretation, they can flicker between domains without misinterpreting either.

The ordinary person’s misunderstanding of ultimate reality is shown in his grasping at impermanent objects as if they were ultimately real. And the ordinary man’s misunderstanding of conventional reality is demonstrated by his belief that women are anything other than foul. The yogi is there to advise him that women are in fact foul, and that all objects are in fact illusion-like. Even the most beautiful of women will become a heap of bones. There is nothing inherent about her beauty, nothing permanent about the bliss she offers. We are all food for worms. Hence:
They are nothing other than mere bones, independent [of you] and indifferent [to you]. Why don’t you willingly embrace them [now] and feel bliss? That face, either you saw it as you tried to lift it up as it was lowered in modesty, or you never saw it as it was concealed by a veil. As if unable to bear your hardship, the vultures have now exposed that face. Look! Why do you now run away?

(BCA. 8.43-45).

All this sits rather uncomfortably though with the contrary notion of the bodhisattva having a purified (viśuddha, pariśuddha) body (Ś.S. 307, 151), and especially so alongside the story of the Bodhisattva Priyaṃkara (Pleasure-Maker!) who when gazed upon could lead a woman into rebirth as a man (Ś.S. 168). And if this privileging of bodhisattva bodies were not enough, we might introduce the story of the female bodhisattva, Candrottarā (Ś.S. 78-80), whose beauty, rather than being of benefit, actually has a “deleterious effect on men” (Mrozik, 2007: 56), by generating excessive lust in them. The contrasts between men and women and between bodhisattvas and non-bodhisattvas could not be more blatant.

Moreover, Mrozik (2007: 56) rightly highlights how Candrottarā’s virtue is proven, not only by her physical beauty, but by her “fine fragrance” (atigandha). She later contrasts this with the way one who eats meat is said by Śāntideva (Ś.S. 132) to “stink” (durgandha) in their next life. However, the implication of the following verse from the BCA is that all lay people stink:

tūla garbhair mṛdu sparśai ramante nopadhānakaḥ
durgandham na sravantiṃ kāmino ‘medhya mohitāḥ

Finding no pleasure in soft cotton-filled pillows, for they do not ooze a bad smell; lovers are infatuated by filth (BCA. 8.50).
Even more informative, though, is the stress Śāntideva puts on the fact that the smell of perfume that a normal woman exudes is not inherently her own (BCA. 8.65). This seems to contrast with the scent of a bodhisattva, which does seem to be inherently their own. Moreover, he speaks of a woman’s foul stench as being “naturally her own” (sva-bhāva) (8.66). In full:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kāye nyasto ’py asau gandhaś candanād eva nānyataḥ} & | \\
\text{anyadī yena gandhena kasmād anyatra rajyate} & | \\
\text{yadi sva-bhāva daurgandhyād rāgo nātra śivaṃ nanu} & | \\
\text{kim anartha rucir lokastaṃ gandhenānulimpati} & |
\end{align*}
\]

Though applied to the body, this scent comes from the sandal-wood alone, not from anything else. Why are you attracted to one thing by the scent of something else? Rather it would be auspicious if its own natural smell prevented passion towards it. Why do the worldly take delight in worthless objects, anointing it with scent? (BCA. 8.65-66)

But how often have the Mādhyamikas claimed there to be no “sva-bhāva”? For Śāntideva, there just are no inherently existing ‘things’ with the power to exude inherently existing odours. So is this not an example of the mistaken “belief in a real body” (sat kāya drṣṭi) that Buddhists accuse others of? If so, the question - “Why are you attracted to one thing by the scent of something else?” (8.65b) – while persuasive, and mildly amusing, seems doctrinally contradictory. Even so, the seeming contradictions can be reconciled, by which I mean coherently explained.

One way would be to treat much of Śāntideva’s argument as a sceptical one (which I believe it is). The attacks on women, for example, are there as a means of convincing

---

228 Now it might be claimed that this is a weak, or conventional use of sva-bhāva, just like the one recorded in Chapter 2, where Śaṅkara spoke of a person who “naturally has the notion of being an agent and an enjoyer” (kartṛ bhoktṛ sva-bhāva vijñānavatāḥ) (Ch.U.Bh. Intro). But the question would then be, which meaning of sva-bhāva do the Mādhyamikas reject and which do they not, and whether they can be coherently distinguished. For more on this debate, see Arnold (2005: 200-204). Also, compare Manu (2.213) on the so-called “nature (sva-bhāva) of women”. Also see Olivelle (2004: 39) and Lipner (2010: 116 & 132).
men to renounce lay life, not because that is how Śāntideva actually views women (although it may be). As such, he does not have to actually believe his argument to be “true”; he only needs to feel that it is convincing and potentially efficacious. As we noted in Chapter 3, Śāntideva’s verses are often primarily persuasive, and here we have just seen how irony plays a major part in that rhetoric. Thus, Mrozik (2007) speaks of two types of bodily discourse, the “ascetic” and the “physio-moral”. In his “ascetic” mode of discourse, Śāntideva claims that attachment to the body can only have negative results, whereas in the “physio-moral” discourse, attachment to a bodhisattva’s body can in fact have positive results (p83). And because Śāntideva is particularly set on producing celibate male monastics, the “ascetic” mode sometimes trumps the “physio-moral”, thus allowing for the possibility of a positive (female) body directly leading to negative results (p87). Of course, the effect is really “indirect”, and in the BCA, we often find Śāntideva ridiculing the man for being taken in by the woman (e.g. 8.54-69). Mrozik (2007: 90) also notes this with regard to the Compendium; though she adds that Śāntideva sometimes “blames women for male sexual misconduct” (p91), an attitude Sponberg (cited in Mrozik, 2007: 91) has rightly called “ascetic misogyny”.

A second way to reconcile the contradiction would be to rely on our old friends, the Two Truths. Now Mrozik (2007) has claimed that the Two Truths “will not help to

---

229 Gisela Striker held this view about the scepticism of Ancient Greece (see Arnold, 2005: 139).

230 I share the term “ascetic discourse” with Mrozik, but for me it goes beyond the question of bodies, being a more general attack on society. It thus contrasts with a much wider ethical discourse on the need to help all beings. It is therefore about rejection versus embrace of the very same phenomena.

231 Mrozik also notes that Olivelle has found similar attitudes to women in “some of the Hindu Upaniṣads” (ibid.). Olivelle (1992: 77-78) wrote, “Women are depicted not only as exciting lust in men but also as active temptresses who demonically pull men away from the path of virtue”. But then, Olivelle was not talking about just any Upaniṣads, but the so-called (by Paul Deussen) “Saṃnyāsa Upaniṣads”, those with a particular stress on (male) renunciation (p5).
reconcile the different discourses on women” (p98). Her point is well taken, however, as stated above, to reconcile is not necessarily to apologise for the discourse, but may simply be to coherently explain it. My whole thesis on the Two Truths has been modelled on the belief that there are two distinct modes of discourse at play, and that the writers alternate between them. This is another way of saying that there are two “equally valid and valued approaches” (p98). Mrozik asks if there are “ways of upholding conventional and ultimate perspectives simultaneously” (p99). The answer is “yes”. What follows is my own explanation of the how.

What we have is a “woman” (who does not ultimately exist) giving off a smell (which does not ultimately exist) which is cognised by a recipient (who does not ultimately exist) as being “foul” (which is a mere conventional designation); whereas a “bodhisattva” (who does not ultimately exist) gives off a smell (which does not ultimately exist) which is cognised by a recipient (who does not ultimately exist) as being “pleasing” (another conventional designation). We would then expect a further argument from Śāntideva that would deconstruct this conventional situation, including the causal chain of sensation and the categories of “womanhood” and “manhood”. And this is indeed the route Śāntideva takes. If one believed that there was in fact an “experincer” of sensation, one should ponder on the following sceptical argument:

```
yadā na vedakah kaścid vedanā ca na vidyate    
tadāvasthām imāṁ drṣṭvā trṣṇe kim na vidīryase    ||
drṣyate sprṣyate cāpi svapna māyopam ātmanā    ||
cittena saha jāta tvād vedanā tena nekṣyate    ||
pūrvaṃ paścāc ca jātena smaryate nānubhūyate    ||
svātmānaṁ nānubhavati na cānyenānubhūyate    ||
na cāsti vedakah kaścid vedanāto na tattvataḥ    ||
nirātmake kalāpe ‘śmin ka eva bādhya-te ‘nayā    ||
```

*232 By conventional designation, I do not mean to imply that ‘foul’ is the conventional word used to describe women, it is not. What I mean is that ‘foul’ is a dualistic notion used as a convenient form of linguistic expression so that one may be understood.*
Since there is no knower of sensation, nor any sensation, why “oh craving”, having seen this, are you not torn asunder? There is seeing and touching by a ‘self’, which is like a dream or illusion. Sensation is not ‘perceived’ by consciousness, for they are born together. What came earlier is remembered by what arises later, it is not ‘experienced’. Sensation does not experience itself and is not experienced by another. There is no experiencer, and therefore in reality there is no sensation. So who, in this bundle devoid of self, can be afflicted by it? (BCA.9. 98-101)

Thus, a bad smell should not affect you any more than a good smell should. And what of the bodies from which these came? If you believe that a man or woman, bodhisattva or not, is their body, meditate as follows:

\[
\text{kāyō na pādau na jaṅghā norū kāyah kaṭir na ca} \quad | \\
\text{nodaraṃ nāpy ayam prṣṭham noro bāhū na cāpi sah} \quad || \\
\text{na hastau nāpy ayam pārśvau na kāksau pāmsalaksanaḥ} \quad | \\
\text{na grīvā na śiraḥ kāyō ‘tra katarah punaḥ} \quad || \\
\text{yadi sarvesu kāyro ‘yam eka deśena vartate} \quad | \\
\text{aṃśā aṃśeṣu vartante sa ca kutra svayaṃ sthitah} \quad ||
\]

The body is not the feet, not the calves, not the thighs, and the body is not the hips. It is not the belly, nor the back, nor it is the chest, nor the arms. It is not the hands, nor the sides, nor the arm-pit, nor the shoulder region. The body is not the neck, nor the head. What among these then is the body? If you argue that the body is partially present in all of these, [We reply that] it is only parts that are parts, so where is the body itself found? (BCA. 9.78-80)

Such a meditation should lead you to the conclusion that “there is no body” (nāsti kāya) (BCA. 9.83). Could it be then that there is difference at a more elemental level? Could a woman perhaps be made of different atoms? But, like Śaṅkara (B.S.Bh. I.iv.28, II.i.29 & II.ii.11ff), Śāntideva also denies the coherence of atoms:

\[
\text{aṃśā apy anu bhedena so ‘py anur digivibhāgataḥ} \quad | \\
\text{digivibhāgo nirāṃśa tvād ākāśam tena nāsty anuḥ} \quad || \\
\text{evam svapnopame rūpe ko rajyeta vicārakah} \quad | \\
\text{kāyaś caivaṃ yadā nāsti tadā kā strī pumāṃś ca kah} \quad ||
\]

Even the parts can be broken down into atoms, and the atoms into directions. Being without parts, the directions are space. Therefore, the atom has no [ultimate] existence. Who, upon reflection, would take delight in this dream-like form? And since the body does not [ultimately] exist, what is “woman”, what is “man”? (BCA. 9.86-87)
If there are no atoms, if atoms are but space, how can there be physical ‘men’ and physical ‘women’? What would constitute them? That is the question Śāntideva poses. Now, if you say that men and women might have different types of consciousness, Śāntideva claims otherwise:

\[
\text{vijñāna dhātu svena śūnyo nopalabhyate ‘nyatra vyavahārāt} \\
\text{so ‘pi vyavahāro na strī na puruṣāḥ}
\]

The ‘element’ of consciousness is empty by its very nature; it is unestablished except by conventional designation. And even this conventionally [established consciousness] is neither ‘female’ nor ‘male’ (Ś.S. 250).

And if that were not clear enough, he repeats a little further along, “And that which lacks own-being can be neither ‘female’ nor ‘male’” (\textit{yaḥ ca sva-bhāvena na samvidyate, na tat strī na puruṣāḥ}) (Ś.S. 251). In other words, for a woman to really be a woman, she would have to have own-being (\textit{sva-bhāva}), but nothing has own-being, everything is inter-dependent. Thus, a woman cannot be a woman.

If you are still unconvinced, and if, like the Advaitins, you distinguish between consciousness (\textit{vijñāna}) and mind (\textit{manāḥ}), you might still wish to claim that men and women have different types of mind. If so, you need to meditate on these verses:

\[
\text{nendriyeśu na rūpādau nāntarāle manaḥ sthitam} \\
\text{nāpy antarāntara bahiś cīttam anyatrapepi na labhyate} \\
\text{yan na kāye na cānyatra na miśram na prthak kva cīt} \\
\text{tan na kiṃcid atah sattvāḥ prakṛtyā parinirvṛtāḥ}
\]

The mind is not located in the sense faculties, nor in form, etc., nor in-between. The mind is found neither internally, nor externally, nor anywhere else. That which is not in the body, nor outside it, nor intermingled, nor separate; that is nothing whatsoever. Hence, beings are naturally liberated (BCA. 9.102-103).
Men and women then are equal in being empty of inherent existence and in being naturally liberated. This is so because:

\[
\begin{align*}
yaśca \text{ samkalpo yaśca samkalpayitā ubhayametan na samvidyate} & | \\
\text{striyāṁ strī na samvidyate} & | \text{ puruṣe puruṣo na samvidyate} & |
\end{align*}
\]

Neither the thought not the thinker exists. In woman there is no woman. In man there is no man (Ś.S. 245).

But, you may ask, if the thinker does not exist, and if beings are naturally liberated, then what about the distinction between the ordinary beings and the yogis? The answer, as we know already (Chapter 3.2), is that this distinction also breaks down:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{svapnopamāstu gatayo vicāre kadali-samāḥ} & | \\
\text{nirvṛtānirvṛtānāṃ ca viśeṣo nāsti vastu taḥ} & ||
\end{align*}
\]

When analysed, the state of existence is dream-like, [insubstantial] like a plantain tree. Thus, there is no substantial difference between the liberated and the non-liberated (BCA. 9.150).

Once this distinction has been broken down, it also leaves the way open for the seemingly radical claim that the bodies of all beings are ultimately as equally non-defiled (āśrava) as the Buddha’s (Ś.S. 230). Now Mrozik (2007: 110) states that such a claim only occurs once in the Compendium, but compare: “All existents are originally pure” (ādi śuddhān sarva dharmān) (Ś.S. 172). Both these quotes are used by Śāntideva to inspire the practitioner, making them believe that they can purify their bodies and their past karma, despite the apparent foulness of their bodies and the evil of their actions. Thus, in the Compendium, if not in the BCA, Śāntideva occasionally adopts “buddha-nature” rhetoric for motivational purposes, which was probably the original intention of the tathāgata-garbha texts (see Williams, 2009: 104). However, contra (?) the intention of the early texts (ibid.), it seems that Śāntideva did indeed draw ethical implications from this theory. Comparing Śaṅkara’s argument in the Īśā-Upaniṣad Bhāṣya (5-6) [see p26 above] it is tempting to see Advaitic influence here.
However, Williams (2009: 109) believes the influence was possibly the other way round, with Gauḍapāda being influenced by *tathāgata-garbha* thought. Whatever the case may be, we continue to see the **cross-cutting nature of Indian thought**.

Nevertheless, as we can see from the following exchange with the Yogācāra, Śāntideva does not want his theory to collapse into their mind-only thesis:

```
vastv āśrayenābhāvasya kriyāvat tvam katham bhavet     |
asat sahāyam ekam hi cittam āpadyate tava     ||
grāhya muktaṃ yadā cittam tadā sarve tathāgatāḥ     |
evaṃ ca ko guṇo labdaśa citta-mātre ‘pi kalpīte     ||
```

For you, the mind has been reduced to isolation, accompanied by non-existents. How could the activity of the unreal [objects] proceed, even if supported by a real existent [i.e. pure mind]? If the mind is free of objectivity, then everyone is a Buddha. And so, even if ‘mind-only’ were posited, what benefit is gained? (BCA. 9.28-29)

As we saw earlier (Chapter 4.1), Śāntideva here argues against the Yogācāra’s apparent denial of conventional reality (9.28). But the following verse also seems to want to deny the Yogācāra’s thesis on account of its failure to distinguish the Buddha from others. But, at the ultimate level, once we allow for the doctrine of original purity, it is difficult to see how these two models differ. At this level of realisation, who could ridicule the ordinary man for being foolish, or the woman for being foul? Śāntideva certainly could not:

```
evāṃ śunyeṣu dharmeṣu kim labdham kim hṛtaṃ bhavet     |
sat kṛtaḥ paribhūto vā kena kāḥ sambhaviṣyati     ||
```

When all things are thus empty, what can be gained or lost? Who can be honoured or humiliated by whom? (BCA. 9.151)

---

233 This is one reason why Loy (1988) found such a “remarkable similarity” (p136) between Śaṅkara and Dōgen. On the implications of original enlightenment for the theory of dependent-origination, see the so-called “Dhātu-vāda” debate in Hubbard & Swanson (1997).
In conclusion, men and women are different if and when we are caught in conventional reality. The more the mind is fed by desire, the more mistakes one makes at the conventional level of understanding. As soon as we get a glimpse of emptiness, the attachment reduces, desire weakens, resolve strengthens, and the illusion is deconstructed. When this view is made strong, women are no longer seen as desirable. Ultimately, ‘women’ do not exist as separate distinct objects. They are empty of inherent existence, mere labels added to a certain formation of conditions. The same, of course, is true of ‘men’. They are conceptual fictions. There are no ‘women’ to be desired and no ‘men’ to desire them. Śāntideva uses provisional language because we are caught in the provisional realm. He uses it to deter monks from their desire for women. He uses it to dissuade the householder from having intercourse with his wife. He knows that those who have a weak grasp of emptiness are always prone to wavering. But that is not all his discourse is about. Celibacy is but a step towards selflessness.

Mrozik (2007) has claimed that the “primary goal” of the Compendium is “the eradication of male sexual desire for women” (p97). But that is only one third of the story, the other components being the realisation of emptiness and the compassionate response to all beings. Thus, Śāntideva writes:

\[ \text{śūnyatā karunā garbha ceṣṭitāt punya śodhanam} \]

From action whose essence is emptiness and compassion, there is the purification of karmic fruit (Ś.S. 270, Kārikā 21b).

And a little further on, he writes:

\[ \text{iha ... bodhisattvaḥ kāyaṃ jīvitaṃ ca parītyajati, na ca punah sad dharma parītyajati} \]

Here, in this world ... the bodhisattva renounces the body and life, but he does not renounce the Good Law (Ś.S. 274).
When sitting, he thinks, “May all beings sit on the thrown of wisdom” (sarva sattvān bodhi maṇḍe niṣādayeyam). When he lies down, he thinks, “May every last being be led to final liberation” (sarva sattvān eva parinirvāpayeyam) (348). Śāntideva thus uses provisional language to persuade us out of our state of self-serving ignorance into one of other-serving, selfless, compassionate action. This is the main teaching that Śāntideva wishes the monks to understand. Renunciation is but a prelude.

In brief, to get a man to see how he is caught in samsāra, Śāntideva has to borrow the voice of the perfected yogi in order to paint woman as an impure object, one that ultimately brings suffering. But to get a man to reach the threshold of transcendence, Śāntideva has to make him see that there are no men, no women, no self, no beings, and so ultimately, no yogis. So the question arises: Are there no bodhisattvas after all? Well, of course, a bodhisattva is only a bodhisattva when he knows that he is not a bodhi-sattva (Vajracchedikā, 3). Such a ‘bodhisattva’ vows to save all ‘beings’, be they ‘male’ or ‘female’. But upon liberation, he does not see them as male or female. As such, his “qualified altruism” is untouched by the question of gender. Nevertheless, it becomes that much more qualified by the fact that he no longer sees any self at all before him. When he does happen to project such a self it is only for the benefit of that person. That is “constructive altruism”. If he gets caught by his own projection, and starts to really see a self there, then he needs to return to meditation on not-self. That this projected person may (from their own side) not wish to be helped complicates the issue somewhat; but then, to save a man or woman from drowning (even if they are attempting suicide) is surely altruistic. As such, my thesis (if not the absolute purity of the bodhisattva’s ethics) is saved along with them.
And so, after this rather complex diversion into the marginal areas of caste and gender in both Śaṅkara and Śāntideva, I wish to reaffirm the point I made at the outset that the issue here is not one of social discrimination *per se*. On the other hand, I refused to simply gloss over such discriminations, if only to discredit the appeal by their respective lineages to egalitarianism and universality. Nevertheless, the essential point to be grasped here is the manner in which they both adopt the Two Truths. What we have seen is that both admit that ultimately speaking, there are no castes, no men, no women; indeed, no basis for distinction whatsoever. However, when it comes to provisional ethics, to the need for renunciation, to the need for class duties, to the need for monastic segregation, etc, then for sure, differences are not only condoned, they are promoted and sealed with approval. And yet, it has been argued that constructive altruism stands firm as the best way of characterising their ethical projects, and while undoubtedly partial, their ethics are moral through and through.
Conclusion

We began our comparison with a warning. We prepared ourselves for the tensions and the ambiguities. We did our level best to clear the area of gods and magical powers. Our terrain was desolate rather than overgrown. The religious quest started to appear as a philosophical problem, a human dilemma. We were being faced with a number of particularly existential questions. How could the intuitive among us continue to participate in a social game that was no longer believable? How could one practice ethics amongst persons regarded as ignorant illusions? Why should one not simply turn away from society; transcend this world of name and form?

Then we met Śaṅkara, the Hindu, and Śāntideva, the Buddhist. One would tell us that, in reality, there was nothing but brahman, nothing else was worthy of the name “real”. Even “we” were unreal in our present state of being. And yet, with higher insight, we could change all of that. We were also that reality, brahman. We could be one in the knowing that is brahman, even whilst embodied. We could be truly liberated in this life, a jīvan-mukta. The other would tell us that all was in fact empty. There was no brahman; there was no self at all. True, we were ultimately unreal. Equally true, we could become liberated from nescience in this very life. But our reality would only be found in the task of living, not in any ground of being. Being was a state of acting, the way of the bodhisattva.

It became apparent that, on both accounts, we were currently in a state of delusion, but one that could be seen through. All we needed to do was recognise the truth. They both called it ultimate truth (paramārtha-satya). But despite their use of the same
terminology, their ultimate metaphysics seemed to sit on opposite sides of the Self-spectrum. And yet, when limited to this life, the role they offered seemed surprisingly similar. Both would claim that the truth of non-individuation needed to be thoroughly grasped and subsequently spread to others. The life-style was that of the wise and caring teacher, the compassionate guru. The initial task was to deconstruct the self so as to become selfless. The further task was to then reconstruct the suffering other, so as to be capable of empathising with their confused condition. We were presented with two visions of the very same ethic, “constructive altruism”. For Śaṅkara, it seemed largely limited to those who were willing and qualified to take the final epistemic leap into truth. Others were advised to follow their own social duty. For Śāntideva, the teaching of emptiness was equally reserved for the qualified few, though his compassion had the potential to include the helping of others in their quest for lesser goods than nirvāṇa.

Thankfully, we were invited here in order to compare, not to choose. And so, after flickering our way through two competing traditions, we have come to our comparative conclusions. Having already announced their metaphysical differences, we should now take stock of their similarities, and, given their ontological starting points, it is an astonishing list. A key feature for both writers was the need for renunciation of this world. Both painted it as one of suffering, a magical show of charming temptations just waiting to dupe us out of our strength, out of our money, out of our minds. Celibacy was seen as the key to liberating oneself from the bondage of family and home. Asceticism was central to letting go of the body’s demands. And so women were to be seen as dangerous, their bodies described in foul terms, their impermanence brought forward to the now. They were walking corpses.
just waiting to rot. Nothing impermanent could have ultimate worth, and least of all
the physical.

We were invited into the religious circle. But one could still go astray. Not all that
was on offer was for the good. Śaṅkara would warn us against the way of action,
which took knowledge as a mere means to ritual. Śāntideva tells us never to emulate
those lazy, selfish monks, who sit all day delighting in their own private bliss. These
paths were filled with subtle ignorance. One needed to be of sharp faculty to see the
implications. Knowledge became the dominant quest. This knowledge was claimed
to be beyond the grasp of the intellect, an intuitive knowledge. Nevertheless, it was a
knowledge which gained its authority from scripture, its conscious experience merely
confirming its validity. Both would admit to partial knowers, to glimpses of truth and
backsliding. Thus, I proposed, we must imagine these partial knowers as flickering
between ultimate and conventional modes of seeing.

Those who had come this far, who had purified the mind, who had distinguished
themselves from the flock, were now being invited to let go of all marks of difference.
True liberation came when one understood that there was no ultimate difference
between the liberated and the non-liberated. Only such an insight could truly count as
liberation. Ultimately speaking, there was no duality between the ultimate and the
conventional. One who had grasped this truth could find their place in either domain.
This truth was so precious, that it simply had to be passed on. As Brahmā Sahampati
once allegedly said to the Buddha (S.N. I.137), there would be those with little dust in
their eyes.
And so, these knowers of reality were to take on the self-imposed duty of the compassionate teacher. Being almost exclusively male, their role would be that of the “paternal pedagogue”, guiding the other out of the forest of the body, beyond the magic show of the mind, into the pure light of knowledge. The path is a gradual one; it demands study, acumen, discipline, virtues. Such work demands self-control, fearlessness and a complete lack of selfish interest, a prime candidate for Urmson’s (1958) category of “Saints and Heroes”. But the rewards are boundless, an ineffable bliss, which is the bliss of knowing truth.

Given these startling commonalities, I would like to propose that this comparison has shown itself to have import in three distinct areas of scholarship. First, there is the philosophical conclusion, which shows how two very different – even radically opposite – views on cosmology of self and religious norms can generate strikingly similar accounts of the relationship between conduct and world in a ‘selfless framework’. Despite their outright disagreement on the nature of the self, neither Śāntideva nor Śaṅkara required a view of the person as a stable individuated agent in order to posit a system of moral values that ought to be followed. In fact, both would conclude that the very belief in oneself as a unified moral agent was counter-productive to other-regarding moral thought. Second, there is the historiographical conclusion, which demonstrates the limits and power of doctrinal commitments to metaphysics and ethics. We showed just how committed these two thinkers were to the continuity of their lineages, both in terms of doctrinal commitments and normative conduct. We saw how the language of ultimate truth set the limits on these commitments, but also how the very force of tradition tended to balance the weight of any ultimate assertions. And third, there is the disciplinary conclusion, which highlights, not only the similarities between Buddhist and Brahmanical thinkers, but
how their methodologies and aims, and even their inter-sectarian differences, are in fact cross-cutting. Thus, I proposed that the so-called ātman/anātman distinction between Hinduism and Buddhism needed further qualification. We have seen, both verbally and graphically, how Śāntideva and Śaṅkara shift between notions of self and not-self depending on the context. I thus presented a more nuanced approach to the question of self which took into consideration both the Two-Truths mode of discourse and the self-deluding form of emotive ethical rhetoric. Finally, I would like to propose that these medieval Indian models may well prove themselves to be a valuable source of both metaphysical and moral inspiration to those of us who continue to ask deeper and deeper questions about the self.
## Bibliography

### Primary texts (Sanskrit only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De La Vallée Poussin, L.</td>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Prajñākaramati’s Commentary to the Bodhicaryāvatāra of Čāntideva, Calcutta : Asiatic Society.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Primary texts (English Translations)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skilton, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inada, K.K.</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td><em>Nāgārjuna – A Translation of his Mūlamadhyamakahārikā</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jagadānanda, S.</td>
<td>1941</td>
<td><em>Upadeśa Sāhasrī of Śrī Śaṅkarācārya</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kloppenborg, R.</td>
<td>1973</td>
<td><em>The Sūtra on the Foundation of the Buddhist Order (Catusparīṣṭ Sūtra)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luk, C.</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td><em>Ordinary Enlightenment – A Translation of the Vimalakīrti Nirdeśa Sūtra</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author(s)</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyanaponika, T. &amp; Bodhi, B.</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Numerical Discourses of the Buddha - An Anthology of Suttas from the Anguttara Nikāya, Creek Walnut: AltaMira.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Padmakara Translation Group</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>Introduction to the Middle Way – Chandrakirti’s Madhyamakavatara with Commentary by Jamgon Mipham, Boston: Shambhala.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title and Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dictionaries**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Title and Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
## Secondary Sources

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chogye Trichen</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td><em>Parting from the Four Attachments – A Commentary on Jetsun Drakpa Gyaltsen’s Song of Experience on Mind Training and the View</em>, New York : Snow Lion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dalai Lama</td>
<td>1975</td>
<td><em>The Buddhism of Tibet and the key to the middle way</em>, London: Allen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author(s)</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gyatso, T., the 14th Dalai Lama</td>
<td>1975</td>
<td><em>The Buddhism of Tibet and the Key to the Middle Way</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvey, P.</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td><em>An Introduction to Buddhism – Teachings, history and practices</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvey, P.</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td><em>An Introduction to Buddhist Ethics</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Houshmand, Z.</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Consciousness at the Crossroads – Conversations with the Dalai Lama on Brain Science and Buddhism, New York : Snow Lion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hubbard, J. &amp; Swanson, P.</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Pruning the Bodhi Tree – The Storm over Critical Buddhism, Honolulu : University of Hawai’i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huntington, C.W., Jr.</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>The Emptiness of Emptiness – An Introduction to Early Indian Mādhyamika, Honolulu : University of Hawai’i Press.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isayeva, N.</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Shankara and Indian Philosophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kapstein, M.T.</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Reason’s Traces – Identity and Interpretation in Indian and Tibetan Buddhist Thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Book Title and Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title / Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author(s)</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title and Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King, S.B.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queen, C.S.</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td><em>Engaged Buddhism in the West</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author(s)</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radhakrishnan, S.</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td><em>Eastern Religions &amp; Western Thought</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ram-Prasad, Chakravarthi</td>
<td>2001a</td>
<td><em>Knowledge and Liberation in Classical Indian Thought</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ram-Prasad, Chakravarthi</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td><em>Indian Philosophy and the Consequences of Knowledge – Themes in Ethics, Metaphysics and Soteriology</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author(s)</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siderits, M.</td>
<td>2007a</td>
<td><em>Buddhism as Philosophy – An Introduction</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart, N.</td>
<td>1964</td>
<td><em>Doctrine and Argument in Indian Philosophy</em>, London: Allen &amp; Unwin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taber, J.A.</td>
<td>1983</td>
<td><em>Transformative Philosophy – A Study of Śaṅkara, Fichte, and Heidegger</em>, Honolulu, University of Hawai’i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theodor, I.</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Exploring the Bhagavad Gītā – Philosophy, Structure and Meaning, Farnham : Ashgate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Williams, B.</td>
<td>1973</td>
<td>“A critique of utilitarianism”, in Smart &amp; Williams, Utilitarianism For &amp; Against, Cambridge : Cambridge University Press.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>